

This Page Is Inserted by IFW Operations  
and is not a part of the Official Record

## **BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES**

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images may include (but are not limited to):

- BLACK BORDERS
- TEXT CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES
- FADED TEXT
- ILLEGIBLE TEXT
- SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES
- COLORED PHOTOS
- BLACK OR VERY BLACK AND WHITE DARK PHOTOS
- GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS

**IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.**

**As rescanning documents *will not* correct images,  
please do not report the images to the  
Image Problem Mailbox.**



## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> : C07D 277/82, A61K 31/425, C07D 417/12, 277/46		A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 98/04536
(21) International Application Number: PCT/JP97/02609		(43) International Publication Date: 5 February 1998 (05.02.98)	
(22) International Filing Date: 29 July 1997 (29.07.97)			
(30) Priority Data: 8/200898 31 July 1996 (31.07.96) JP		(74) Agents: AOYAMA, Tamotsu et al.; Aoyama & Partners, IMP Building, 3-7, Shiromi 1-chome, Chuo-ku, Osaka-shi, Osaka 540 (JP).	
(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): OTSUKA PHARMACEUTICAL COMPANY, LIMITED (JP/JP); 9, Kandatsukasa-cho 2-chome, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo 101 (JP).		(81) Designated States: AU, BR, CA, CN, KR, MX, SG, US, European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE).	
(72) Inventors; and (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): MORI, Toyoki (JP/JP); 101-8, Kitahamamiyanonishi, Muya-cho, Naruto-shi, Tokushima 772 (JP). TOMINAGA, Michiaki (JP/JP); 310-6, Takaiso, Kamiita-cho, Itano-gun, Tokushima 771-13 (JP). TABUSA, Fujio (JP/JP); 1-65, Shinkirai-Aza-Shimosao, Kitajima-cho, Itano-gun, Tokushima 771-02 (JP). NAGAMI, Kazuyoshi (JP/JP); 51-94, Tainohama-Aza-Nishinosu, Kitajima-cho, Itano-gun, Tokushima 771-02 (JP). ABE, Kaoru (JP/JP); 76-7, Miyantani, Hachiman-cho, Tokushima-shi, Tokushima 770 (JP). NAKAYA, Kenji (JP/JP); 48, Kamibekkukita, Kawauchi-cho, Tokushima-shi, Tokushima 771-01 (JP). TAKEMURA, Isao (JP/JP); 1-15-7, Minamiyukigaya, Ota-ku, Tokyo 145 (JP). SHINOHARA, Tomoichi (JP/JP); 140, Kokuwajima-Aza-Machama, Muya-cho, Naruto-shi, Tokushima 772 (JP). TANADA, Yoshihisa (JP/JP); 19-3, Saita-Aza-Higashibari, Muya-cho, Naruto-shi, Tokushima 772 (JP). YAMAUCHI, Takahito (JP/JP); 92-1, Tainohama-Aza-Hara, Kitajima-cho, Itano-gun, Tokushima 771-02 (JP).		Published With international search report.	
(54) Title: THIAZOLE DERIVATIVE AS PROTEIN KINASE C INHIBITORS			
(57) Abstract			
<p>A thiazole compound of formula (I), wherein T is lower alkylene; u is 0 or 1; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are the same or different and are each H, or lower alkyl, etc.; R<sup>3</sup> is (1) or (2); R<sup>4</sup> is H or lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl, which shows inhibitory activity or protein kinase C(PKC, Ca<sup>2+</sup>/phospholipid-dependent serine/threonine protein phosphatase), and are useful as a protein kinase C inhibitor.</p>		<p style="text-align: right;">(I)</p>	
		<p style="text-align: right;">(1)</p>	
		<p style="text-align: right;">(2)</p>	

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece			TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	ML	Mali	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MN	Mongolia	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MR	Mauritania	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MW	Malawi	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	MX	Mexico	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NE	Niger	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NL	Netherlands	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NO	Norway	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	NZ	New Zealand		
CM	Cameroon			PL	Poland		
CN	China	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CU	Cuba	KZ	Kazakhstan	RO	Romania		
CZ	Czech Republic	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
DE	Germany	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DK	Denmark	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
EE	Estonia	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		

## DESCRIPTION

## THIAZOLE DERIVATIVE AS PROTEIN KINASE C INHIBITORS

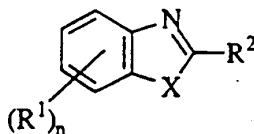
## TECHNICAL FIELD

5           The present invention relates to a novel thiazole derivative.

## BACKGROUND ART

          There have hitherto been known various thiazole derivatives, among which some compounds having a somewhat similar substituents to those of the present invention are disclosed in the following literatures.

10           JP-A-2-306916 discloses inhibitors for platelet adhesion comprising a benzazole compound of the following formula:



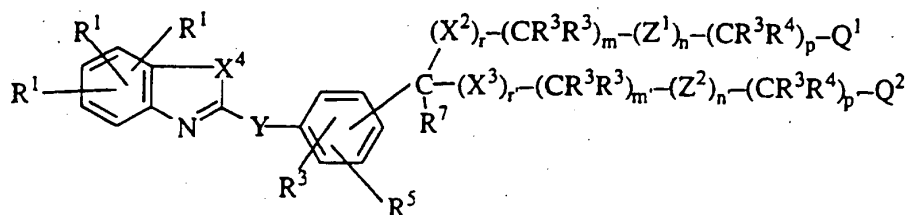
15           wherein X is S or >N-R<sup>3</sup> (R<sup>3</sup> is H, lower alkyl, etc.); R<sup>1</sup> is halogen, cyano, cyano-substituted lower alkoxy, phenyl-alkyl having a substituent on benzene ring, substituted furyl-alkoxy, substituted pyrrolidinyl-alkyl, substituted amino, substituted amino-alkyl or -alkoxy, etc.; R<sup>2</sup> is pyrrolyl having optionally alkyl substituent, thienyl, pyridylthio-lower alkyl, phenyl group which has optionally  
20           1 to 3 substituents selected from lower alkoxy, lower alkyl, OH, halogen, or -O-Y-NR<sup>8</sup>R<sup>9</sup> (Y is lower alkylene, R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are each H, lower alkyl, cycloalkyl, or both combine to form a nitrogen-containing 5- or 6-membered saturated heterocyclic group, or -NR<sup>10</sup>R<sup>11</sup> (R<sup>10</sup> and R<sup>11</sup> are each H, lower alkyl, substituted phenyl, or both combine to form a heterocyclic group). However, the benzazole



compounds of this literature are significantly different from the thiazole compounds of the present invention in the substituents at 2-position of the thiazole nucleus. Besides, this literature does not disclose any compounds having protein kinase C inhibitory activities as in the present invention.

5 European Patent 318 084 (= U.S. Patent 4,957,932 and 5,037,840) discloses that the benzoheterazoles of the following formula are leukotriene antagonists and inhibitors of leukotriene biosynthesis and are useful as antiasthmatic, antiallergic, anti-inflammatory and cytoprotective agents.

10



wherein R<sup>1</sup> is H, halogen, alkyl, etc.; R<sup>2</sup> is alkyl, alkenyl, etc.; R<sup>3</sup> is H or R<sup>2</sup>; R<sup>4</sup> is  
 15 H, halogen, -NO<sub>2</sub>, etc.; R<sup>5</sup> is H, halogen, -NO<sub>2</sub>, etc.; R<sup>7</sup> is H or alkyl; X<sup>2</sup> and X<sup>3</sup>  
 are O, S, S(O), etc.; X<sup>4</sup> is NR<sup>3</sup>, O or S; Z<sup>1</sup> and Z<sup>2</sup> are -CONR<sup>3</sup>- or -HET(-R<sup>3</sup>,-R<sup>5</sup>)-;  
 and Q<sup>1</sup> and Q<sup>2</sup> are -COOR<sup>3</sup>, -CONHS(O)<sub>2</sub>R<sup>13</sup>, -CN, etc. However, these  
 benzoheterazoles of this literature are essentially different from the thiazole  
 compounds of the present invention in the substituent at 2-position of the azole  
 20 nucleus. Besides, this literature does not disclose any compounds having  
 protein kinase C inhibitory activity.

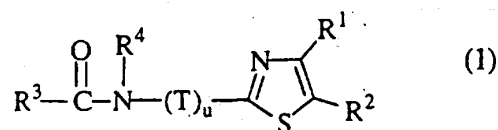
Some thiazole or benzothiazole compounds having similar chemical structure to the benzoheterazoles of the above European Patent 318084 are also disclosed in PCT publications WO 93/21168 and WO 93/21169 and therein

it is mentioned that those compounds are useful as leukotriene antagonist, but these thiazole or benzothiazole compounds of these literatures are clearly different from the thiazole compounds of the present invention in the substituent at 2-position likewise, and further these literatures do not disclose any compound having protein kinase C inhibitory activity, either.

# DISCLOSURE OF INVENTION

The thiazole derivatives of the present invention are novel compounds, and have not been disclosed in any literature, and have the following formula (1).

10



wherein T is a lower alkylene;

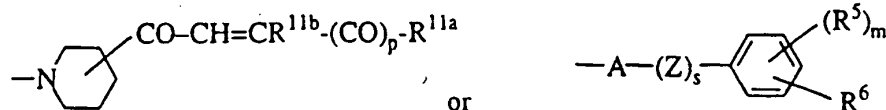
u is 0 or 1;

15

R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are the same or different and are each a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl, or both combine to form a group: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>- (n is 4 or 5) or to form a benzene ring which may optionally be substituted by a member selected from a lower alkyl, a lower alkoxy, a nitro, an amino having optionally a lower alkyl substituent, or a halogen atom;

20

R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the formula:



wherein R<sup>11b</sup>, p, R<sup>11a</sup> are defined hereinafter; A is a lower alkylene; Z is O or S; s

is 0 or 1; m is 1 or 2;

$R^4$  is a hydrogen atom or a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl;

$R^5$ s are the same or different and are each a member selected from (a) a hydrogen atom, (b) an alkyl having optionally a hydroxy substituent, (c) a halogen atom, (d) a group of the formula:  $-(O)_t-A-(CO)_\ell-NR^7R^8$  (wherein t is 0 or 1, A is a lower alkylene,  $\ell$  is 0 or 1, and  $R^7$  and  $R^8$  are the same or different and are each a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl, or both combine together with the nitrogen atom to which they bond to form a 5- to 7-membered saturated heterocyclic group which may be intervened with a nitrogen or oxygen atom, said heterocyclic group being optionally substituted by a member selected from a group of the formula:  $-(A)_\ell-NR^9R^{10}$  (wherein A and  $\ell$  are as defined above, and  $R^9$  and  $R^{10}$  are the same or different and are each a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl, or both combine together with the nitrogen atom to which they bond to form a 5- to 7-membered saturated heterocyclic group which may be intervened with a nitrogen or oxygen atom, said heterocyclic group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent), a lower alkyl having optionally a hydroxy substituent, a hydroxy group, and a lower alkanoyl), (e) a lower alkoxy-carbonyl-lower alkyl, (f) a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl, (g) a lower alkoxy having optionally a halogen substituent, (h) a halogen-substituted lower alkyl, (i) a carboxyl-substituted lower alkyl, (j) a lower alkoxy-carbonyl, (k) a lower alkenyloxy, (l) a phenyl-lower alkoxy, (m) a cycloalkyloxy, (n) a phenyl, (o) a phenyloxy, (p) a hydroxy, (q) a lower alkylthio, (r) a lower alkenyl, or (s) an amino having optionally a lower alkyl substituent;

$R^6$  is a group of the formula:

(1)  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  or (2)  $-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$ ;

p is 0 or 1;

$\text{R}^{11b}$  is a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl;

$\text{R}^{11a}$  is a hydroxy, a lower alkoxy, or a 5- to 10-membered, monocyclic or  
5 dicyclic, saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic group which contains 1 to 4  
hetero atoms selected from a nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur atom as a ring member,  
said heterocyclic group having optionally 1 to 3 substituents selected from the  
group consisting of (i) a lower alkyl, (ii) a group of the formula:  $-(\text{B})_l-\text{NR}^{12}\text{R}^{13}$   
(wherein l is as defined above, B is  $-\text{CO}-\text{A}-$  (A is as defined above), a carbonyl,  
10 or a lower alkylene, and  $\text{R}^{12}$  and  $\text{R}^{13}$  are the same or different and are each a  
hydrogen atom, a lower alkyl, or a lower alkyl substituted by an amino having  
optionally a lower alkyl substituent, or both combine together with the nitrogen  
atom to which they bond to form a 5- to 12-membered saturated, monocyclic,  
dicyclic or spirocyclic heterocyclic group which may be intervened with a  
15 nitrogen or oxygen atom, said heterocyclic group having optionally a  
substituent selected from a lower alkyl, a lower alkoxycarbonyl, a lower alkoxy-  
substituted lower alkyl, an amino having optionally a lower alkyl substituent,  
and a hydroxy-substituted lower alkyl), (iii) a lower alkoxycarbonyl, (iv) a  
hydroxy-substituted lower alkyl, (v) a pyridyl being optionally substituted by a  
20 lower alkyl having optionally a halogen substituent on the pyridine ring, (vi) a  
halogen-substituted lower alkyl, (vii) a lower alkoxy, (viii) a cycloalkyl, (ix) a  
hydroxy, (x) a tetrahydropyranyloxy-substituted lower alkyl, (xi) a pyrimidyl,  
(xii) a lower alkoxy-substituted lower alkyl, (xiii) a carboxyl, (xiv) a phenyl-  
lower alkoxy, (xv) a phenyl-lower alkyl having optionally a lower alkylene-

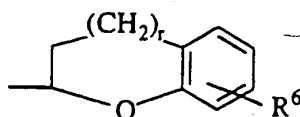
6

dioxy on the phenyl ring, (xvi) a lower alkanoyloxy, and (xvii) a piperidinyl having optionally a lower alkyl substituent on the piperidine ring;

$R^{14}$  is a hydroxy or a lower alkoxy; and

when  $m$  is 1, the groups A and  $R^5$  may combine to form a group of the

5 formula:



(wherein  $R^6$  is as defined above, and  $r$  is 0, 1 or 2), or when  $m$  is 2, two  $R^5$

10 groups may combine to form a lower alkylenedioxy, a lower alkylene, or a group of the formula:  $-(CH_2)_2-CONH-$ , or the groups  $R^5$  and  $R^6$  may combine to form a

group of the formula:  $-CO-CH(R^{28})-CH(R^{28'})-W-$  (wherein  $R^{28}$  and  $R^{28'}$  are a hydrogen atom or a carboxyl group, provided that both  $R^{28}$  and  $R^{28'}$  are not

simultaneously a carboxyl group, and  $W$  is  $-N(R^{29a})-$  or  $\begin{array}{c} \text{---}N^+ \text{---} R^{29b} \\ | \\ R^{29b} \end{array} \cdot X^-$  (wherein

15  $R^{29a}$  is a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl,  $R^{29b}$  is a lower alkyl, and  $X$  is a halogen atom)),

or a salt thereof.

The thiazole derivatives of the formula (1) show inhibitory activity on protein kinase C (PKC,  $Ca^{2+}$ /phospholipid-dependent serine/threonine protein  
20 phosphatase), and are useful as a protein kinase C inhibitor.

It has been proved that PKC plays an important role in the regulation of various biological functions such as the metabolism regulation, the cell proliferation, the cell differentiation, the release reaction of neurotransmitter, etc.

Therefore, it is indicated that a PKC inhibitor may be useful in the prophylaxis or treatment of various diseases caused by the hyperaction of the above-mentioned biological functions being participated by PKC.

More particularly, the protein kinase C inhibitors containing as an active ingredient the present thiazole derivative are useful as an agent for treatment of autoimmune diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis, systemic lupus erythematosus, multiple sclerosis, psoriasis, etc., various allergic diseases such as Crohn's disease, colitis ulcerosa, asthma, atopic dermatitis; an agent for protection of rejection in organ transplant, GVHD reaction, etc.; an agent for prophylaxis or treatment of various ischemic diseases in the organs such as heart, liver, kidney, brain, etc., acute pancreatitis, sepsis, multiple organs failure introduced by burn, ARDS, by inhibiting the production of cytokinin derived from T-cell such as IL-2, or inflammatory cytokinin such as TNF- $\alpha$ .

Further, by other biological functions such as cell proliferation, hormone secretion, regulation of metabolism, etc. which are concerned with PKC, the protein kinase C inhibitors of the present invention are useful in the prophylaxis or treatment of cancer, diabetes, Alzheimer disease, arteriosclerosis, HIV infection, nephritis, angiitis, etc.

Each group in the above formula (1) specially means the following groups.

The lower alkyl group includes a straight chain or branched chain  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl group such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, etc.

The lower alkoxy group includes a straight chain or branched chain  $C_1$ -

C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy group, for example, methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, tert-butoxy, pentyloxy, hexyloxy, etc.

The halogen atom is fluorine atom, chlorine atom, bromine atom or iodine atom.

- 5           The lower alkanoyloxy-substituted lower alkyl group includes a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl group which is substituted by 1 or 2 straight chain or branched chain C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkanoyloxy groups, for example, acetyloxymethyl, 2-propionyloxyethyl, 1-butyryloxyethyl, 3-acetyloxypropyl, 4-acetyloxybutyl, 4-isobutyryloxybutyl, 5-pentanoyloxypentyl, 6-acetyloxy-  
10   hexyl, 6-tert-butylcarbonyloxyhexyl, 1,1-dimethyl-2-hexanoyloxyethyl, 2-methyl-3-acetyloxypropyl, diacetyloxymethyl, 1,3-diacetyloxypropyl, etc.

- The alkyl group having optionally a hydroxy substituent includes a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group which may optionally have 1 to 3 hydroxy substituents, for example, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl,  
15   isobutyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, heptyl, octyl, hydroxymethyl, 2-hydroxyethyl, 1-hydroxyethyl, 3-hydroxypropyl, 2,3-dihydroxypropyl, 4-hydroxybutyl, 1,1-dimethyl-2-hydroxyethyl, 1,3-dihydroxypropyl, 5,5,4-trihydroxypentyl, 5-hydroxypentyl, 6-hydroxyhexyl, 1-hydroxyisopropyl, 2-methyl-3-hydroxypropyl, 7-hydroxyheptyl, 8-hydroxyoctyl, etc.

- 20           The lower alkylene group includes a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkylene group, for example, methylene, ethylene, trimethylene, 2-methyltrimethylene, 2,2-dimethyltrimethylene, 1-methyltrimethylene, methylmethylene, ethylmethylene, tetramethylene, pentamethylene, hexamethylene, etc.

The 5- to 7-membered saturated heterocyclic group which is formed by

combining R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup>, or R<sup>9</sup> and R<sup>10</sup> together with the adjacent nitrogen atom with or without being intervening with another nitrogen atom or an oxygen atom, for example, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholino, homopiperazinyl, homomorpholino, etc.

- 5           The lower alkyl group having optionally a hydroxy substituent includes, in addition to the above lower alkyl groups, a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl group which may optionally have 1 to 3 hydroxy substituents, for example, hydroxymethyl, 2-hydroxyethyl, 1-hydroxyethyl, 3-hydroxypropyl, 2,3-dihydroxypropyl, 4-hydroxybutyl, 1,1-dimethyl-2-hydroxyethyl, 5,5,4-  
10   trihydroxypentyl, 5-hydroxypentyl, 6-hydroxyhexyl, 1-hydroxyisopropyl, 2-methyl-3-hydroxypropyl, etc.

The lower alkanoyl group includes a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkanoyl group, for example, formyl, acetyl, propionyl, butyryl, isobutyryl, pentanoyl, t-butylcarbonyl, hexanoyl, etc.

- 15           The above heterocyclic group which is substituted by a group of the formula:  $-(A)_L-NR^9N^{10}$  (A is a lower alkylene group, L is 0 or 1, R<sup>9</sup> and R<sup>10</sup> are the same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group, or R<sup>9</sup> and R<sup>10</sup> combine together with the nitrogen atom to which they bond to form a 5- or 7-membered saturated heterocyclic group with or without being  
20   intervened with another nitrogen atom or an oxygen atom, and said heterocyclic group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent), a lower alkyl group having optionally a hydroxy substituent, a hydroxy group and a lower alkanoyl group includes the above mentioned heterocyclic groups having 1 to 3



- sustituents selected from a group of the formula:  $-(A)_\ell-NR^9R^{10}$  (A is a straight chain or branched chain  $C_1-C_6$  alkylene group,  $\ell$  is 0 or 1,  $R^9$  and  $R^{10}$  are the same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a straight chain or branched chain  $C_1-C_6$  alkyl group, or  $R^9$  and  $R^{10}$  combine together with the nitrogen atom to
- 5 which they bond to form a 5- or 7-membered saturated heterocyclic group with or without being intervened with another nitrogen atom or an oxygen atom, and said heterocyclic group having optionally 1 to 3 straight chain or branched chain  $C_1-C_6$  alkyl substituents), a straight chain or branched chain alkyl group having optionally 1 to 3 hydroxy substituents, a hydroxy group and a straight
- 10 chain or branched chain  $C_1-C_6$  alkanoyl group, for example, 4-methyl-piperazinyl, 2-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)methylmorpholino, 4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)piperidinyl, 4-methylhomopiperazinyl, 4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-piperazinyl, 4-morpholinopiperidinyl, 2-[(1-pyrrolidinyl)methyl]morpholino, 4-hydroxypiperidinyl, 4-acetylpiperazinyl, 4-dimethylaminopiperidinyl, 4-(4-
- 15 methyl-1-homopiperazinyl)piperidinyl, 4-(4,5-dimethyl-1-homopiperazinyl)-piperidinyl, 4-(3-methyl-4-ethyl-1-piperazinyl)piperidinyl, 4-(3-methyl-4-n-propyl-1-piperazinyl)piperidinyl, 4-(3,4-dimethyl-1-piperazinyl)piperidinyl, 4-(4-isopropyl-3-methylpiperazinyl)piperidinyl, 4-(4-methyl-3-isopropylpiperazinyl)-piperidinyl, 2-methylpyrrolidinyl, 3-ethylpyrrolidinyl, 2,3-dimethylpyrrolidinyl,
- 20 2,3,4-trimethylpyrrolidinyl, 2-propylmorpholino, 3-(1-pyrrolidinyl)pyrrolidinyl, 3-isopropylmorpholino, 2,3-dimethylmorpholino, 4-n-butylpiperidinyl, 3,4,5-trimethylpiperidinyl, 3-pentylpiperidinyl, 4-methylhomopiperazinyl, 4,5-dimethylhomopiperazinyl, 4-hexylhomopiperazinyl, 3-methyl-4-ethyl-

piperazinyl, 3-methyl-4-n-propyl-1-piperazinyl, 3,4-dimethylpiperazinyl, 4-isopropyl-3-methylpiperazinyl, 4-methyl-3-isopropylpiperazinyl, 4-methyl-homomorpholino, 3-propionylpyrrolidinyl, 4-butyrylpiperidinyl, 4-pentanoyl-piperazinyl, 3-hexanoylmorpholino, 4-acetylhomopiperazinyl, 3-hydroxy-  
5 morpholino, 4-hydroxyhomopiperazinyl, 4-hydroxypiperazinyl, 3-hydroxy-pyrrolidinyl, 3-hydroxymethylpyrrolidinyl, 3-(3-hydroxypropyl)morpholino, 2-hydroxymethylhomomorpholino, 2-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)methylhomo-morpholino, 4-(1,3-dihydroxy-2-propyl)piperazinyl, 4-ethylhomopiperazinyl, 3-(4-methyl-1-homopiperazinyl)pyrrolidinyl, 4-methyl-3-(1-piperidinyl)methyl-  
10 piperazinyl, 4-methyl-3-(4-methyl-1-homopiperazinyl)methylpiperazinyl, 4-methyl-3-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)methylpiperazinyl, etc.

The above heterocyclic group substituted by a lower alkyl group includes the above heterocyclic groups substituted by 1 to 3 straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl groups, for example, 4-methylpiperazinyl, 3,4-  
15 dimethylpiperazinyl, 3-ethylpyrrolidinyl, 2-propylpyrrolidinyl, 1-methyl-pyrrolidinyl, 3,4,5-trimethylpiperidinyl, 4-butylypiperidinyl, 3-pentylmorpholino, 4-ethylhomopiperazinyl, 4-methylhomopiperazinyl, 4-hexylpiperazinyl, 4-methylhomopiperazinyl, 4,5-dimethylhomopiperazinyl, 3-methyl-4-ethyl-piperazinyl, 3-methyl-4-n-propylpiperazinyl, 4-isopropyl-3-methylpiperazinyl, 4-  
20 methyl-3-isopropylpiperazinyl, 4-methylhomomorpholino, etc.

The lower alkoxycarbonyl-substituted lower alkyl group includes a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl group which is substituted by a straight chain or branched chain alkoxycarbonyl group having 1 to 6 carbon atoms, for example, methoxycarbonylmethyl, 3-methoxycarbonylpropyl, ethoxy-

carbonylmethyl, 3-ethoxycarbonylpropyl, 4-ethoxycarbonylbutyl, 5-isopropoxycarbonylpentyl, 6-propoxycarbonylhexyl, 1,1-dimethyl-2-butoxycarbonylethyl, 2-methyl-3-tert-butoxycarbonylpropyl, 2-pentyloxycarbonylethyl, hexyloxycarbonylmethyl, etc.

- 5           The lower alkanoyloxy-substituted lower alkyl group includes a straight chain or branched chain  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl group which is substituted by a straight chain or branched chain  $C_2$ - $C_6$  alkanoyloxy group, for example, acetyloxymethyl, 2-propionyloxyethyl, 1-butyryloxyethyl, 3-acetyloxypropyl, 4-acetyloxybutyl, 4-isobutyryloxybutyl, 5-pentanoyloxypentyl, 6-acetyloxyhexyl, 6-tert-butylcarbonyloxyhexyl, 1,1-dimethyl-2-hexanoyloxyethyl, 2-methyl-3-acetyloxypropyl, etc.
- 10

- The lower alkoxy group having optionally a halogen substituent includes a straight chain or branched chain  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkoxy group which optionally has 1 to 3 halogen substituents, for example, in addition to the above
- 15 lower alkoxy groups, trifluoromethoxy, trichloromethoxy, chloromethoxy, bromomethoxy, fluoromethoxy, iodomethoxy, difluoromethoxy, dibromomethoxy, 2-chloroethoxy, 2,2,2-trifluoroethoxy, 2,2,2-trichloroethoxy, 3-chloropropoxy, 2,3-dichloropropoxy, 4,4,4-trichlorobutoxy, 4-fluorobutoxy, 5-chloropentyloxy, 3-chloro-2-methylpropoxy, 6-bromohexyloxy, 5,6-dichlorohexyloxy, etc.
- 20

          The halogen-substituted lower alkyl group includes a straight chain or branched chain  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl group, which has 1 to 3 halogen substituents, for example, trifluoromethyl, trichloromethyl, chloromethyl, bromomethyl, fluoromethyl, iodomethyl, difluoromethyl, dibromomethyl, 2-chloroethyl, 2,2,2-trifluoro-

ethyl, 2,2,2-trichloroethyl, 3-chloropropyl, 2,3-dichloropropyl, 4,4,4-trichlorobutyl, 4-fluorobutyl, 5-chloropentyl, 3-chloro-2-methylpropyl, 6-bromohexyl, 5,6-dichlorohexyl, etc.

The carboxy-substituted lower alkyl group includes a carboxyalkyl  
5 group wherein the alkyl moiety is a straight chain or branched chain  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl group, for example, carboxymethyl, 2-carboxyethyl, 1-carboxyethyl, 3-carboxypropyl, 4-carboxybutyl, 5-carboxypentyl, 6-carboxyhexyl, 1,1-dimethyl-2-carboxyethyl, 2-methyl-3-carboxypropyl, etc.

The lower alkoxy carbonyl group includes a straight chain or branched  
10 chain alkoxy carbonyl group having 1 to 6 carbon atoms in the alkoxy moiety, for example, methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, propoxycarbonyl, isopropoxycarbonyl, butoxycarbonyl, tert-butoxycarbonyl, pentyloxycarbonyl, hexyloxycarbonyl, etc.

The aminocarbonyl-substituted lower alkoxy group having optionally a  
15 lower alkyl group includes a straight chain or branched chain  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkoxy group, which has an aminocarbonyl group having optionally 1 to 2 straight chain or branched chain  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl group, for example, aminocarbonylmethoxy, 2-aminocarbonylethoxy, 1-aminocarbonylethoxy, 3-aminocarbonylpropoxy, 4-aminocarbonylbutoxy, 5-aminocarbonylpentyloxy, 6-amino-  
20 carbonylhexyloxy, 1,1-dimethyl-2-aminocarbonylethoxy, 2-methyl-3-aminocarbonylpropoxy, methylaminocarbonylmethoxy, 1-ethylaminocarbonylethoxy, 2-propylaminocarbonylethoxy, 1-ethylaminocarbonylethoxy, 2-propylaminocarbonylethoxy, 3-isopropylaminocarbonylpropoxy, 4-butylaminocarbonylbutoxy, 5-pentylaminocarbonylpentyloxy, 6-hexylaminocarbonylhexyloxy,

dimethylaminocarbonylmethoxy, 2-diethylaminocarbonylethoxy, 2-dimethylaminocarbonylethoxy, (N-ethyl-N-propylamino)carbonylmethoxy, 2-(N-methyl-N-hexylamino)carbonylethoxy, etc.

5 The amino-substituted lower alkyl group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent includes a straight chain or branched chain  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl group which is substituted by an amino group having optionally 1 to 2  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl substituents, for example, aminomethyl, 2-aminoethyl, 1-aminoethyl, 3-amino-  
propyl, 4-aminobutyl, 5-aminopentyl, 6-aminoethyl, 1,1-dimethyl-2-aminoethyl, 2-methyl-3-aminopropyl, methylaminomethyl, 1-ethylaminoethyl, 2-propylamino-  
10 ethyl, 3-isopropylaminopropyl, 4-butylaminobutyl 5-pentylaminopentyl, 6-hexylaminohexyl, dimethylaminomethyl, (N-ethyl-N-propylamino)methyl, 2-(N-methyl-N-hexylamino)ethyl, etc.

The 5- to 12-membered saturated heteromonocyclic, heterobicyclic or heterospirocyclic group which is formed by combining  $R^{12}$  and  $R^{13}$  together  
15 with the adjacent nitrogen atom to which they bond with or without being intervened with another nitrogen atom or an oxygen atom includes, for example, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholino, homopiperazinyl, homomorpholino, 1,4-diazabicyclo[4.3.0]nonyl, 1,4-diazabicyclo[4.4.0]decyl, 1,4-diazaspiro[5.5]undecyl, etc.

20 The lower alkoxy-substituted lower alkyl group includes a straight chain or branched chain  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl group which has 1 to 3 straight chain or branched chain  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkoxy groups, for example, methoxymethyl 3-methoxypropyl, ethoxymethyl, 2-methoxyethyl, 3-ethoxypropyl, 4-ethoxybutyl, 5-isopropoxypropyl, 6-propoxyhexyl, 1,1-dimethyl-2-butoxyethyl, 2-methyl-3-

tert-butoxypropyl, 2-pentyloxyethyl, hexyloxymethyl, etc.

The amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent includes an amino group having optionally 1 to 2 straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl groups, for example, amino, methylamino, ethylamino, propylamino, 5 isopropylamino, butylamino, tert-butylamino, pentylamino, hexylamino, dimethylamino, diethylamino, dipropylamino, dibutylamino, dipentylamino, dihexylamino, N-methyl-N-ethylamino, N-ethyl-N-propylamino, N-methyl-N-butylamino, N-methyl-N-hexylamino, etc.

The above heterocyclic group having a substituent selected from a lower 10 alkyl group, a lower alkoxy-substituted lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy-carbonyl group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a hydroxy-substituted lower alkyl group includes the above mentioned heterocyclic groups having 1 to 3 substituents selected from a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl group, a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> 15 alkyl group which has 1 to 3 straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy group, a straight chain or branched chain alkoxy carbonyl group having 1 to 6 carbon atoms in the alkoxy moiety, an amino group having optionally 1 to 2 straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl groups and a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl group which has 1 to 3 hydroxy substituents, for 20 example, 4-methylpiperazinyl, 3,4-dimethylpiperazinyl, 4-ethylpiperazinyl, 4-methylhomopiperazinyl, 4-dimethylaminopiperidinyl, 4-tert-butoxycarbonyl-homopiperazinyl, 4-n-butylhomopiperazinyl, 4-(2-hydroxyethyl)piperazinyl, 3-methylpiperazinyl, 4-(1,3-dihydroxy-2-propyl)piperazinyl, 4-(1,3-dihydroxy-2-propyl)homopiperazinyl, 3,4,5-trimethylpiperazinyl, 4-isopropylpiperazinyl,

3,3,4-trimethylpiperazinyl, 4,5-dimethylhomopiperazinyl, 3-methyl-4-ethyl-  
piperazinyl, 3-methyl-4-n-propylpiperazinyl, 3-n-propyl-4-methylpiperazinyl, 3-  
methyl-4-isopropylpiperazinyl, 3-ethyl-4-methylpiperazinyl, 3-methyl-4-(2-  
methoxyethyl)piperazinyl, 3-methyl-4-(2-hydroxyethyl)piperazinyl, 3-  
5 isopropyl-4-methylpiperazinyl, 4-methyl-1,4-diazaspiro[5.5]undecyl, 3-amino-  
1,4-diazabicyclo[4.4.0]decyl, 5-hydroxymethyl-1,4-diazabicyclo[4.3.0]nonyl, 3-  
ethoxycarbonylhomomorpholino, 3-diethylaminomorpholino, 3-methoxy-  
methylpyrrolidinyl, etc.

The lower alkyl group having optionally a halogen substituent includes,  
10 for example, in addition to the above lower alkyl groups and halogen-  
substituted lower alkyl groups.

The pyridyl group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent which may  
optionally have a halogen substituent on the pyridine ring includes a pyridyl  
group having 1 to 3 straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl groups which  
15 may optionally 1 to 3 halogen substituents on the pyridine ring, for example,  
pyridyl, 3-methylpyridyl, 4-ethylpyridyl, 2-propylpyridyl, 3-butylpyridyl, 4-  
pentylpyridyl, 4-hexylpyridyl, 3,4-dimethylpyridyl, 3,4,5-trimethylpyridyl, 3-  
trifluoromethylpyridyl, 2-chloromethylpyridyl, 4-(5-bromohexyl)pyridyl, 3-  
iodomethylpyridyl, 4-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)pyridyl, 4-(5,6-dichlorohexyl)pyridyl,  
20 etc.

The cycloalkyl group includes a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl group, for example,  
cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, cyclooctyl, etc.

The tetrahydropyranyloxy-substituted lower alkyl group includes a  
tetrahydropyranyloxy-substituted alkyl group wherein the alkyl moiety is a

straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl group, for example, (2-tetrahydropyranyl)oxymethyl, 2-(3-tetrahydropyranyl)oxyethyl, 1-(4-tetrahydropyranyl)-oxyethyl, 3-(2-tetrahydropyranyl)oxypropyl, 4-(3-tetrahydropyranyl)oxybutyl, 5-(4-tetrahydropyranyl)oxypentyl, 6-(2-tetrahydropyranyl)oxyhexyl, 1,1-  
5 dimethyl-2-(3-tetrahydropyranyl)oxyethyl, 2-methyl-3-(4-tetrahydropyranyl)-oxypropyl, etc.

The phenyl-lower alkyl group includes a phenylalkyl group wherein the alkyl moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl group, for example, benzyl, 2-phenylethyl, 1-phenylethyl, 3-phenylpropyl, 4-phenylbutyl,  
10 5-phenylpentyl, 6-phenylhexyl, 1,1-dimethyl-2-phenylethyl, 2-methyl-3-phenylpropyl, etc.

The phenyl-lower alkoxy group includes a phenylalkoxy group wherein the alkoxy moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy group, for example, benzyloxy, 2-phenylethoxy, 1-phenylethoxy, 3-phenylpropoxy, 4-  
15 phenylbutoxy, 5-phenylpentyloxy, 6-phenylhexyloxy, 1,1-dimethyl-2-phenylethoxy, 2-methyl-3-phenylpropoxy, etc.

The lower alkanoyloxy group includes a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkanoyloxy group, for example, formyloxy, acetyloxy, propionyloxy, butyryloxy, isobutyryloxy, pentanoyloxy, tert-butylcarbonyloxy, hexanoyloxy,  
20 etc.

The piperidinyl group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent on the piperidine ring includes a piperidinyl group having optionally a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl group, for example, piperidinyl, 1-methyl-4-piperidinyl, 1-ethyl-3-piperidinyl, 1-ethyl-2-piperidinyl, 1-propyl-4-piperidinyl, 1-



butyl-4-piperidinyl, 1-pentyl-4-piperidinyl, 1-hexyl-4-piperidinyl, 1-isobutyl-3-piperidinyl, 1-tert-butyl-2-piperidinyl, etc.

The phenyl-lower alkyl group having optionally a lower alkylenedioxy substituent on the phenyl ring includes a phenylalkyl group having optionally a  
5 straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylenedioxy group on the phenyl ring wherein the alkyl moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl group, in addition to the above phenyl-lower alkyl groups, for example, 3,4-methylenedioxybenzyl, 2-(3,4-ethylenedioxyphenyl)ethyl, 1-(3,4-ethylene-  
dioxypheyl)ethyl, 3-(2,3-trimethylenedioxyphenyl)propyl, 4-(3,4-tetra-  
10 methylenedioxyphenyl)butyl, 5-(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl)pentyl, 6-(2,3-trimethylenedioxyphenyl)hexyl, etc.

The lower alkylenedioxy group includes a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylenedioxy group, for example, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, trimethylenedioxy, tetramethylenedioxy, etc.

15 The 5- to 10-membered, saturated or unsaturated heteromonocyclic or heterobicyclic residue having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom includes, for example, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholino, 1-azabicyclooctyl, homopiperazinyl, homomorpholino, 1,4-diazabicyclo[4.3.0]nonyl, 1,4-diazabicyclo[4.4.0]decyl, pyridyl,  
20 1,2,5,6-tetrahydropyridyl, thienyl, 1,2,4-triazolyl, 1,2,3,4-tetrazolyl, 1,3,4-triazolyl, quinolyl, 1,4-dihydroquinolyl, benzothiazolyl, pyrazyl, pyrimidyl, pyridazinyl, pyrrolyl, pyrrolinyl, carbostyryl, 1,3-dioxolanyl, thiomorpholino, 3,4-dihydro-carbostyryl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolyl, 2,3,4,5-tetrahydrofuryl, indolyl, isoindolyl, 3H-indolyl, indolinyl, indolidinyl, indazolyl, benzimidazolyl, benzoxazolyl,

imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, isoquinoly, naphthylidiny, quinazolidiny,  
quinoxaliny, cinnoliny, phthalaziny, chromany, isoindoliny, isochromany,  
pyrazolyl, 1,3,4-oxadiazolyl, 1,3,4-thiadiazolyl, thienyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolidiny,  
benzofuryl, 2,3-dihydrobenzo[b]furyl, benzothienyl, tetrahydropyrany, 4H-  
5 chromenyl, 1H-indazolyl, 2-imidazoliny, 2-pyrroliny, furyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl,  
thiazolyl, thiazoliny, isothiazolyl, pyranly, pyrazolidiny, 2-pyrazoliny,  
quinuclidiny, 1,4-benzoxaziny, 3,4-dihydro-2H-1,4-benzoxaziny, 3,4-dihydro-  
2H-1,4-benzothiaziny, 1,4-benzothiaziny, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoly, 1,2,3,4-  
tetrahydroquinoxaliny, 1,3-dithia-2,4-dihydronaphthaleny, 1,4-dithia-  
10 naphthaleny, 2,5-dihydrofurano[3.4-c]pyridyl, 2,3,4,5,6,7-hexahydro-1H-  
azepiny, 1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8-octahydroazociny, 1,2,3,4,5,6,-tetrahydrooxepiny, 1,3-  
dioxolany, 3,4,5,6-tetrahydro-2H-pyrany, 5,6-dihydro-2H-pyrany, etc.

The above heterocyclic groups having 1 to 3 substituents selected from  
(i) a lower alkyl group; (ii) a group:  $-(B)_\ell-NR^{12}R^{13}$  ( $\ell$  is the same as defined  
15 above, B is a group:  $-CO-A-$  (A is the same as defined above), a carbonyl  
group or a lower alkylene group,  $R^{12}$  and  $R^{13}$  are the same or different, and each  
are a hydrogen atom, a lower alkyl group, an amino-substituted lower alkyl  
group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent, or combine together with the  
adjacent nitrogen atom to which they bond to form a 5- to 12-membered  
20 saturated heteromonocyclic, heterobicyclic or spiro-cyclic hetero ring with or  
without being intervened with another nitrogen atom or an oxygen atom, said  
heterocyclic group may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower  
alkyl group, a lower alkoxycarbonyl group, a lower alkoxy-substituted lower  
alkyl group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a

hydroxy-substituted lower alkyl group); (iii) a lower alkoxy carbonyl group; (iv) a hydroxy-substituted lower alkyl group; (v) a pyridyl group being optionally substituted by a lower alkyl group having optionally a halogen substituent on the pyridine ring; (vi) a halogen-substituted lower alkyl group; (vii) a lower alkoxy group; (viii) a cycloalkyl group; (ix) a hydroxy group; (x) a tetrahydropyranyloxy-substituted lower alkyl group; (xi) a pyrimidyl group; (xii) a lower alkoxy-substituted lower alkyl group; (xiii) a carboxyl group; (xiv) a phenyl-lower alkoxy group; (xv) a phenyl-lower alkyl group having optionally a lower alkylenedioxy substituent on the phenyl ring; (xvi) a lower alkanoyloxy group; and (xvii) a piperidinyl group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent on the piperidine ring includes the above heterocyclic groups having 1 to 3 substituents selected from (i) a straight chain or branched chain  $C_1-C_6$  alkyl group; (ii) a group:  $-(B)_\ell-NR^{12}R^{13}$  ( $\ell$  is the same as defined above, B is a group:  $-CO-A-$  (A is the same as defined above), a carbonyl group or a straight chain or branched chain  $C_1-C_6$  alkylene group,  $R^{12}$  and  $R^{13}$  are the same or different, and each are a hydrogen atom, a straight chain or branched chain  $C_1-C_6$  alkyl group, or a straight chain or branched chain  $C_1-C_6$  alkyl group which has an amino group having optionally 1 to 2 straight chain or branched chain alkyl substituents, or both combine together with the adjacent nitrogen atom to which they bond to form a 5- to 12-membered saturated heteromonocyclic, heterobicyclic or spiro-cyclic hetero ring with or without being intervened with another nitrogen atom or an oxygen atom, said heterocyclic group may optionally have 1 to 3 substituents selected from a straight chain or branched chain  $C_1-C_6$  alkyl group, a straight chain or branched chain  $C_1-C_6$  alkyl group

- which has 1 to 3 straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy substituents, a straight chain or branched chain alkoxycarbonyl group having 1 to 6 carbon atoms in the alkoxy moiety, an amino group having optionally 1 to 2 straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl substituent and a straight chain or
- 5 branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl group having 1 to 3 hydroxy substituents); (iii) an alkoxycarbonyl group having 1 to 6 carbon atoms in the alkoxy moiety; (iv) a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl group having 1 to 3 hydroxy substituents; (v) a pyridyl group having optionally 1 to 3 straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl groups which have optionally 1 to 3 halogen
- 10 substituents on the pyridine ring; (vi) a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl group having 1 to 3 halogen substituents; (vii) a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy group; (viii) a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl group; (ix) a hydroxy group; (x) a tetrahydropyranyloxy-substituted alkyl group wherein the alkyl moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl group; (xi) a
- 15 pyrimidyl group; (xii) a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl group having 1 to 3 straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy substituents; (xiii) a carboxyl group; (xiv) a phenyl alkoxy group wherein the alkoxy moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy group; (xv) a phenylalkyl group having optionally a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylenedioxy
- 20 substituent on the phenyl ring, wherein the alkyl moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl group; (xvi) a straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkanoyloxy group; and (xvii) a piperidinyl group having optionally 1 to 3

straight chain or branched chain C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl substituents on the piperidine ring, for example, 4-methylpiperazinyl, 4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)piperidinyl, 2-(4-methyl-1-piperazinylmethyl)morpholino, 2-(4-methyl-1-piperazinylmethyl)-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)pyrrolidinyl, 1-ethyl-1,2,3,4-tetrazolyl, 1-tert-butoxycarbonylpiperidinyl, 1-methylpiperidinyl, 2,2-dimethyl-1,3-dioxolanyl, 4-(3,4-dimethyl-1-piperazinyl)piperidinyl, 4-(4-ethyl-1-piperazinyl)piperidinyl, 4-[N-(2-diethylaminoethyl)-N-methylamino]piperidinyl, 4-(4-methyl-1-homopiperazinyl)piperidinyl, 2-(4-ethyl-1-piperazinylmethyl)morpholino, 4-dimethylaminopiperidinyl, 2-morpholinomethylpyrrolidinyl, 4-(1-pyrrolidinyl)piperidinyl, 4-isopentylpiperazinyl, 4-(2-hydroxyethyl)piperazinyl, 2-(1-pyrrolidinylmethyl)morpholino, 4-morpholinopiperidinyl, 2-aminomethylmorpholino, 1-dimethylaminomethylcarbonylpiperidinyl, 1-methylimidazolyl, 4-(2-pyridyl)piperazinyl, 4-(3,4-methylenedioxybenzyl)piperazinyl, 1-(4-chlorobutyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrazolyl, 2-methoxycarbonylpyridyl, 2-carboxypyridyl, 4-isopropylpyridyl, 4-hydroxypiperidinyl, 2-methyl-3-hydroxy-2,5-dihydrofuran-[3,4-c]pyridyl, 1-cyclohexyl-1,2,3,4-tetrazolyl, 3-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)pyrrolidinyl, 1-[(3-3,4,5,6-tetrahydro-2H-pyran-2-yl)methyl]-1,2,3,4-tetrazolyl, 1-(3-chloropropyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrazolyl, 2-carbamoylpyrrolidinyl, 4-(3-trifluoromethyl-2-pyridyl)piperazinyl, 4-benzylpiperidinyl, 4-n-butyl-1,2,3,4-tetrazolyl, 4-carbamoylpiperidinyl, 2-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)homomorpholino, 2-methylmorpholino, 2-methoxymethylmorpholino, 2-chloromethylmorpholino, 2-hydroxymethylmorpholino, 2-n-butoxymethylmorpholino, 2-(4-methyl-1-homopiperazinylmethyl)morpholino, 6,7-dimethoxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinolyl, 2-(4-methyl-1-homopiperazinylmethyl)homomorpholino, 2-chloromethylhomomorpholino, 2-hydroxymethylhomomorpholino, 4-hydroxy-

piperazinyl, 2-methoxymethyl-1,2,3,4,5,6-hexahydrooxepinyl, 4-(2-phenyl-  
 ethoxy)piperidinyl, 4-benzyloxypiperidinyl, 4-hydroxy-3-methylpiperazinyl, 4-  
 methylhomopiperazinyl, 4-acetyloxypiperazinyl, 4-methoxypiperazinyl, 4-(4-  
 tert-butoxycarbonyl-1-homopiperazinyl)piperidinyl, 4-(4-n-butyl-1-homo-  
 5 piperazinyl)piperidinyl, 4-(1-methyl-4-piperidinyl)homopiperazinyl, 3-(4-methyl-  
 1-homopiperazinyl)piperidinyl, 2-(4-dimethylamino-1-piperidinylmethyl)-  
 morpholino, 2-(4-methyl-1-piperazinylmethyl)homomorpholino, 2-[4-(2-  
 hydroxyethyl)-1-piperazinylmethyl]morpholino, 4-(3-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-  
 piperidinyl, 4-(4-ethyl-1-homopiperazinyl)piperidinyl, 3-(4-methyl-1-homo-  
 10 piperazinyl)pyrrolidinyl, 4-[4-(1,3-dihydroxy-2-propyl)-1-piperazinyl]-  
 piperidinyl, 4-[4-(1,3-dihydroxy-2-propyl)-1-homopiperazinyl]piperidinyl, 4-  
 methyl-3-(1-piperidinylmethyl)piperazinyl, 4-methyl-3-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl-  
 methyl)piperazinyl, 4-methyl-3-(4-methyl-1-homopiperazinylmethyl)piperazinyl,  
 3,4,5-trimethoxypiperazinyl, 4-isopropylpiperazinyl, 4-(1,4-diazabicyclo[4.3.0]-  
 15 nonyl)piperidinyl, (3,3,4-trimethyl-1-piperazinyl)piperidinyl, 4-(1,4-diazabicyclo-  
 [4.4.0]decyl)piperidinyl, 4-(3-methyl-4-ethyl-1-piperazinyl)piperidinyl, 4-(3-  
 methyl-4-propyl-1-piperazinyl)piperidinyl, 4-(3-propyl-4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-  
 piperidinyl, 4-(3-methyl-4-isopropyl-1-piperazinyl)piperidinyl, 4-(3-ethyl-4-  
 methyl-1-piperazinyl)piperidinyl, 4-[3-methyl-4-(2-methoxyethyl)-1-piperazinyl]-  
 20 piperidinyl, 4-[3-methyl-4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-1-piperazinyl]piperidinyl, 4-(4-  
 methyl-1-1,4-diazaspiro[5.5]undecyl)piperidinyl, 4-(4-methyl-3-isopropyl-1-  
 piperazinyl)piperidinyl, 4-(2-pyrimidyl)piperazinyl, etc.

The lower alkenyloxy group includes a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> straight chain or branched  
 chain alkenyloxy group, for example, vinyloxy, 1-methylvinyloxy, 2,2-dimethyl-  
 25 vinyloxy, 1,2-dimethylvinyloxy, 1-propylvinyloxy, allyloxy, 2-butenyloxy, 3-

butenyloxy, 1-ethylvinylloxy, 1-methylallyloxy, 1-pentenylloxy, 2-pentenylloxy, 2-hexenylloxy, 3-methyl-1-butenylloxy, 1-butenylloxy, etc.

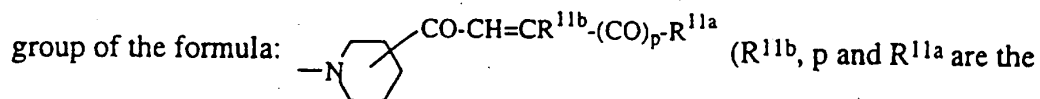
The cycloalkyloxy group includes a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyloxy group, for example, cyclopropyloxy, cyclobutyloxy, cyclopentyloxy, cyclohexyloxy, 5 cycloheptyloxy, cyclooctyloxy, etc.

The lower alkylthio group includes a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> straight chain or branched chain alkylthio group, for example, methylthio, ethylthio, propylthio, isopropylthio, butylthio, isobutylthio, tert-butylthio, pentylthio, hexylthio, etc.

The lower alkenyl group includes a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> straight chain or branched 10 chain alkenyl group, for example, vinyl, 1-methylvinyl, 2,2-dimethylvinyl, 1,2-dimethylvinyl, 1-propenylvinyl, allyl, 2-butenyl, 3-butenyl, 1-ethylvinyl, 1-methylallyl, 1-pentenyl, 2-pentenyl, 2-hexenyl, 3-methyl-1-butenyl, 1-butenyl, etc.

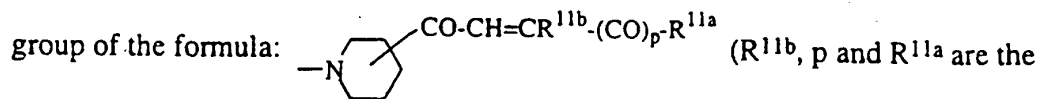
The present invention specifically includes the following compounds.

(1) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are the 15 same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group, R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the formula:



same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>4</sup> is a hydrogen atom, and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

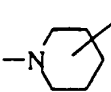
(2) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are the 20 same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group, R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the formula:



same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>4</sup> is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group,

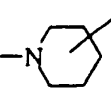
and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

(3) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are the same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group,  $R^3$  is a

group of the formula:   $\text{CO-CH=CR}^{11b}\text{-(CO)}_p\text{-R}^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the

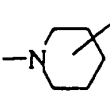
5 same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

(4) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are the same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group,  $R^3$  is a

group of the formula:   $\text{CO-CH=CR}^{11b}\text{-(CO)}_p\text{-R}^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the

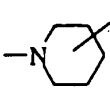
10 same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group, and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

(5) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $\text{-(CH}_2\text{)}_n\text{-}$  (n is 4),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:

  $\text{CO-CH=CR}^{11b}\text{-(CO)}_p\text{-R}^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in

15 the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

(6) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $\text{-(CH}_2\text{)}_n\text{-}$  (n is 4),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:

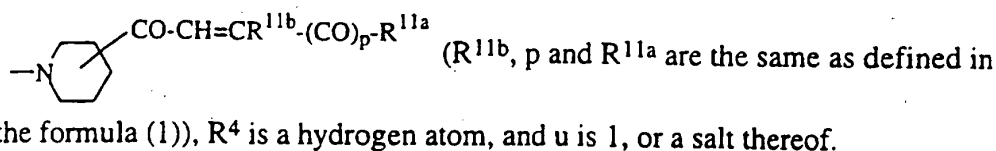
  $\text{CO-CH=CR}^{11b}\text{-(CO)}_p\text{-R}^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in

the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 0, or a salt

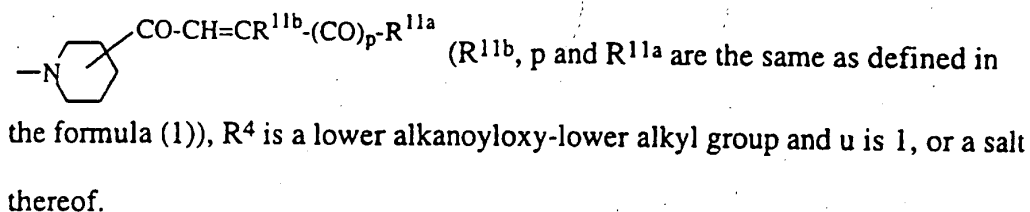
20 thereof.



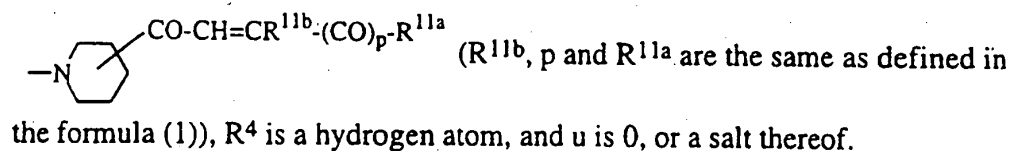
(7) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 4),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



5 (8) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 4),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:

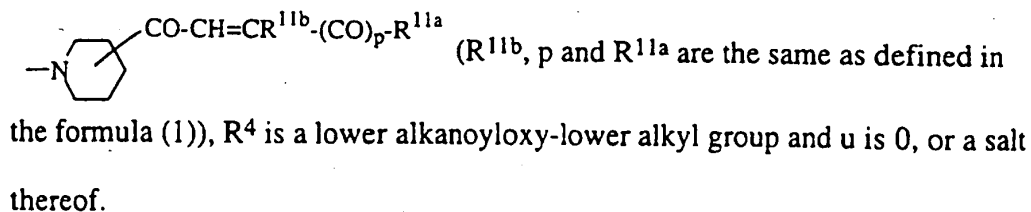


10 (9) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 5),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



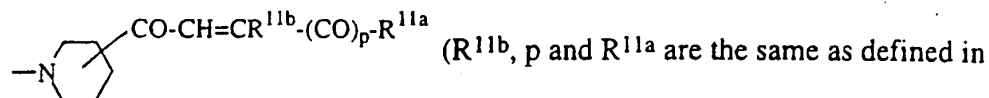
(10) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$

15 combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 5),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



(11) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$

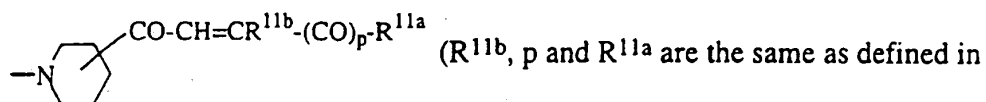
combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 5),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

(12) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$

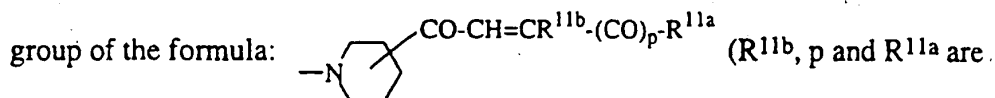
5 combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 5),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

(13) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$

10 combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom,  $R^3$  is a



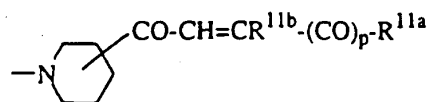
the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and  $u$  is 0, or a

15 salt thereof.

(14) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$

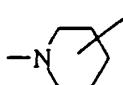
combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom,  $R^3$  is a

20 group of the formula:

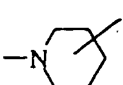


the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and  $u$  is 0, or a salt thereof.

- (15) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom,  $R^3$  is a

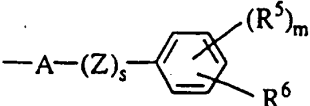
group of the formula:  (R<sup>11b</sup>, p and R<sup>11a</sup> are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

- 10 (16) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom,  $R^3$  is a

group of the formula:  (R<sup>11b</sup>, p and R<sup>11a</sup> are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

- 15 same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

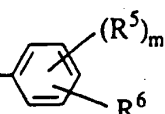
(17) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are the same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group,  $R^3$  is a

group of the formula:  (s is 0,  $R^6$  is a group:

- 20  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m, A and Z are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a

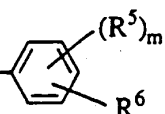
hydrogen atom, and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

(18) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are the same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group,  $R^3$  is a

group of the formula:  $-A-(Z)_s-$   (s is 0,  $R^6$  is a group:

5  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m, A and Z are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

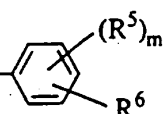
(19) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are the same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group,  $R^3$  is a

10 group of the formula:  $-A-(Z)_s-$   (s is 0,  $R^6$  is a group:

$-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m, A and Z are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

(20) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are the

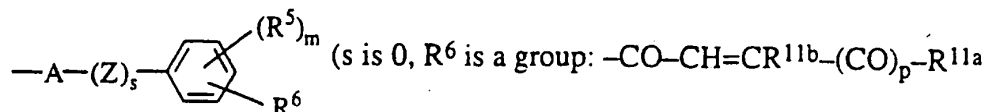
15 same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group,  $R^3$  is a

group of the formula:  $-A-(Z)_s-$   (s is 0,  $R^6$  is a group:

$-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m, A and Z are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

20 (21) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$

combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  (n is 4),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



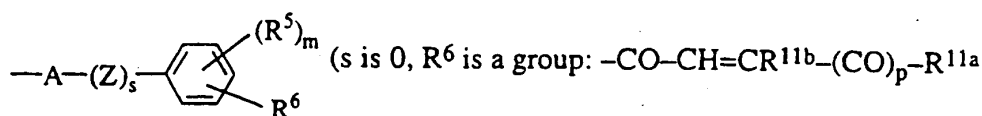
( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m, A and Z are

the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and u is 0, or a

5 salt thereof.

(22) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$

combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  (n is 4),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:

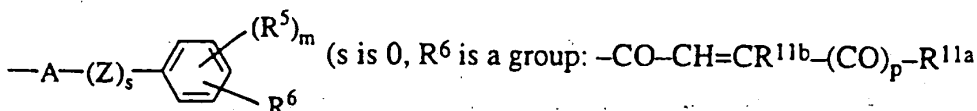


( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m, A and Z are

10 the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

(23) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$

combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  (n is 4),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:

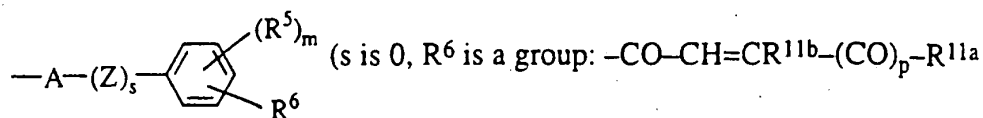


15 ( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m, A and Z are

the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

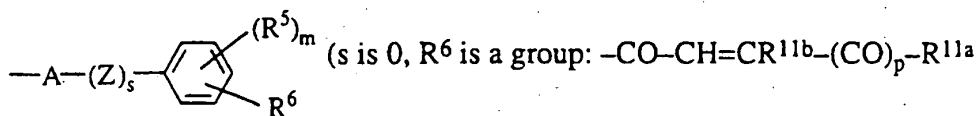
(24) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$

combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  (n is 4),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



( $R^{11b}$ ,  $p$  and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ ,  $m$ ,  $A$  and  $Z$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

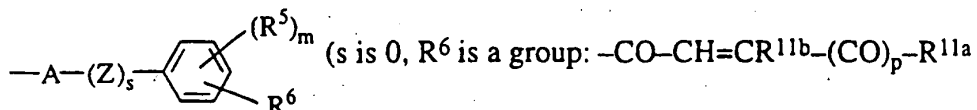
- 5 (25) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 5),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



( $R^{11b}$ ,  $p$  and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ ,  $m$ ,  $A$  and  $Z$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and  $u$  is 0, or a salt thereof.

10

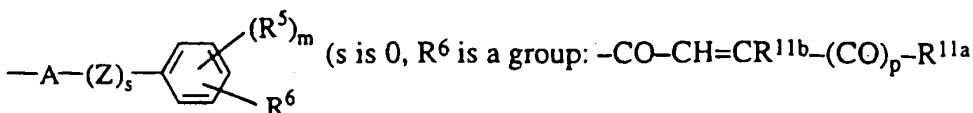
- (26) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 5),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



( $R^{11b}$ ,  $p$  and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ ,  $m$ ,  $A$  and  $Z$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and  $u$  is 0, or a salt thereof.

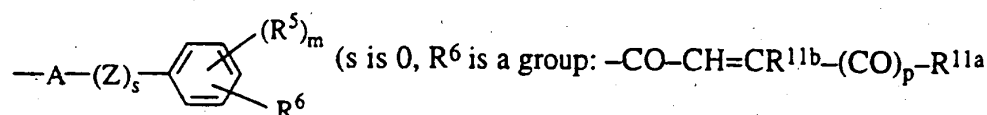
15

- (27) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 5),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



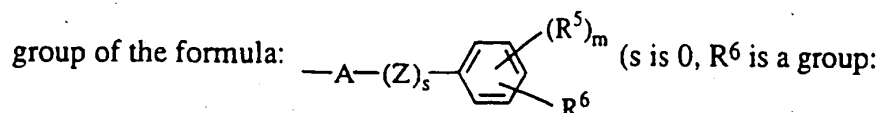
(R<sup>11b</sup>, p and R<sup>11a</sup> are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>5</sup>, m, A and Z are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>4</sup> is a hydrogen atom, and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

- (28) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  (n is 5), R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the formula:



(R<sup>11b</sup>, p and R<sup>11a</sup> are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>5</sup>, m, A and Z are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>4</sup> is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

- (29) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom, R<sup>3</sup> is a



- 15  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  (R<sup>11b</sup>, p and R<sup>11a</sup> are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>5</sup>, m, A and Z are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>4</sup> is a hydrogen atom, and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

- (30) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom, R<sup>3</sup> is a
- 20

33

group of the formula:  $-\text{A}-(\text{Z})_s-\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{R}^5)_m(\text{R}^6)$  (s is 0,  $\text{R}^6$  is a group:

$-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  ( $\text{R}^{11b}$ , p and  $\text{R}^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^5$ , m, A and Z are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

- 5 (31) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$  combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom,  $\text{R}^3$  is a

group of the formula:  $-\text{A}-(\text{Z})_s-\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{R}^5)_m(\text{R}^6)$  (s is 0,  $\text{R}^6$  is a group:

- 10  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  ( $\text{R}^{11b}$ , p and  $\text{R}^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^5$ , m, A and Z are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

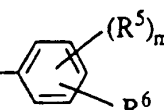
- (32) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$  combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent  
15 selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom,  $\text{R}^3$  is a

group of the formula:  $-\text{A}-(\text{Z})_s-\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{R}^5)_m(\text{R}^6)$  (s is 0,  $\text{R}^6$  is a group:

- $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  ( $\text{R}^{11b}$ , p and  $\text{R}^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^5$ , m, A and Z are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^4$  is a  
20 lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

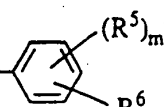


(33) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are the same or different, and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group,  $R^3$  is a

group of the formula:  $-A-(Z)_s-$   (s is 1, Z is an oxygen atom,  $R^6$  is a group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined

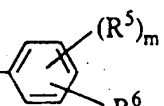
5 in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

(34) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are the same or different, and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group,  $R^3$  is a

group of the formula:  $-A-(Z)_s-$   (s is 1, Z is an oxygen atom,  $R^6$  is a group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined

10 in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

(35) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are the same or different, and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group,  $R^3$  is a

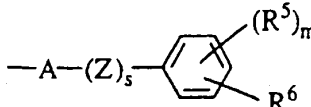
15 group of the formula:  $-A-(Z)_s-$   (s is 1, Z is an oxygen atom,  $R^6$  is a group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined

in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

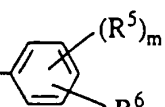
(36) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are the

20 same or different, and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group,  $R^3$  is a

35

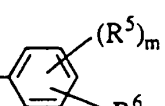
group of the formula:  $\text{—A—(Z)}_s\text{—}$   (s is 1, Z is an oxygen atom, R<sup>6</sup> is a group:  $\text{—CO—CH=CR}^{11b}\text{—(CO)}_p\text{—R}^{11a}$  (R<sup>11b</sup>, p and R<sup>11a</sup> are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>5</sup>, m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>4</sup> is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

- 5 (37) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a group:  $\text{—(CH}_2\text{)}_n\text{—}$  (n is 4), R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the formula:

$\text{—A—(Z)}_s\text{—}$   (s is 1, Z is an oxygen atom, R<sup>6</sup> is a group:  $\text{—CO—CH=CR}^{11b}\text{—(CO)}_p\text{—R}^{11a}$  (R<sup>11b</sup>, p and R<sup>11a</sup> are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>5</sup>, m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>4</sup> is a

- 10 hydrogen atom, and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

- (38) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a group:  $\text{—(CH}_2\text{)}_n\text{—}$  (n is 4), R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the formula:

$\text{—A—(Z)}_s\text{—}$   (s is 1, Z is an oxygen atom, R<sup>6</sup> is a group:  $\text{—CO—CH=CR}^{11b}\text{—(CO)}_p\text{—R}^{11a}$  (R<sup>11b</sup>, p and R<sup>11a</sup> are the same as defined in the

- 15 formula (1)), R<sup>5</sup>, m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>4</sup> is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

- (39) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a group:  $\text{—(CH}_2\text{)}_n\text{—}$  (n is 4), R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the formula:

$$-A-(Z)_s-\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(R^5)_m(R^6) \quad (s \text{ is } 1, Z \text{ is an oxygen atom, } R^6 \text{ is a group:}$$

$$-CO-CH=CR^{11b}-(CO)_p-R^{11a} \quad (R^{11b}, p \text{ and } R^{11a} \text{ are the same as defined in the}$$

$$\text{formula (1)), } R^5, m \text{ and } A \text{ are the same as defined in the formula (1)), } R^4 \text{ is a}$$

$$\text{hydrogen atom, and } u \text{ is } 1, \text{ or a salt thereof.}$$

- 5 (40) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 4),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:

$$-A-(Z)_s-\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(R^5)_m(R^6) \quad (s \text{ is } 1, Z \text{ is an oxygen atom, } R^6 \text{ is a group:}$$

$$-CO-CH=CR^{11b}-(CO)_p-R^{11a} \quad (R^{11b}, p \text{ and } R^{11a} \text{ are the same as defined in the}$$

$$\text{formula (1)), } R^5, m \text{ and } A \text{ are the same as defined in the formula (1)), } R^4 \text{ is a lower}$$

$$\text{alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and } u \text{ is } 1, \text{ or a salt thereof.}$$

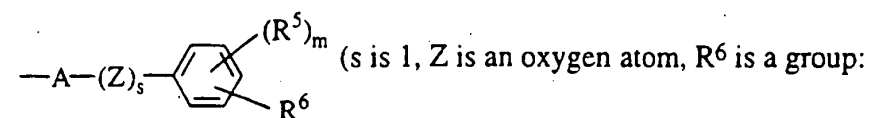
- (41) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 5),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:

$$-A-(Z)_s-\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(R^5)_m(R^6) \quad (s \text{ is } 1, Z \text{ is an oxygen atom, } R^6 \text{ is a group:}$$

$$-CO-CH=CR^{11b}-(CO)_p-R^{11a} \quad (R^{11b}, p \text{ and } R^{11a} \text{ are the same as defined in the}$$

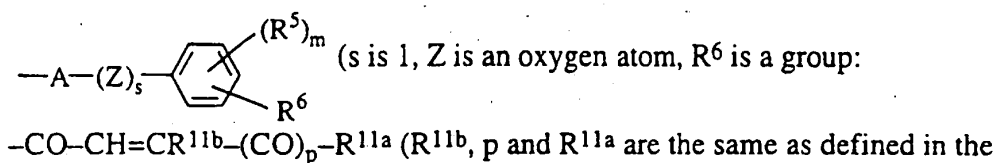
- 15 formula (1)),  $R^5, m$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and  $u$  is 0, or a salt thereof.

- (42) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 5),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



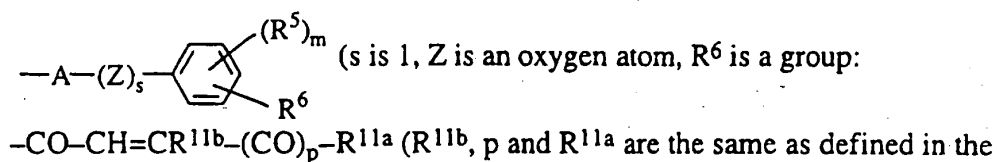
$$-CO-CH=CR^{11b}-(CO)_p-R^{11a}$$
 $(R^{11b}, p \text{ and } R^{11a} \text{ are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R^5, m \text{ and } A \text{ are the same as defined in the formula (1)), } R^4 \text{ is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and } u \text{ is } 0, \text{ or a salt thereof.}$

- 5 (43) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 5),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



- 10 hydrogen atom, and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

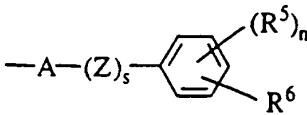
- (44) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 5),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



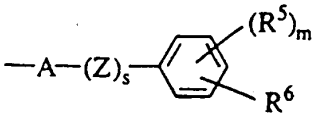
- 15 alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

- (45) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom,  $R^3$  is a
- 20

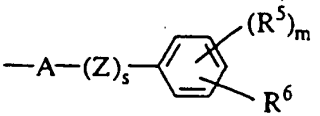
38

group of the formula:  (s is 1, Z is an oxygen atom, R<sup>6</sup> is a group: -CO-CH=CR<sup>11b</sup>-(CO)<sub>p</sub>-R<sup>11a</sup> (R<sup>11b</sup>, p and R<sup>11a</sup> are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>5</sup>, m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>4</sup> is a hydrogen atom, and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

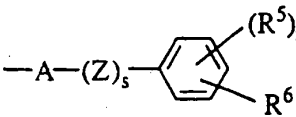
- 5 (46) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom, R<sup>3</sup> is a

group of the formula:  (s is 1, Z is an oxygen atom, R<sup>6</sup> is a group: -CO-CH=CR<sup>11b</sup>-(CO)<sub>p</sub>-R<sup>11a</sup> (R<sup>11b</sup>, p and R<sup>11a</sup> are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>5</sup>, m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>4</sup> is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

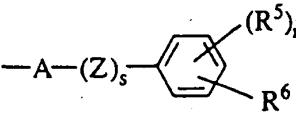
- (47) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent  
15 selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom, R<sup>3</sup> is a

group of the formula:  (s is 1, Z is an oxygen atom, R<sup>6</sup> is a group: -CO-CH=CR<sup>11b</sup>-(CO)<sub>p</sub>-R<sup>11a</sup> (R<sup>11b</sup>, p and R<sup>11a</sup> are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>5</sup>, m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>4</sup> is a  
20 hydrogen atom, and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

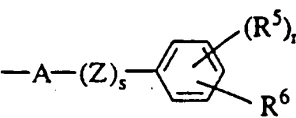
(48) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom,  $R^3$  is a

5 group of the formula:  (s is 1, Z is an oxygen atom,  $R^6$  is a group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

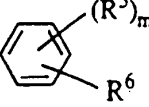
(49) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are the  
10 same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group,  $R^3$  is a

group of the formula:  (s is 1, Z is a sulfur atom,  $R^6$  is a group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

15 (50) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are the same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group,  $R^3$  is a

group of the formula:  (s is 1, Z is a sulfur atom,  $R^6$  is a group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a  
20 lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

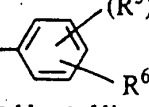
(51) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are the same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group,  $R^3$  is a

group of the formula:  $-A-(Z)_s-$   (s is 1, Z is a sulfur atom,  $R^6$  is

a group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined

5 in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

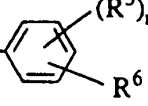
(52) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are the same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group,  $R^3$  is

a group of the formula:  $-A-(Z)_s-$   (s is 1, Z is a sulfur atom,  $R^6$  is

10 a group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined

in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

(53) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(\text{CH}_2)_n-$  (n is 4),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:

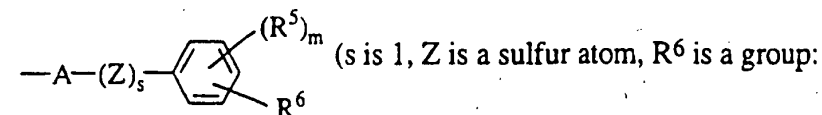
15  $-A-(Z)_s-$   (s is 1, Z is a sulfur atom,  $R^6$  is a group:

$-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the

formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

(54) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$

combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  (n is 4),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



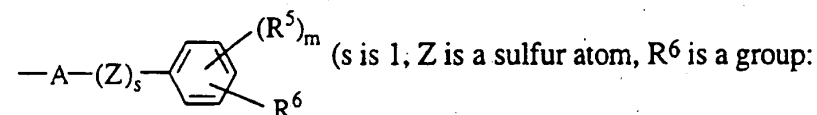
$-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-R^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the

formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower

5 alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

(55) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$

combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  (n is 4),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:

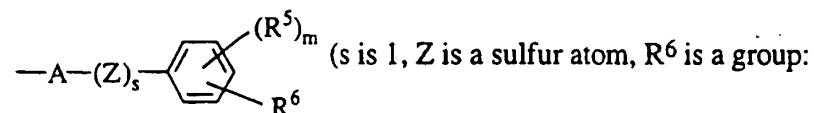


$-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-R^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the

10 formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

(56) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$

combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  (n is 4),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



15  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-R^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the

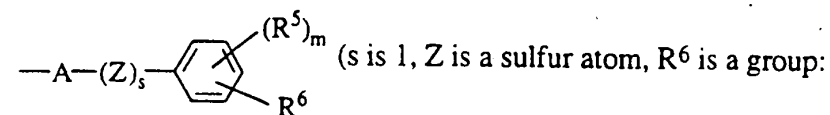
formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower

alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

(57) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$

combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  (n is 5),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



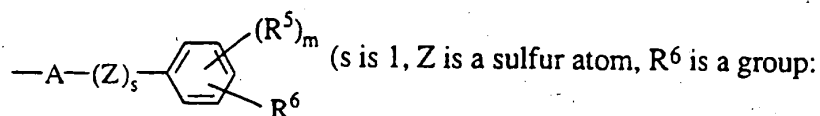


$-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-R^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ ,  $p$  and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the

formula (1)),  $R^5$ ,  $m$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a

hydrogen atom, and  $u$  is 0, or a salt thereof.

- 5 (58) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(\text{CH}_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 5),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:

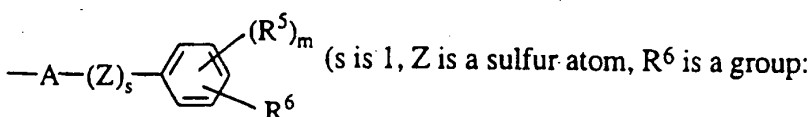


$-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-R^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ ,  $p$  and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the

formula (1)),  $R^5$ ,  $m$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower

- 10 alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and  $u$  is 0, or a salt thereof.

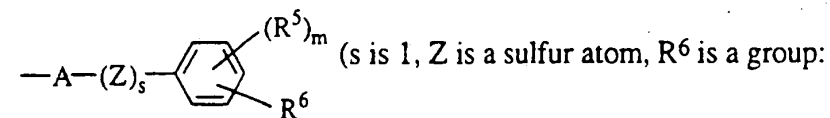
- (59) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(\text{CH}_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 5),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



$-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-R^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ ,  $p$  and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the

- 15 formula (1)),  $R^5$ ,  $m$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

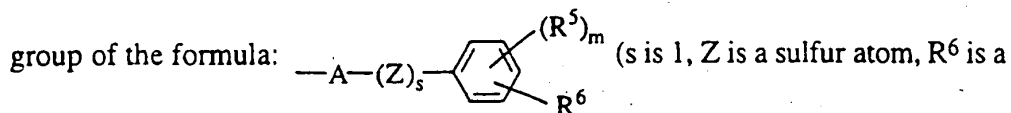
- (60) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(\text{CH}_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 5),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



$-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  (R<sup>11b</sup>, p and R<sup>11a</sup> are the same as defined in the

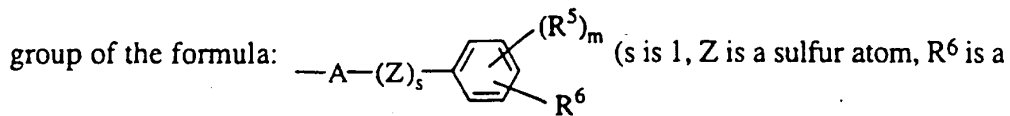
formula (1)), R<sup>5</sup>, m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>4</sup> is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

- 5 (61) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom, R<sup>3</sup> is a



- 10 group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  (R<sup>11b</sup>, p and R<sup>11a</sup> are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>5</sup>, m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>4</sup> is a hydrogen atom, and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

- (62) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent
 15 selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom, R<sup>3</sup> is a

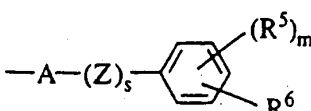


group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  (R<sup>11b</sup>, p and R<sup>11a</sup> are the same as defined

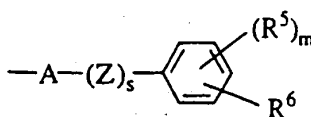
in the formula (1)), R<sup>5</sup>, m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>4</sup> is a

- 20 lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

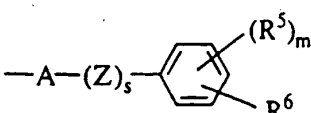
(63) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom,  $R^3$  is a

5 group of the formula:  (s is 1, Z is a sulfur atom,  $R^6$  is a group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

(64) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom,  $R^3$  is a

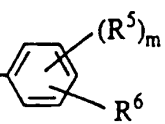
10 group of the formula:  (s is 1, Z is a sulfur atom,  $R^6$  is a group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  ( $R^{11b}$ , p and  $R^{11a}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

(65) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are the same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group,  $R^3$  is a

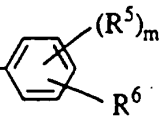
20 group of the formula:  (s is 0,  $R^6$  is a group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $R^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ , Z, m and A

are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and  $u$  is 0, or a salt thereof.

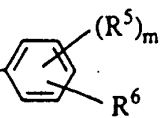
(66) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are the same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group,  $R^3$  is a

5 group of the formula:  $-A-(Z)_s-$   ( $s$  is 0,  $R^6$  is a group:  $-CO-C\equiv C-COR^{14}$  ( $R^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and  $u$  is 0, or a salt thereof.

(67) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are the same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group,  $R^3$  is a

10 group of the formula:  $-A-(Z)_s-$   ( $s$  is 0,  $R^6$  is a group:  $-CO-C\equiv C-COR^{14}$  ( $R^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

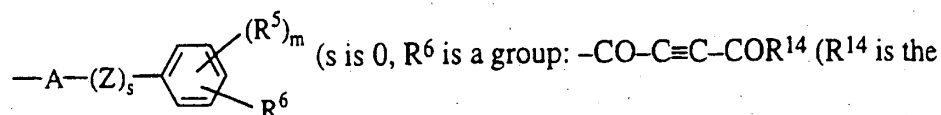
15 (68) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are the same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group,  $R^3$  is a

group of the formula:  $-A-(Z)_s-$   ( $s$  is 0,  $R^6$  is a group:  $-CO-C\equiv C-COR^{14}$  ( $R^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

20

(69) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$

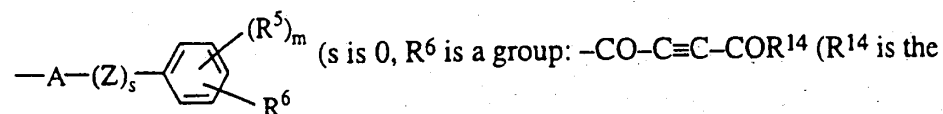
combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 4),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



5 formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and  $u$  is 0, or a salt thereof.

(70) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$

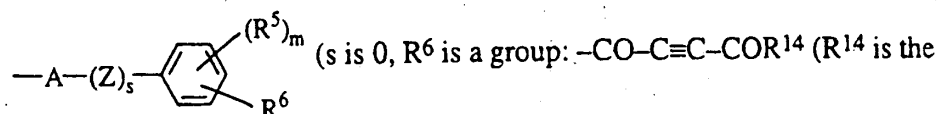
combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 4),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



10 formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and  $u$  is 0, or a salt thereof.

(71) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$

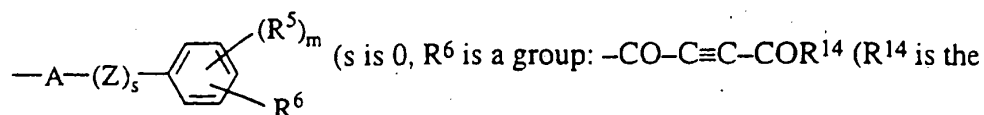
combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 4),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



15 same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

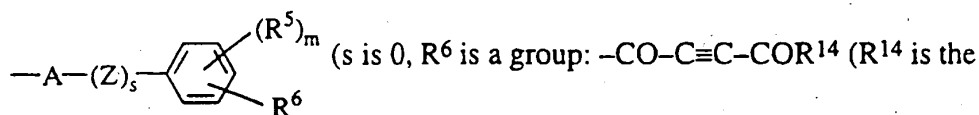
(72) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$

combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 4),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



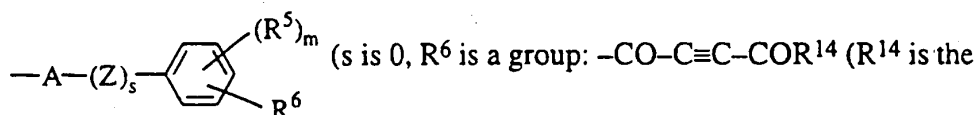
same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>5</sup>, Z, m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>4</sup> is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

- 5 (73) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a group:  $-(\text{CH}_2)_n-$  (n is 5), R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the formula:



same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>5</sup>, Z, m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>4</sup> is a hydrogen atom, and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

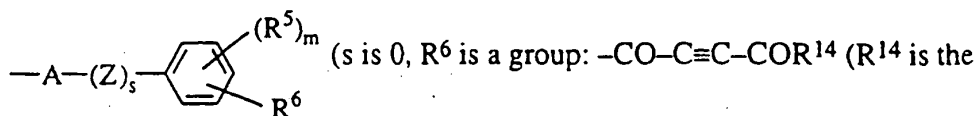
- 10 (74) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a group:  $-(\text{CH}_2)_n-$  (n is 5), R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the formula:



same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>5</sup>, Z, m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>4</sup> is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 0, or a salt

- 15 thereof.

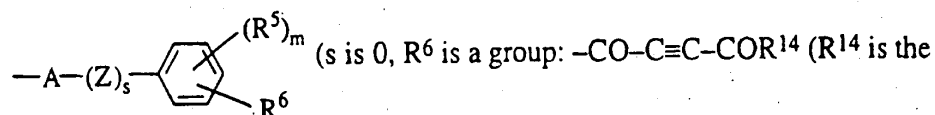
- (75) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a group:  $-(\text{CH}_2)_n-$  (n is 5), R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the formula:



same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>5</sup>, Z, m and A are the same as defined in the

formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

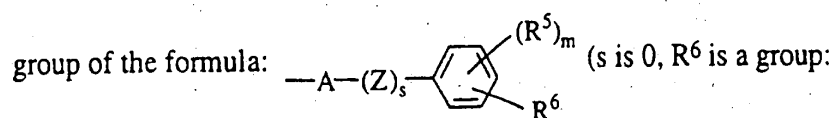
(76) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 5),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



5 same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

(77) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$

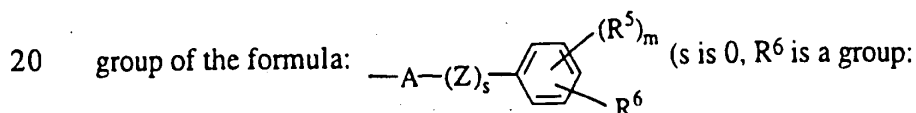
combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent  
10 selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom,  $R^3$  is a



$-CO-C\equiv C-COR^{14}$  ( $R^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$  and  $A$   
15 are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and  $u$  is 0, or a salt thereof.

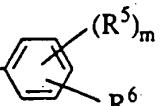
(78) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$

combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent  
selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino  
group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom,  $R^3$  is a



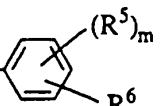
$-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $\text{R}^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^5$ ,  $\text{Z}$ ,  $m$  and  $\text{A}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and  $u$  is 0, or a salt thereof.

(79) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$  combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom,  $\text{R}^3$  is a

group of the formula:  $-\text{A}-(\text{Z})_s-$   ( $s$  is 0,  $\text{R}^6$  is a group:

$-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $\text{R}^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^5$ ,  $\text{Z}$ ,  $m$  and  $\text{A}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

(80) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$  combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom,  $\text{R}^3$  is a

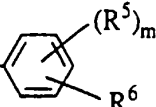
group of the formula:  $-\text{A}-(\text{Z})_s-$   ( $s$  is 0,  $\text{R}^6$  is a group:

$-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $\text{R}^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^5$ ,  $\text{Z}$ ,  $m$  and  $\text{A}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

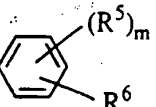
(81) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$  are the same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group,  $\text{R}^3$  is a



50

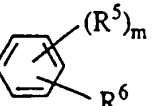
group of the formula:  $\text{---A---(Z)}_s\text{---}$   (s is 1, Z is an oxygen atom, R<sup>6</sup> is a group:  $\text{---CO---C}\equiv\text{C---COR}^{14}$  (R<sup>14</sup> is the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>5</sup>, m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>4</sup> is a hydrogen atom, and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

- 5 (82) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are the same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group, R<sup>3</sup> is a

group of the formula:  $\text{---A---(Z)}_s\text{---}$   (s is 1, Z is an oxygen atom, R<sup>6</sup> is a group:  $\text{---CO---C}\equiv\text{C---COR}^{14}$  (R<sup>14</sup> is the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>5</sup>, m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>4</sup> is a lower alkanoyloxy-

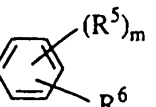
- 10 lower alkyl group and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

- (83) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are the same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group, R<sup>3</sup> is a

group of the formula:  $\text{---A---(Z)}_s\text{---}$   (s is 1, Z is an oxygen atom, R<sup>6</sup> is a group:  $\text{---CO---C}\equiv\text{C---COR}^{14}$  (R<sup>14</sup> is the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>5</sup>, m

- 15 and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>4</sup> is a hydrogen atom, and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

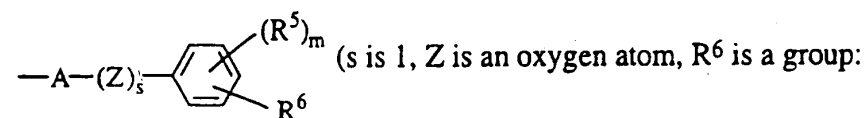
- (84) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are the same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group, R<sup>3</sup> is a

group of the formula:  $\text{---A---(Z)}_s\text{---}$   (s is 1, Z is an oxygen atom, R<sup>6</sup> is

a group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $\text{R}^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^5$ ,  $m$  and  $\text{A}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

(85) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$

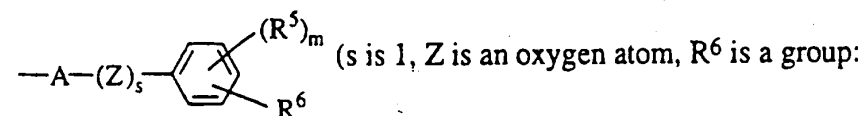
5 combine to form a group:  $-(\text{CH}_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 4),  $\text{R}^3$  is a group of the formula:



$-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $\text{R}^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^5$ ,  $m$  and  $\text{A}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and  $u$  is 0, or a salt thereof.

10 (86) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$

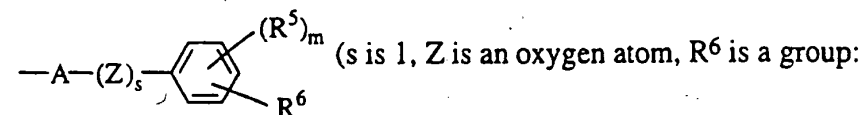
combine to form a group:  $-(\text{CH}_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 4),  $\text{R}^3$  is a group of the formula:



$-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $\text{R}^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^5$ ,  $m$  and  $\text{A}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and  $u$  is 0, or a salt thereof.

(87) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$

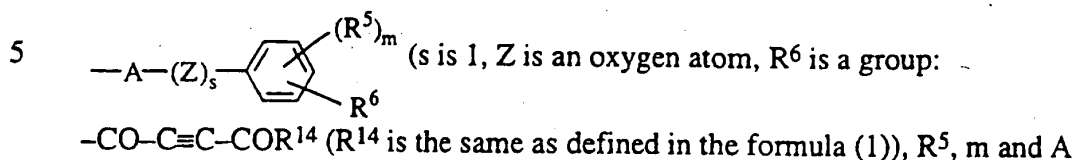
combine to form a group:  $-(\text{CH}_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 4),  $\text{R}^3$  is a group of the formula:



$-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $\text{R}^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^5$ ,  $m$  and  $\text{A}$

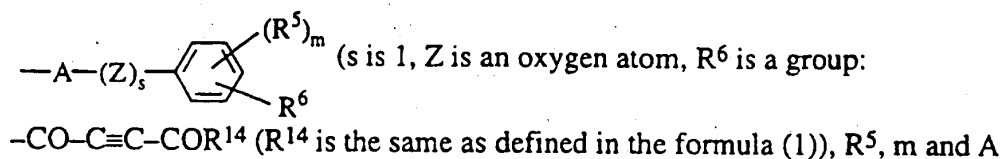
are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

(88) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 4),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



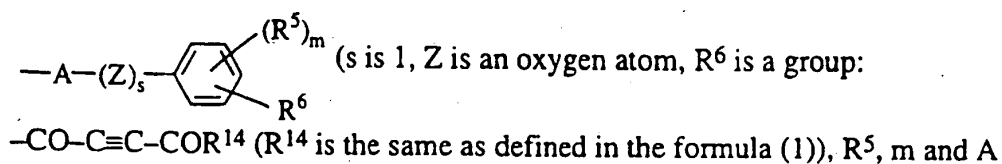
are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

(89) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 5),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and  $u$  is 0, or a salt thereof.

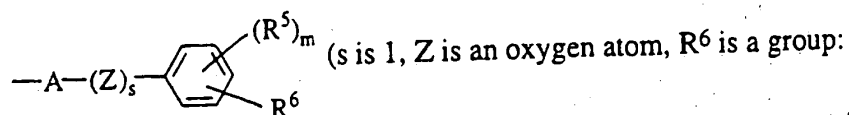
(90) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 5),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl

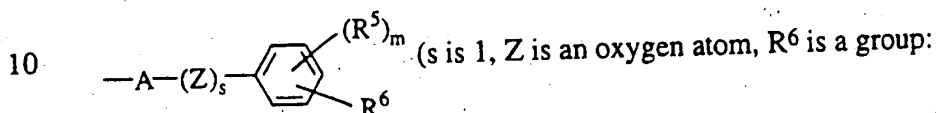
group and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

(91) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  (n is 5), R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the formula:



5  $-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  (R<sup>14</sup> is the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>5</sup>, m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>4</sup> is a hydrogen atom, and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

(92) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  (n is 5), R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the formula:



$-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  (R<sup>14</sup> is the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>5</sup>, m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>4</sup> is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

(93) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup>

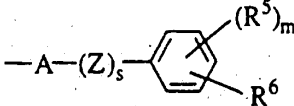
15 combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom, R<sup>3</sup> is a

group of the formula:  $-A-(Z)_s-\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(R^5)_m(R^6)$  (s is 1, Z is an oxygen atom, R<sup>6</sup> is a group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  (R<sup>14</sup> is the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>5</sup>, m

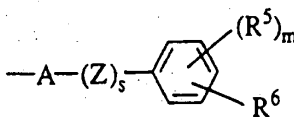
20 and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)), R<sup>4</sup> is a hydrogen atom, and u is

0, or a salt thereof.

(94) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom,  $R^3$  is a

group of the formula:  (s is 1, Z is an oxygen atom,  $R^6$  is a group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $R^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

(95) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom,  $R^3$  is a

group of the formula:  (s is 1, Z is an oxygen atom,  $R^6$  is a group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $R^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

(96) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom,  $R^3$  is a

55

group of the formula:  $-\text{A}-(\text{Z})_s-\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{R}^5)_m(\text{R}^6)$  (s is 1, Z is an oxygen atom,  $\text{R}^6$  is a group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $\text{R}^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^5$ , m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 1, or a salt thereof.

- 5 (97) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$  are the same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group,  $\text{R}^3$  is a

group of the formula:  $-\text{A}-(\text{Z})_s-\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{R}^5)_m(\text{R}^6)$  (s is 1, Z is a sulfur atom,  $\text{R}^6$  is a group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $\text{R}^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^5$ , m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and u is

- 10 0, or a salt thereof.

- (98) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$  are the same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group,  $\text{R}^3$  is a

group of the formula:  $-\text{A}-(\text{Z})_s-\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{R}^5)_m(\text{R}^6)$  (s is 1, Z is a sulfur atom,  $\text{R}^6$  is a group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $\text{R}^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^5$ , m

- 15 and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

- (99) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$  are the same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group,  $\text{R}^3$  is a

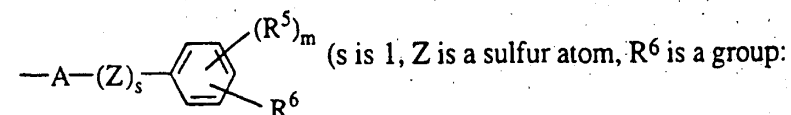
group of the formula:  $-\text{A}-(\text{Z})_s-\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{R}^5)_m(\text{R}^6)$  (s is 1, Z is a sulfur atom,  $\text{R}^6$  is

a group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $\text{R}^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^5$ ,  $m$  and  $\text{A}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

- (100) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$  are the same or different and each are a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group,  $\text{R}^3$  is a

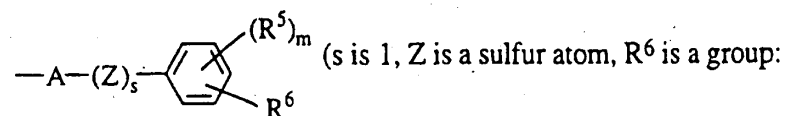
group of the formula:  $-\text{A}-(\text{Z})_s-\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{R}^5)_m(\text{R}^6)$  ( $s$  is 1,  $\text{Z}$  is a sulfur atom,  $\text{R}^6$  is a group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $\text{R}^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^5$ ,  $m$  and  $\text{A}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

- 10 (101) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(\text{CH}_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 4),  $\text{R}^3$  is a group of the formula:



$-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $\text{R}^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^5$ ,  $m$  and  $\text{A}$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and  $u$  is 0, or a salt thereof.

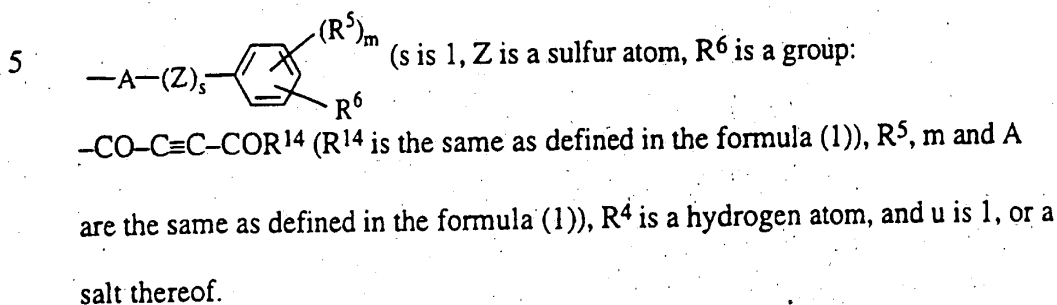
- (102) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(\text{CH}_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 4),  $\text{R}^3$  is a group of the formula:



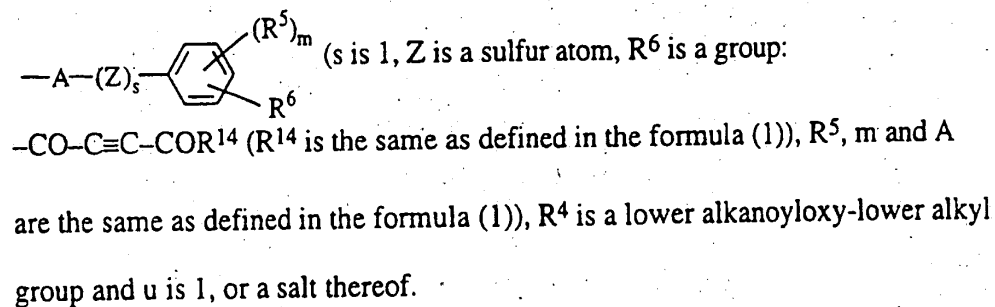
$-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $\text{R}^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $\text{R}^5$ ,  $m$  and  $\text{A}$

are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and  $u$  is 0, or a salt thereof.

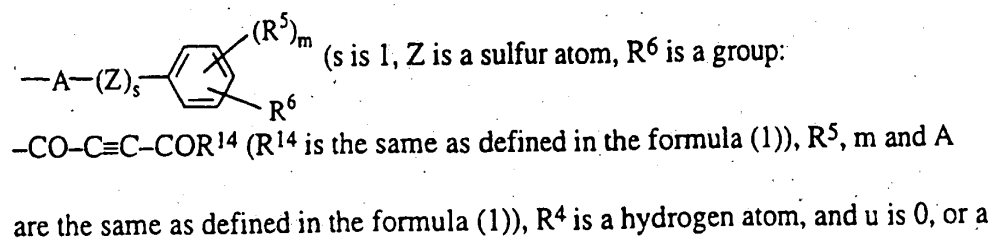
(103) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 4),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



(104) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$   
 10 combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 4),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



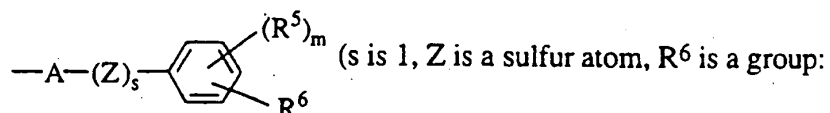
(105) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$   
 15 combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 5),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:





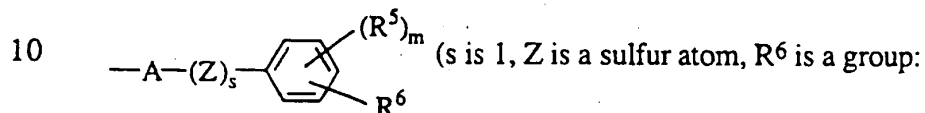
salt thereof.

(106) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 5),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



5  $-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $R^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ ,  $m$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and  $u$  is 0, or a salt thereof.

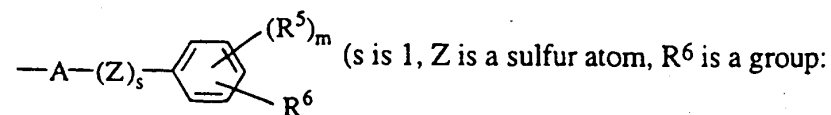
(107) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 5),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



$-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $R^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ ,  $m$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

(108) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$

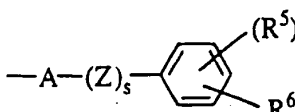
15 combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 5),  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



$-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $R^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ ,  $m$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

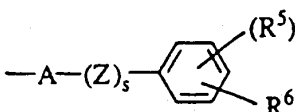
20 (109) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$

combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom,  $R^3$  is a

group of the formula:  (s is 1, Z is a sulfur atom,  $R^6$  is a

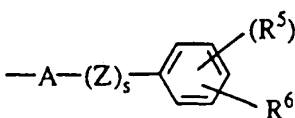
5 group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $R^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

(110) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent  
10 selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom,  $R^3$  is a

group of the formula:  (s is 1, Z is a sulfur atom,  $R^6$  is a

group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $R^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1));  $R^5$ , m and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-  
15 lower alkyl group and u is 0, or a salt thereof.

(111) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom,  $R^3$  is a

20 group of the formula:  (s is 1, Z is a sulfur atom,  $R^6$  is a

group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $R^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ , m

and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom, and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

(112) A thiazole derivative of the formula (1) wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$

combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally have a substituent

5 selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy group, a nitro group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a halogen atom,  $R^3$  is a

group of the formula:  $-\text{A}-(\text{Z})_s-\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{R}^5)_m$  ( $s$  is 1,  $Z$  is a sulfur atom,  $R^6$  is a

group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $R^{14}$  is the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^5$ ,  $m$

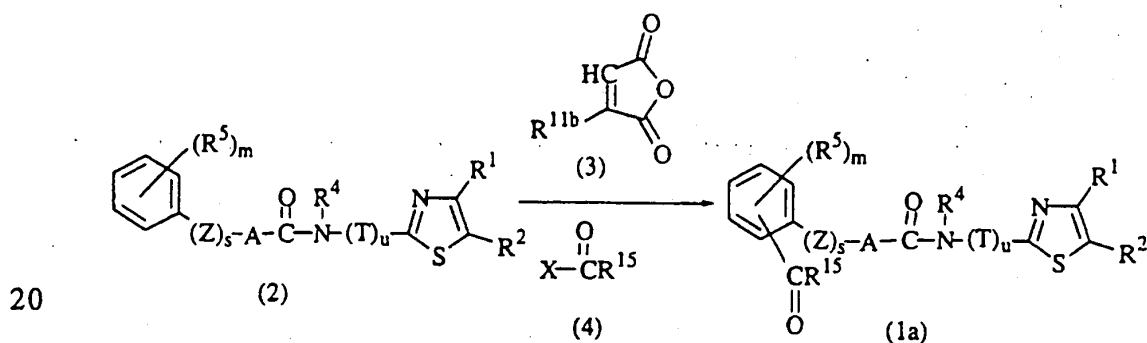
and A are the same as defined in the formula (1)),  $R^4$  is a lower alkanoyloxy-

10 lower alkyl group and  $u$  is 1, or a salt thereof.

The compounds of the present invention of the formula (1) may be prepared by various processes, but preferably prepared by the following processes.

#### Reaction Scheme-1

15



wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$ ,  $s$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and A are the same as defined above,  $R^{15}$  is a

group:  $-\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{R}^{11b})(\text{COR}^{16})$  ( $R^{11b}$  is the same as defined above, and  $R^{16}$  is a

hydroxy group or a lower alkoxy group), or a group:  $-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $\text{R}^{14}$  is the same as defined above), and X is a halogen atom.

The reaction between the compound (2) and the compound (3) or the compound (4) is called Friedel-Crafts Reaction, and carried out in the presence of a Lewis acid in a suitable solvent. The Lewis acid may be any conventional Lewis acids which are used in this kind of Friedel-Crafts Reaction, and is, for example, aluminum chloride, zinc chloride, iron chloride, stannous chloride, boron tribromide, boron trifluoride, conc. sulfuric acid, etc. The solvent may be, for example, carbon disulfide, aromatic hydrocarbons such as nitrobenzene, chlorobenzene, halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, dichloroethane, carbon tetrachloride, tetrachloroethane, aliphatic nitro compounds such as nitroethane, nitromethane, or a mixture of these solvents. The compound (3) and the compound (4) are used each at least in an equimolar amount, preferably in an amount of 1 to 5 moles, to 1 mole of the compound (2). The Lewis acid is usually used in an amount of 1 to 6 moles, to 1 mole of the compound (2). The reaction is usually carried out at 0 to 120°C, preferably at 0 to 70°C, for about 0.5 to 24 hours.

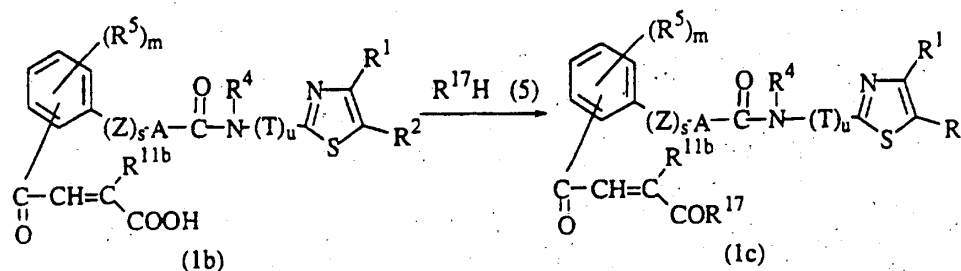
The compound wherein  $\text{R}^{15}$  is a group:  $-\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{R}^{11b})(\text{COR}^{16})$ , and the double bond thereof shows a cis-configuration can be isomerized into the compound wherein the double bond shows a trans-configuration by heating it at about 50°C to 100°C in dimethylformamide.

The compound (1a) wherein  $\text{R}^{15}$  is a group:  $-\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{R}^{11b})(\text{COR}^{16})$  or a group:  $-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$ , and  $\text{R}^{16}$  and  $\text{R}^{14}$  are both a lower alkoxy group may be converted into a compound (1a) wherein a corresponding  $\text{R}^{16}$  and  $\text{R}^{14}$  are a

hydroxy group, by treating it under the same conditions as in the reaction of converting the compound (1d) into the compound (1e) in Reaction Scheme 4, described hereinbelow.

### Reaction Scheme-2

5



10

wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $R^{11b}$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$ ,  $s$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and  $A$  are the same as defined above,

$R^{17}$  is the heterocyclic residues as defined for  $R^{11a}$  but having at least one  $-N<$  in the heterocyclic nucleus.

The process of Reaction Scheme-2 is a conventional amido bond producing reaction, and is carried out by reacting the thiazole compound (1b) and the amine compound (5). The amido bond producing reaction can be carried out under the same conditions as those of the conventional amino bond producing reaction, for example,

(a) a mixed acid anhydride process, i.e. a process of reacting the carboxylic acid compound (1b) with an alkyl halocarbonate to form a mixed acid anhydride and reacting the resultant with the amine compound (5);

(b) an activated ester process, i.e. a process of converting the carboxylic acid compound (1b) into an activated ester such as p-nitrophenyl ester, N-hydroxysuccinimide ester, 1-hydroxybenzotriazole ester, etc., and

reacting the resultant with the amine compound (5);

(c) a carbodiimide process, i.e. a process of condensing the carboxylic acid compound (1b) and the amine compound (5) in the presence of an activating agent such as dicyclohexylcarbodiimide, carbonyldiimidazole, etc.;

5 (d) other processes, i.e. a process of converting the carboxylic acid compound (1b) into a carboxylic anhydride by treating it with a dehydrating agent such as acetic anhydride, and reacting the resultant with the amine compound (5); a process of reacting an ester of the carboxylic acid compound (1b) with a lower alcohol and the amine compound (5) at high temperature  
10 under high pressure; a process of reacting an acid halide compound of the carboxylic acid compound (1b), i.e. a carboxylic acid halide, with the amine compound (5).

The mixed acid anhydride used in the above mixed acid anhydride process (a) is obtained by the known Schotten-Baumann reaction, and the  
15 reaction product is used without isolating from the reaction mixture for the reaction with the amine compound (5) to give the desired compound (1) of the present invention. The Schotten-Baumann reaction is usually carried out in the presence of a basic compound. The basic compound is any conventional compounds used for the Schotten-Baumann reaction and includes, for example,  
20 organic basic compounds such as triethylamine, trimethylamine, pyridine, dimethylaniline, N-methylmorpholine, 4-dimethylaminopyridine, 1,5-diazabicyclo-[4.3.0]nonene-5 (DBN), 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undecene-7 (DBU), 1,4-diazabicyclo[2.2.2]octane (DABCO), etc., and inorganic basic compounds such as  
25 potassium carbonate, sodium carbonate, potassium hydrogen carbonate, sodium hydrogen carbonate, etc. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature

from about  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  to about  $100^{\circ}\text{C}$ , preferably at a temperature of  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  to about  $50^{\circ}\text{C}$ , for about 5 minutes to about 10 hours, preferably for 5 minutes to about 2 hours.

The reaction between the mixed acid anhydride thus obtained and the amine compound (5) is usually carried out at a temperature of  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  to about  $150^{\circ}\text{C}$ , preferably at a temperature of  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  to about  $50^{\circ}\text{C}$ , for about 5 minutes to about 35 hours, preferably for about 5 minutes to 30 hours. The mixed acid anhydride process is usually carried out in a solvent in the presence of a basic compound. The basic compounds may be any basic compounds used in the above Schotten-Baumann reaction. The solvent may be any conventional solvents which are usually used in the mixed acid anhydride process and includes, for example, halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g. chloroform, dichloromethane, dichloroethane, etc.), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g. benzene, p-chlorobenzene, toluene, xylene, etc.), ethers (e.g. diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dimethoxyethane, etc.), esters (e.g. methyl acetate, ethyl acetate, etc.), aprotic polar solvents (e.g. N,N-dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide, acetonitrile, hexamethylphosphoric triamide, 1-methyl-2-pyrrolidinone (NMP), etc.), or a mixture of these solvents. The alkyl halocarbonate used in the mixed acid anhydride process includes, for example, methyl chloroformate, methyl bromoformate, ethyl chloroformate, ethyl bromoformate, isobutyl chloroformate, and the like. In said process, the carboxylic acid compound (1b), the alkyl halocarbonate ester and the amine compound (5) are usually used in equimolar amount each, but preferably the alkyl halocarbonate ester and the amine compound (5) are used in an amount of about 1 to 1.5 mole, to 1 mole of the carboxylic acid (1b).

Among the above other processes (d), in case of the process of reacting the carboxylic acid halide with the amine compound (5), the reaction is usually carried out in the presence of a basic compound in a suitable solvent. The basic compound is any conventional basic compounds and includes, for example, in addition to the basic compounds used in the above mentioned Schotten-Baumann reaction, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, sodium hydride, potassium hydride, and the like. The solvent includes, for example, in addition to the solvents used in the mixed acid anhydride process, alcohols (e.g. methanol, ethanol, propanol, butanol, 3-methoxy-1-butanol, ethylcellosolve, methylcellosolve, etc.), pyridine, acetone, water, or a mixture of two or more these solvents, and the like. The amount of the amine compound (5) and the carboxylic acid halide is not critical, but the amine compound (5) is usually used at least in equimolar amount, preferably in an amount of about 1 to 5 moles, to 1 mole of the carboxylic acid halide. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of about  $-70^{\circ}\text{C}$  to about  $180^{\circ}\text{C}$ , preferably at a temperature of about  $-50^{\circ}\text{C}$  to about  $150^{\circ}\text{C}$ , for about 5 minutes to about 30 hours.

Besides, the amido bond producing reaction of Reaction Scheme-2 may also be carried out by reacting the carboxylic acid compound (1b) and the amine compound (5) in the presence of a condensing agent such as phosphorus compounds (e.g. phenylphosphine-2,2'-dithiopyridine, diphenylphosphinyl chloride, phenyl-N-phenylphosphoramidate chloridate, diethyl cyanophosphate, diethyl cyanophosphate, diphenylphosphoryl azide, N,N'-bis(2-oxo-3-oxazolidinyl)phosphinic chloride, etc.).

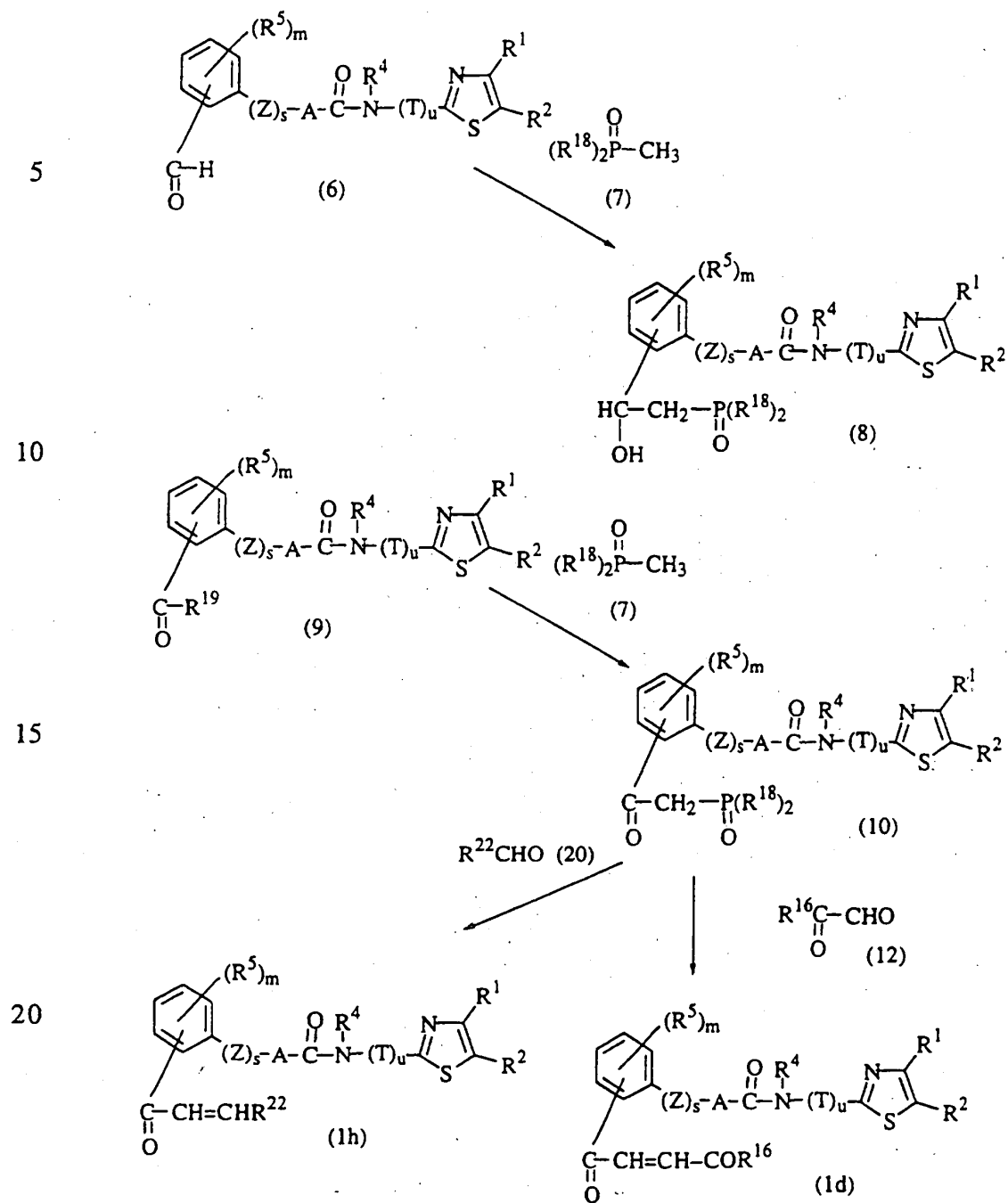
The reaction is usually carried out in the presence of the same solvent and the same basic compound which can be used in the above reaction of the



carboxylic acid halide compound and the amine compound (5). The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  to about  $150^{\circ}\text{C}$ , preferably at a temperature of  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  to about  $100^{\circ}\text{C}$ , for about 5 minutes to about 30 hours. The condensing agent and the amine compound (5) are used at least in equimolar amount, preferably in an amount of about 1 to 2 moles, to 1 mole of the carboxylic acid compound (1b).

67

## Reaction Scheme-3



25 wherein  $\text{R}^1, \text{R}^2, \text{R}^3, \text{R}^4, \text{R}^5, \text{Z}, \text{m}, \text{s}, \text{T}, \text{u}, \text{R}^{16}$  and  $\text{A}$  are the same as defined above,

R<sup>18</sup> and R<sup>19</sup> are a lower alkoxy group, and R<sup>22</sup> is the same as defined below.

The reaction of the compound (6) and the compound (7) is carried out in the presence of a basic compound in a suitable solvent. The basic compound includes inorganic basic compounds such as metal sodium, metal potassium, sodium hydride, sodium amide, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, sodium hydrogen carbonate, etc., organic basic compounds such as alkali metal alkoxide (e.g., sodium methylate, sodium ethylate, potassium t-butoxide), an alkyl lithium, aryl lithium or lithium amide (e.g., methyl lithium, n-butyl lithium, phenyl lithium, lithium diisopropylamide), pyridine, piperidine, quinoline, triethylamine, N,N-dimethylaniline, etc. The solvent may be any one which does not disturb the reaction, for example, water, ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, monoglyme, diglyme, etc.), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.), aliphatic hydrocarbons (e.g., n-hexane, heptane, cyclohexane, etc.), amines (e.g., pyridine, N,N-dimethylaniline, etc), aprotic polar solvents (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide, etc.), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, etc.), alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, isopropyl alcohol, etc.), ureas (e.g., N,N'-dimethylpropylene urea (DMPU), etc.), 1,3-dimethyl-3,4,5,6-tetrahydro-2(1H)-pyrimidinone, or a mixture of these solvents. The reaction is usually carried out at -80°C to 150°C, preferably at about -80° to 120°C, for 0.5 to about 15 hours.

The compound (7) is usually used at least in an equimolar amount, preferably in an amount of 1 to 5 moles, to 1 mole of the compound (6).

The reaction of converting the compound (8) into the compound (10) is

carried out in the presence of an oxidizing agent in a suitable solvent. The oxidizing agent includes, for example, benzoquinones (e.g., 2,3-dichloro-5,6-dicyano-1,4-benzoquinone (DDQ)), pyridinium chromates (e.g., pyridinium chlorochromate, pyridium dichlorochromate, etc.), dimethylsulfoxide-oxazoly  
5 chloride, dichromic acid, dichromates (e.g. sodium dichromate, potassium dichromate, etc.), permanganic acid, permanganates (e.g. potassium permanganate, sodium permanganate, etc.), manganese dioxide, etc. The solvent includes, for example, water, organic acids (e.g. formic acid, acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, etc.), alcohols (e.g. methanol, ethanol, etc.), halogenated  
10 hydrocarbons (e.g. chloroform, dichloromethane, etc.), ethers (e.g., tetrahydrofuran, diethyl ether, dioxane, etc.), dimethylsulfoxide, dimethylformamide, or a mixture of these solvents. The oxidizing agent is preferably used in an excess amount to the amount of the starting compound. The above reaction is usually carried out at 0°C to 200°C, preferably at 0°C to about 150°C, for 1 hour to  
15 about 10 hours.

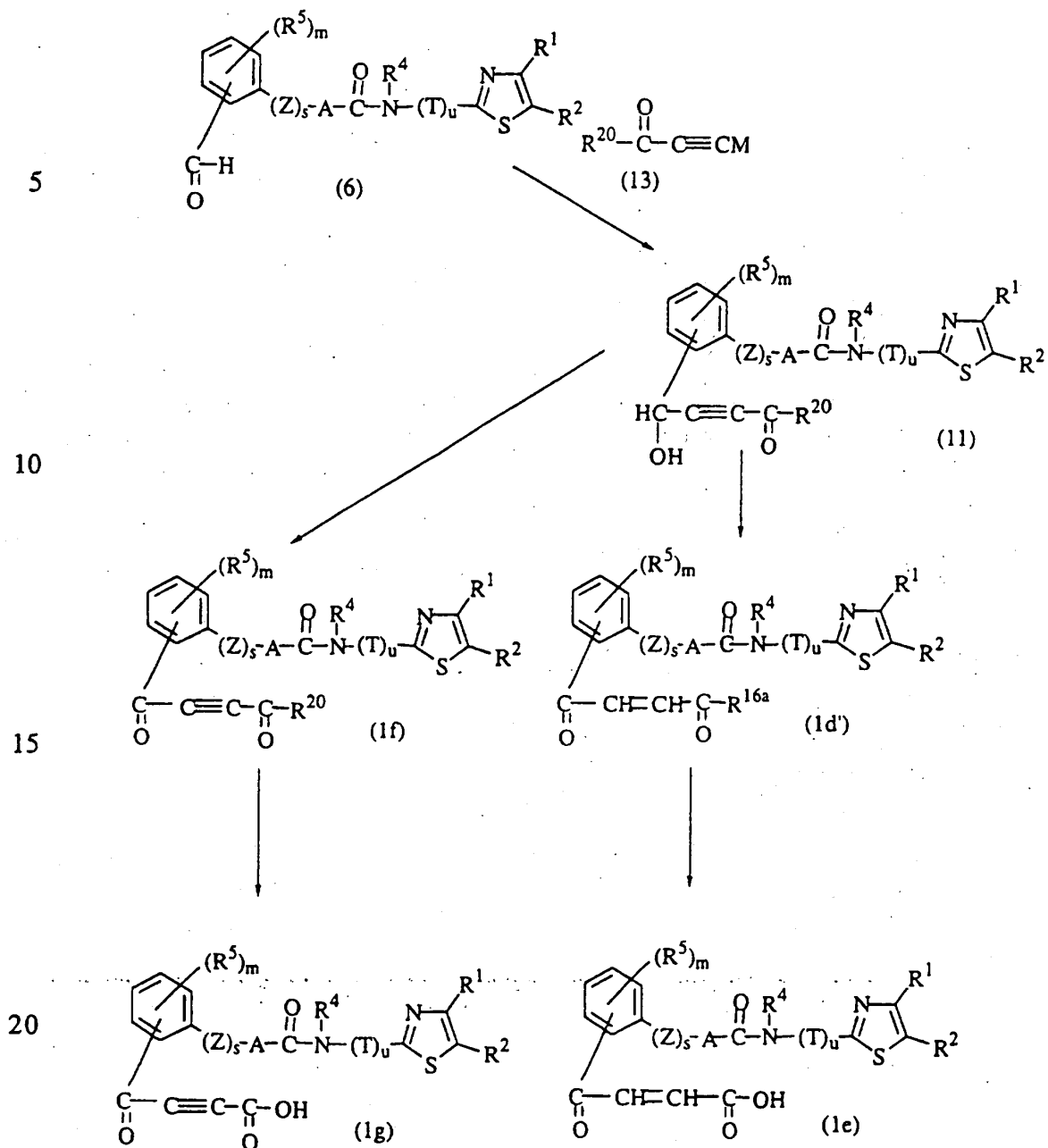
The reaction of the compound (9) and the compound (7) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (6) and the compound (7).

The reaction of the compound (10) and the compound (12) is carried out  
20 under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (6) and the compound (7).

The reaction of the compound (10) and the compound (20) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (6) and the compound (7).

70

## Reaction Scheme-4



wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$ ,  $s$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and  $A$  are the same as defined above,  $R^{20}$  is a  
 25 lower alkoxy group,  $M$  is an alkali metal such as lithium, sodium, potassium, etc.,

and R<sup>16a</sup> is a lower alkoxy group.

The reaction of the compound (6) and the compound (13) is carried out in the presence of a basic compound in a suitable solvent, at -80°C to room temperature, for 5 minutes to 6 hours. The solvent may be, for example, ethers  
5 (e.g., diethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, etc.), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, etc.), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., hexane, heptane, pentane, cyclohexane, etc.), ureas (e.g., N,N'-dimethylpropyleneurea (DMPU), etc.). The basic compounds are the same ones which are used in the reaction of the compound (6) and the compound (7) in the above Reaction Scheme-3. The  
10 compound (13) is usually used at least in equimolar amount, preferably in an amount of 1 to 5 moles, to 1 mole of the compound (6).

The reaction of converting the compound (11) into the compound (1d') is carried out in the presence of a basic compound in a suitable solvent. The basic compound may be organic basic compound such as triethylamine, trimethyl-  
15 amine, diisopropylamine, tri-n-butylamine, ethylamine, pyridine, dimethylaniline, N-methylmorpholine, 4-dimethylaminopyridine, DBN, DBU, DABCO, etc. The solvent includes, for example, water, alcohols (e.g., ethanol, methanol, isopropanol, etc.), dimethylformamide, diethylsulfoxide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide, or a mixture of these solvents. The reaction is usually carried out at  
20 room temperature to 150°C, preferably at room temperature to 100°C, for about 1 to 5 hours.

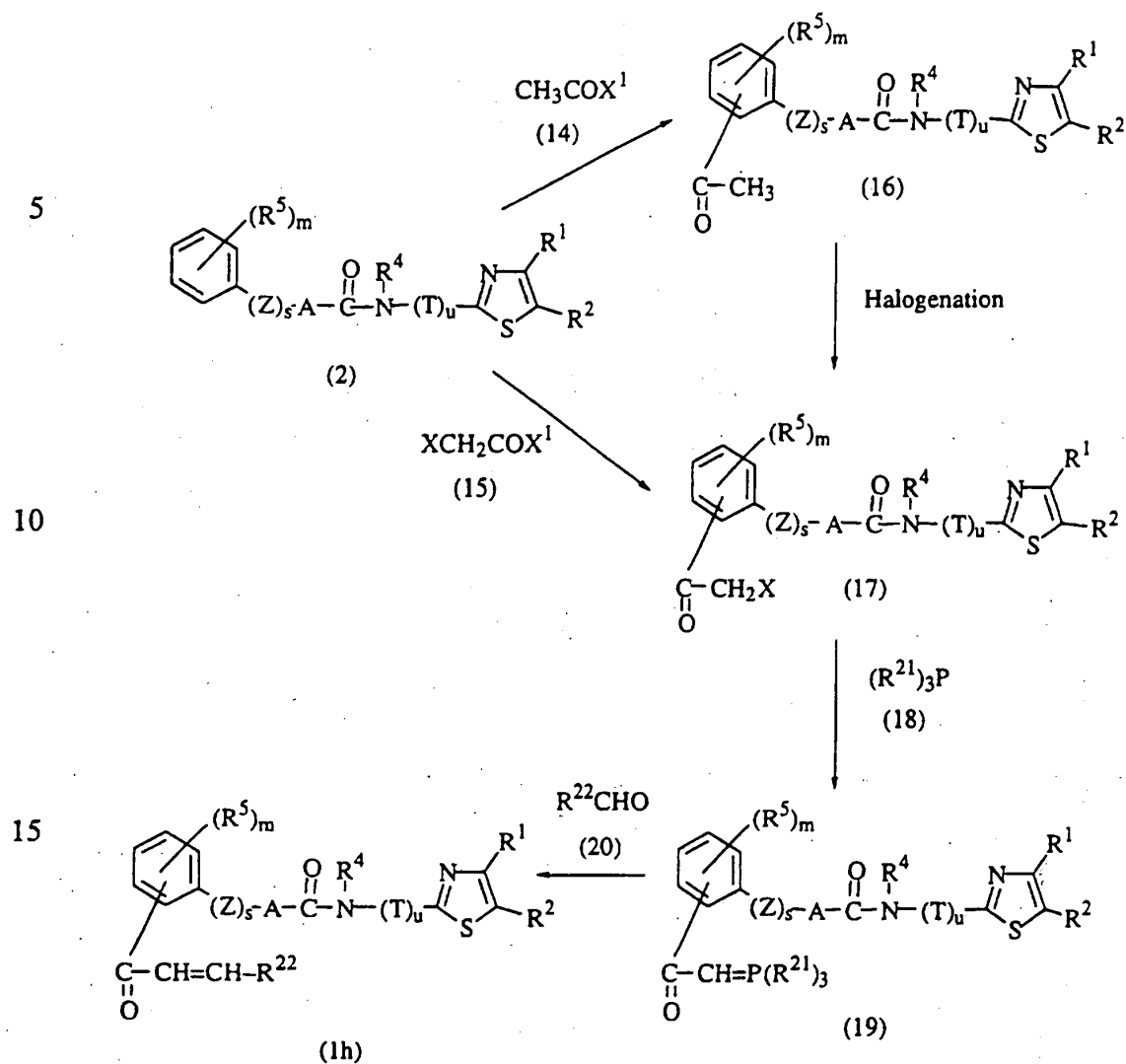
The reaction of converting the compound (11) into the compound (1f) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of converting the compound (8) into the compound (10) in the above Reaction Scheme-3.

25 The reaction of converting the compound (1d') into the compound (1e) is

carried out in the presence of an acid or a basic compound in a suitable solvent, or without a solvent. The solvent includes, for example, water, lower alcohols (e.g., ethanol, methanol, isopropanol, etc.), ketones (e.g., acetone, methyl ethyl ketone, etc.), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, etc.), ethers (e.g., dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, ethylene glycol dimethyl ether, etc.), fatty acids (e.g., acetic acid, formic acid, etc.), or a mixture of these solvents. The acid includes, for example, mineral acids (e.g., hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, hydrobromic acid, etc.), organic acids (e.g., formic acid, acetic acid, trifluoric acid, aromatic sulfuric acids, etc.). The basic compound includes, for example, an alkali metal carbonate (e.g., sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, etc.), an alkali metal hydroxide (e.g., sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, calcium hydroxide, lithium hydroxide, etc.), etc. The reaction is usually carried out at room temperature to about 200°C, preferably at room temperature to 150°C, for about 10 minutes to 25 hours.

The reaction of converting the compound (1f) into the compound (1g) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of converting the compound (1d') into the compound (1e) as mentioned above.

## Reaction Scheme-5



wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, R<sup>5</sup>, Z, m, s, T, u and A are the same as defined above, X<sup>1</sup> is a halogen atom, R<sup>21</sup> is a phenyl group, R<sup>22</sup> is a 5- to 10-membered, saturated or unsaturated heteromonocyclic, heterobicyclic residue (said heterocyclic residue optionally having 1 to 3 substituents selected from (i) a lower alkyl group; (ii) a group: -(B)<sub>ℓ</sub>-NR<sup>12</sup>R<sup>13</sup> (ℓ is the same as defined above, B is a group: -CO-A- (A



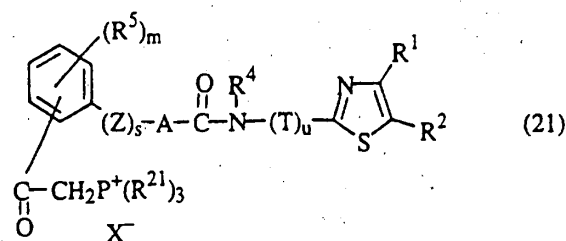
is the same as defined above), a carbonyl group or a lower alkylene group, R<sup>12</sup> and R<sup>13</sup> are the same or different, and each are a hydrogen atom, a lower alkyl group, an amino-substituted lower alkyl group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent, or combine together with the adjacent nitrogen atom to which they bond to form a 5- to 12-membered saturated heteromonocyclic, heterobicyclic or hetero-sprio ring with or without being intervened with another nitrogen atom or an oxygen atom, said heterocyclic group may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxycarbonyl group, a lower alkoxy-substituted lower alkyl group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a hydroxy-substituted lower alkyl group); (iii) a lower alkoxycarbonyl group; (iv) a hydroxy-substituted lower alkyl group; (v) a pyridyl group being optionally substituted by a lower alkyl group having optionally a halogen substituent on the pyridine ring; (vi) a halogen-substituted lower alkyl group; (vii) a lower alkoxy group; (viii) a cycloalkyl group; (ix) a hydroxy group; (x) a tetrahydropyranyloxy-substituted lower alkyl group; (xi) a pyrimidyl group; (xii) a lower alkoxy-substituted lower alkyl group; (xiii) a carboxyl group; (xiv) a phenyl-lower alkoxy group; (xv) a phenyl-lower alkyl group having optionally a lower alkylendioxy substituent on the phenyl ring; (xvi) a lower alkanoyloxy group; and (xvii) a piperidinyl group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent on the piperidine ring.

The reaction of the compound (2) and the compound (14), and the reaction of the compound (2) and the compound (15) are carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (2) and the compound (3) or the compound (4) in the above Reaction Scheme-1.

The halogenating reaction of the compound (16) is carried out in the presence of a halogenating agent in a suitable solvent. The halogenating agent may be, for example, halogen molecules (e.g., bromine, chlorine, etc.), iodine chloride, sulfonyl chloride, copper compounds (e.g., copper (II) bromide, etc.), N-halogenated succinimides (e.g., N-bromosuccinimide, N-chlorosuccinimide, etc.). The solvent may be, for example, halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, dichloroethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, etc.), fatty acids (e.g., acetic acid, propionic acid, etc.), carbon disulfide, etc. The halogenating agent is usually used in an amount of 1 to 10 moles, preferably in an amount of 1 to 5 moles, to 1 mole of the compound (16). The reaction is usually carried out at 0°C to a boiling point of the solvent to be used, preferably at 0°C to 100°C, for about 5 minutes to 20 hours.

The reaction of the compound (17) and the compound (18) is carried out in a suitable solvent at room temperature to 150°C, preferably at room temperature to about 100°C, for about 1 hour to 10 hours. The solvent may be the same solvents used in the reaction of the carboxylic halide and the amine compound (5) among the reactions between the compound (1b) and the compound (5) in the above Reaction Scheme-2. The compound (18) is used at least in equimolar amount, preferably in an amount of 1 to 1.5 moles, to 1 mole of the compound (17).

In the above process, there is obtained a compound of the formula (21):



5

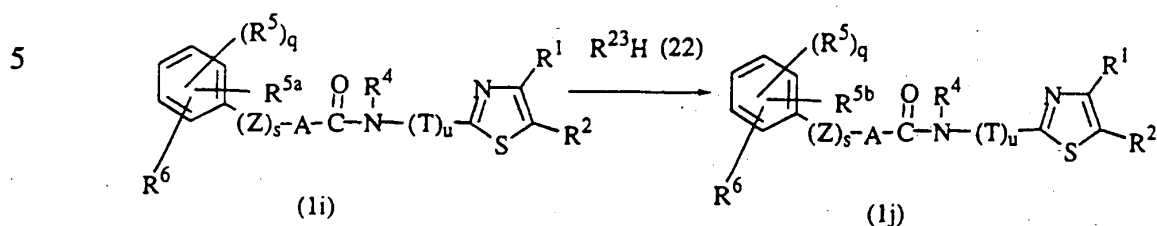
wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$ ,  $A$ ,  $R^{21}$ ,  $s$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and  $X$  are the same as defined above, which is further treated in the presence of a basic compound in a suitable solvent to give the compound (19). The solvent and the basic compound are the same ones which are used in the reaction of the carboxylic halide and the amine compound (5) in the reaction of the compound (1b) and the compound (5) in the Reaction Scheme-2. The reaction is usually carried out at  $0^\circ\text{C}$  to  $100^\circ\text{C}$ , preferably at  $0^\circ\text{C}$  to about  $70^\circ\text{C}$ , for about 1 hour to 5 hours.

The reaction of the compound (19) and the compound (20) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (6) and the compound (7) in the above Reaction Scheme-3.

Alternatively, the reaction of the compound (19) and the compound (20) is usually carried out in a suitable solvent at  $0^\circ\text{C}$  to  $150^\circ\text{C}$ , preferably at room temperature to about  $100^\circ\text{C}$ , for about 0.5 hour to 8 hours. The solvent may be any one which does not disturb the reaction, for example, water, alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, etc.), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, diglyme, monoglyme, etc.), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, etc.), aprotic polar solvents (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide, etc.), etc. The compound (20) is usually used at least in equimolar amount, preferably in an

amount of 1 to 5 moles, to 1 mole of the compound (19). The reaction is promoted when a para-aldehyde is added into the reaction system.

# Reaction Scheme-6



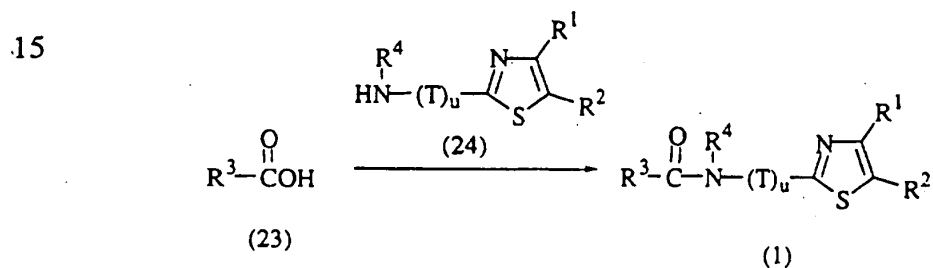
wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $R^6$ ,  $Z$ ,  $s$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and  $A$  are the same as defined above,  $q$  is 1,

10  $R^{5a}$  is a halogen-substituted lower alkyl group,  $R^{5b}$  is a group:  $-A-NR^7R^8$  ( $A$ ,  $R^7$ ,  $R^8$  are the same as defined above) or a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group,  $R^{23}$  is a group:  $-NR^7R^8$  ( $R^7$  and  $R^8$  are the same as defined above), or a lower alkanoyloxy group.

The reaction of the compound (1f) and the compound (22) is carried out  
 15 in the presence or absence of a basic compound in a suitable inert solvent, or without a solvent. The inert solvent includes, for example, aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.), ethers (e.g., tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, diethylene glycol dimethyl ether, etc.), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, etc.), lower alcohols (e.g.,  
 20 methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, butanol, tert-butanol, etc.), water, acetic acid, ethyl acetate, acetone, acetonitrile, pyridine, dimethylsulfoxide, dimethylformamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide, or a mixture of these solvents. The basic compound includes, for example, an alkali metal carbonate (e.g., sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, etc.), an alkali metal hydrogen carbonate (e.g.,

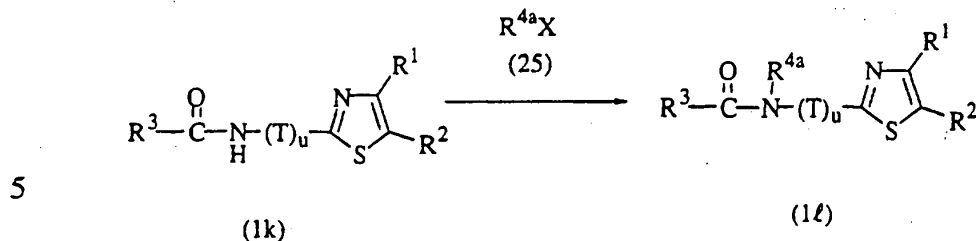
sodium hydrogen carbonate, potassium hydrogen carbonate, etc.), an alkali metal hydroxide (e.g., sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, etc.), sodium hydride, potassium, sodium, sodium amide, an alkali metal alkoxide (e.g., sodium methoxide, etc.), organic basic compounds (e.g., pyridine, N-ethyl-diisopropyl-amine, dimethylaminopyridine, triethylamine, 1,5-diazabicyclo[4.3.0]nonen-5-  
 5 (DBN), 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undecen-7 (DBU), 1,4-diazabicyclo[2.2.2]octane (DABCO), etc. The amount of the compound (1i) and the compound (22) is not critical, but the compound (22) is usually used at least in equimolar amount, preferably in an amount of 1 to 10 moles, to 1 mole of the compound (1i). The  
 10 reaction is usually carried out at 0°C to 200°C, preferably at 0°C to 170°C, for about 30 minutes to 75 hours. Into the reaction system, an alkali metal halide such as sodium iodide, potassium iodide or a copper powder may be added.

#### Reaction Scheme-7



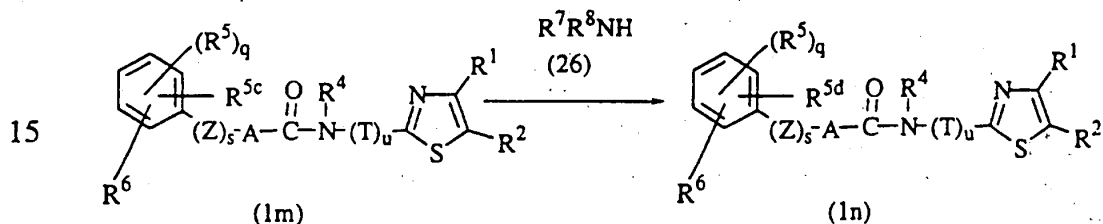
wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, T and u are the same as defined above.

20 The reaction of the compound (23) and the compound (24) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (1b) and the compound (5) in the above Reaction Scheme-2.

Reaction Scheme-8

wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, T, X and u are the same as defined above, and R<sup>4a</sup> is a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl group.

10 The reaction of the compound (1k) and the compound (25) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (1i) and the compound (22) in the above Reaction Scheme-6.

Reaction Scheme-9

wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup>, R<sup>8</sup>, Z, s, T, u and q are the same as defined above, and R<sup>5c</sup> is a carboxy-substituted lower alkyl group, R<sup>5d</sup> is a group: -A-CO-NR<sup>7</sup>R<sup>8</sup> (R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> are the same as defined above).

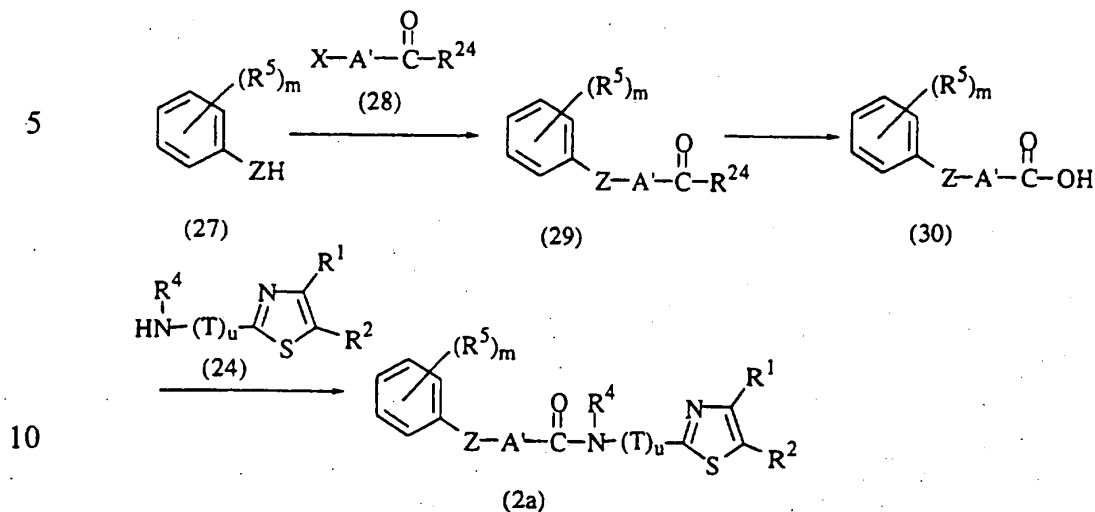
20

The reaction of the compound (1m) and the compound (26) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (1b) and the compound (5) in the above Reaction Scheme-2.

The starting compounds (2), (6) and (23) in the above Reaction Schemes

are prepared by the following processes.

Reaction Scheme-10



wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $X$ ,  $Z$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and  $m$  are the same as defined above, and  $R^{24}$  is a hydroxy group, a lower alkoxy group or a phenyl-lower alkoxy group, and  $A'$  is a lower alkylene group.

15 The reaction of the compound (27) and the compound (28) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (1i) and the compound (22) in the above Reaction Scheme-6.

The reaction of converting the compound (29) wherein  $R^{24}$  is a lower alkoxy group into the compound (30) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of converting the compound (1d) into the compound (1e) in the above Reaction Scheme-4.

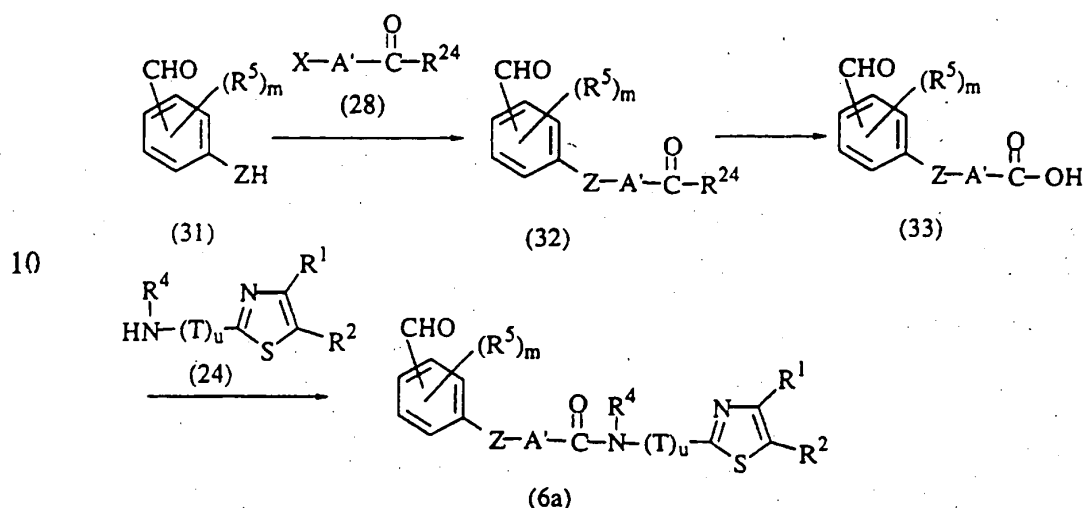
20

The reaction of converting the compound (29) wherein  $R^{24}$  is a phenyl-lower alkoxy group into the compound (30) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of converting the compound (5b) into the

compound (5c) in Reaction Scheme-13, which is described hereinbelow.

The reaction of the compound (30) and the compound (24) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (1b) and the compound (5) in the above Reaction Scheme-2.

### 5 Reaction Scheme-11



15 wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $A'$ ,  $Z$ ,  $R^{24}$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and  $m$  are the same as defined above.

The reaction of the compound (31) and the compound (28) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (27) and the compound (28) in the above Reaction Scheme-10.

20 The reaction of converting the compound (32) wherein  $R^{24}$  is a lower alkoxy group into the compound (33) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of converting the compound (29) wherein  $R^{24}$  is a lower alkoxy group into the compound (30) in the above Reaction Scheme-10.

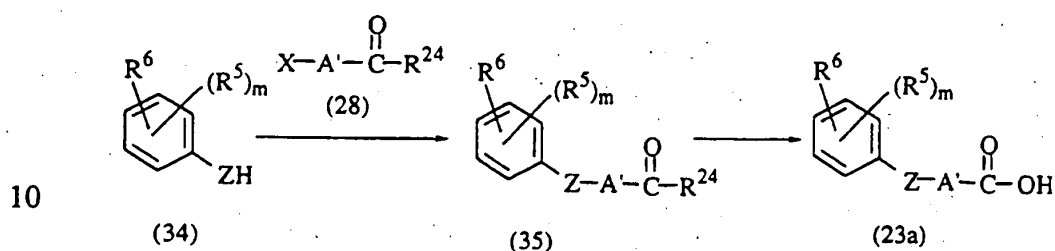
The reaction of converting the compound (32) wherein  $R^{24}$  is a phenyl-lower alkoxy group into the compound (33) is carried out under the same



conditions as those in the reaction of converting the compound (5b) into the compound (5c) in Reaction Scheme-13, which is described hereinbelow.

The reaction of the compound (33) and the compound (24) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (30) and the compound (24) in the above Reaction Scheme-10.

#### Reaction Scheme-12



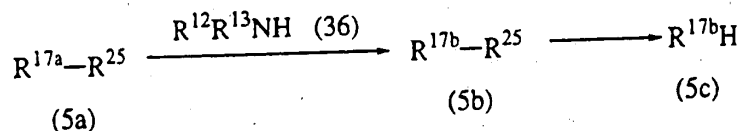
wherein  $\text{R}^5$ ,  $\text{R}^6$ ,  $m$ ,  $\text{A}'$ ,  $\text{X}$ ,  $\text{Z}$  and  $\text{R}^{24}$  are the same as defined above.

The reaction of the compound (34) and the compound (28) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (27) and the compound (28) in the above Reaction Scheme-10.

The reaction of converting the compound (35) wherein  $\text{R}^{24}$  is a lower alkoxy group into the compound (23a) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of converting the compound (29) wherein  $\text{R}^{24}$  is a lower alkoxy group into the compound (30) in the above Reaction Scheme-10.

20 The reaction of converting the compound (35) wherein  $\text{R}^{24}$  is a phenyl-lower alkoxy group into the compound (23a) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of converting the compound (5b) into the compound (5c) in Reaction Scheme-13, which is described hereinbelow.

The starting compound (5) is prepared by the following processes.

Reaction Scheme-13

- 5 wherein R<sup>12</sup>, R<sup>13</sup> are the same as defined above, R<sup>17a</sup> is the same groups for R<sup>17</sup> having at least one oxo group on the heterocyclic group, R<sup>17b</sup> is the same groups for R<sup>17</sup> having at least one group: -N-R<sup>12</sup>R<sup>13</sup> (R<sup>12</sup> and R<sup>13</sup> are the same as defined above) on the heterocyclic group, and R<sup>25</sup> is a phenyl-lower alkyl group.

- 10 The reaction of the compound (5a) and the compound (36) is carried out in the presence of a reducing agent in a suitable solvent or without a solvent. The solvent may be, for example, water, alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, etc.), acetonitrile, formic acid, acetic acid, ethers (e.g., dioxane, diethyl ether, diglyme, tetrahydrofuran, etc.), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g.,
- 15 benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.), or a mixture of these solvents. The reducing agent may be, for example, formic acid, an alkali metal salt of fatty acid (e.g., sodium formate, etc.), hydrogenating agent (e.g., sodium borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, lithium aluminum hydride, etc.), catalysts (e.g., palladium-black, palladium-carbon, platinum oxide, platinum black, Raney-nickel, etc.).

- 20 When formic acid is used as a reducing agent, the reaction is usually carried out at room temperature to about 200°C, preferably at 50 to 150°C, for one to about 10 hours. The formic acid is used in an excess amount to the amount of the compound (5a).

When a hydrogenating agent is used as a reducing agent, the reaction is

usually carried out at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  to about  $100^{\circ}\text{C}$ , preferably at  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  to  $70^{\circ}\text{C}$ , for 30 minutes to about 12 hours. The hydrogenating agent is used in an amount of 1 to 20 moles, preferably in an amount of 1 to 6 moles, to 1 mole of the compound (5a). Especially, when lithium aluminum hydride is used as a hydrogenating agent, the solvent may be ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, diglyme, etc.), or aromatic hydrogen carbonates (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.).

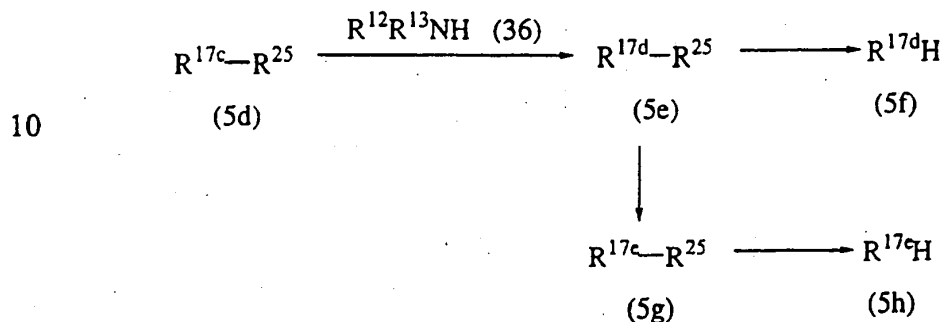
When a catalyst is used as a reducing agent, the reaction is usually carried out under a pressure of atmospheric pressure to 20 atms, preferably under atmospheric pressure to 10 atm of hydrogen gas, in the presence of a hydrogen donor such as formic acid, ammonium formate, cyclohexene, hydrazine hydrate, etc. at a temperature of  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  to about  $100^{\circ}\text{C}$ , preferably at a temperature of  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  to  $60^{\circ}\text{C}$ , for about one to 12 hours. The catalyst is used in an amount of 0.1 to 40 % by weight, preferably in an amount of 0.1 to 20 % by weight, to the weight of the compound (5a).

The compound (36) is usually used at least in an equimolar amount, preferably in an amount of 1 to 3 moles, to 1 mole of the compound (5a).

The reaction of converting the compound (5b) into the compound (5c) is carried out by hydrogenation in the presence of a catalyst in a suitable solvent. The solvent may be, for example, water, acetic acid, alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, etc.), hydrocarbons (e.g., hexane, cyclohexane, etc.), ethers (e.g., dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, diethyl ether, ethylene glycol dimethyl ether, etc.), esters (e.g., ethyl acetate, methyl acetate, etc.), aprotic polar solvents (e.g., dimethylformamide, etc.), or a mixture of these solvents. The catalyst may be, for example, palladium, palladium black, palladium hydroxide, palladium hydroxide-

carbon, palladium-carbon, platinum, platinum oxide, copper cromite, Raney nickel, etc. The catalyst is used usually in an amount of 0.02 to 1 time of the amount of the compound (5b). The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  to about  $100^{\circ}\text{C}$ , preferably at a temperature of  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  to about  $70^{\circ}\text{C}$ , under 1 to 10 atms of hydrogen gas, for about 0.5 to about 20 hours.

#### Reaction Scheme-14



wherein  $\text{R}^{12}$ ,  $\text{R}^{13}$  and  $\text{R}^{25}$  are the same as defined above,  $\text{R}^{17\text{c}}$  is the same groups for  $\text{R}^{17}$  but having at least one carboxyl group on the heterocyclic group,  $\text{R}^{17\text{d}}$  is the same groups for  $\text{R}^{17}$  but having at least one  $-\text{CONR}^{12}\text{R}^{13}$  ( $\text{R}^{12}$  and  $\text{R}^{13}$  are the same as defined above) on the heterocyclic group, and  $\text{R}^{17\text{e}}$  is the same groups for  $\text{R}^{17}$  but having at least one  $-\text{CH}_2\text{NR}^{12}\text{R}^{13}$  ( $\text{R}^{12}$  and  $\text{R}^{13}$  are the same as defined above) on the heterocyclic group.

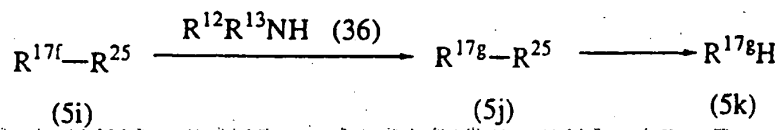
The reaction of the compound (5d) and the compound (36) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (1b) and the compound (5) in the above Reaction Scheme-2.

The reactions of converting the compound (5e) into the compound (5f), and converting the compound (5g) into the compound (5h), are carried out

under the same conditions as those in the reaction of converting the compound (5b) into the compound (5c) in the above Reaction Scheme-13.

The reaction of converting the compound (5e) into the compound (5g) is carried out by reduction with using a hydrogenation agent. The hydrogenation agent may be, for example, lithium aluminum hydride, sodium borohydride, 5 diboran, etc., and is used at least in an equimolar amount, preferably in an amount of 1 to 15 moles, to 1 mole of the starting compound. The reduction is carried out in a suitable solvent such as water, a lower alcohol (e.g., methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, etc.), ethers (e.g., tetrahydrofuran, diethyl ether, 10 diisopropyl ether, diglyme, etc.), or a mixture of these solvents. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of  $-60^{\circ}\text{C}$  to  $150^{\circ}\text{C}$ , preferably at a temperature of  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  to  $100^{\circ}\text{C}$ , for about 10 minutes to 5 hours. When lithium aluminum hydride or diboran is used as a hydrogenating agent, an anhydrous solvent such as tetrahydrofuran, diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diglyme, etc., 15 may be preferably used.

#### Reaction Scheme-15

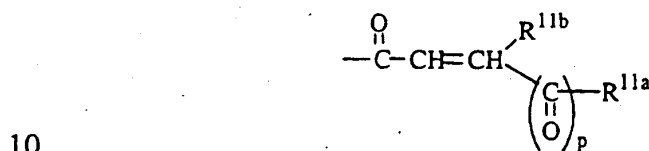


20 wherein  $\text{R}^{12}$ ,  $\text{R}^{13}$  and  $\text{R}^{25}$  are the same as defined above,  $\text{R}^{17f}$  is the same groups for  $\text{R}^{17}$  but having at least one halogen-substituted lower alkyl group on the heterocyclic group, and  $\text{R}^{17g}$  is the same groups for  $\text{R}^{17}$  but having at least one  $-\text{B}'-\text{NR}^{12}\text{R}^{13}$  ( $\text{B}'$  is a lower alkylene group,  $\text{R}^{12}$ ,  $\text{R}^{13}$  are the same as defined above) on the heterocyclic group.

The reaction of the compound (5i) and the compound (36) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (1i) and the compound (22) in the above Reaction Scheme-6.

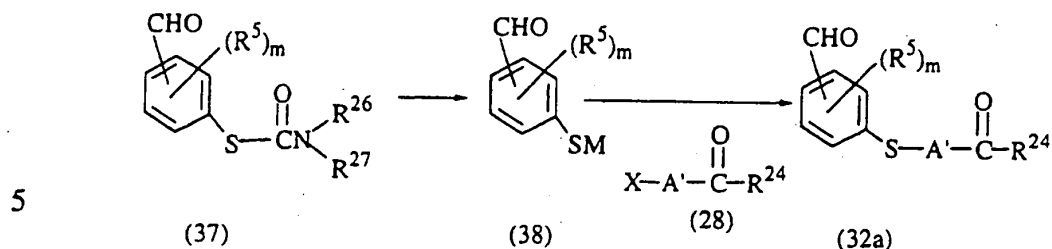
The reaction of converting the compound (5j) into the compound (5k) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of converting the compound (5b) into the compound (5c) in the above Reaction Scheme-13.

The compound of the formula (1) wherein R<sup>6</sup> is a group of the formula:



wherein R<sup>11b</sup>, p and R<sup>11a</sup> are the same as defined above, and showing a trans-configuration at the double bond of the above formula may be isomerized into a cis-compound at the corresponding double bond by being exposed to sunlight, a suitable solvent. The solvent may be the same solvents used in the reaction of the carboxylic halide and the amine compound (5) in the reactions of the compound (1b) and the compound (5) in the above Reaction Scheme-2. The reaction is carried out at a temperature of 0°C to 70°C, preferably at 0°C to room temperature, for about 1 to 10 hours.

Among the starting compounds (32) used in the Reaction Scheme-11,  
20 some compounds (32) are prepared by the following process.

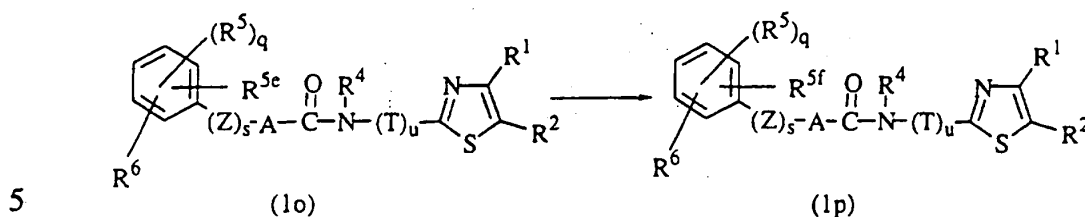
Reaction Scheme-16

wherein  $\text{R}^5$ ,  $m$ ,  $\text{A}'$ ,  $\text{M}$  and  $\text{R}^{24}$  are the same as defined above, and  $\text{R}^{26}$  and  $\text{R}^{27}$  are the same or different and each are a lower alkyl group.

The compound of converting the compound (37) into the compound (38) is carried out in the presence of a basic compound in a suitable solvent. The solvent may be, for example, water, lower alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, etc.), ketones (e.g., acetone, methyl ethyl ketone, etc.), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, etc.), ethers (e.g., dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, ethylene glycol dimethyl ether, etc.), or a mixture of these solvents. The basic compound may be, for example, an alkali metal carbonate (e.g., sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, etc.), or an alkali metal hydroxide (e.g., sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, calcium hydroxide, lithium hydroxide, etc.), etc. The reaction is usually carried out at room temperature to about  $200^\circ\text{C}$ , preferably at room temperature to about  $150^\circ\text{C}$ , for about 10 minutes to about 25 hours.

The reaction of the compound (38) and the compound (28) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (27) and the compound (28) in the above Reaction Scheme-10.

The each step of the above Reaction Scheme-16 can be carried out in one-pot system without isolating the compound (38) from the reaction system.

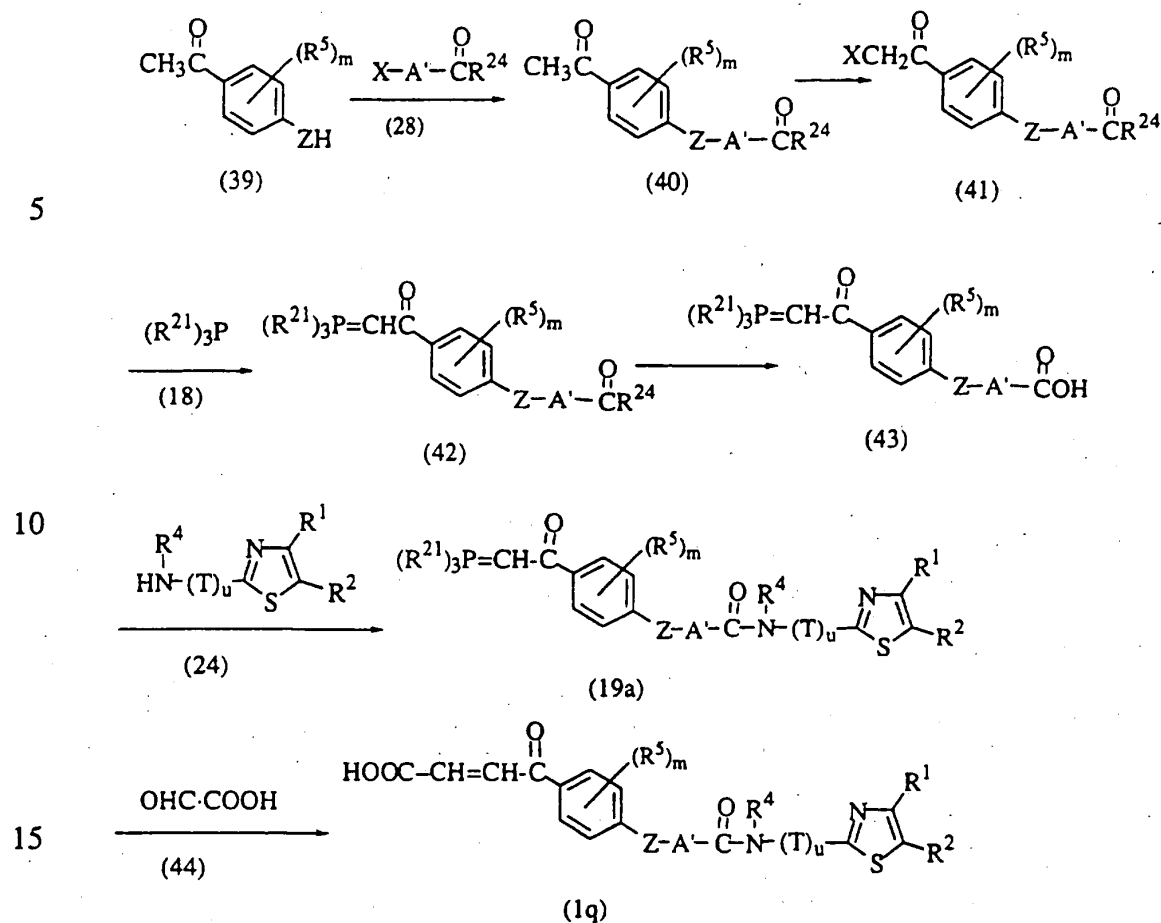
Reaction Scheme-17

wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $R^6$ ,  $s$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$ ,  $q$ ,  $Z$  and  $A$  are the same as defined above,  $R^{5e}$  is a lower alkenyloxy group, and  $R^{5f}$  is a hydroxy group.

The reaction of converting the compound (1o) into the compound (1p) is carried out in the presence of a catalyst and an acid in a suitable solvent. The solvent may be, for example, water, acetic acid, alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, etc.), hydrocarbons (e.g., hexane, cyclohexane, etc.), ethers (e.g., dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, diethyl ether, ethylene glycol dimethyl ether, etc.), esters (e.g., ethyl acetate, methyl acetate, etc.), aprotic polar solvents (e.g., dimethylformamide, etc.), or a mixture of these solvents. The catalyst may be, for example, palladium, palladium black, palladium hydroxide, palladium hydroxide-carbon, palladium-carbon, platinum, platinum oxide, copper cromite, Raney nickel, etc. The acid includes, for example, organic acids such as p-toluene-sulfonic acid, etc. The catalyst is used in an amount of 0.02 to 1 time of the amount of the compound (1o). The acid is usually used in a catalytic amount. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  to about  $150^{\circ}\text{C}$ , preferably at a temperature of  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  to about  $120^{\circ}\text{C}$ , for about 0.5 to about 20 hours.



## Reaction Scheme-18



wherein T, u, R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, A', Z, R<sup>5</sup>, m, R<sup>21</sup>, R<sup>24</sup> and X are the same as defined above.

The reaction of the compound (39) and the compound (28) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (1i) and the compound (22) in the above Reaction Scheme-6.

The reaction of converting the compound (40) into the compound (41) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of converting the compound (16) into the compound (17) in the above Reaction Scheme-5.

The reaction of the compound (41) and the compound (18) is carried out

under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (17) and the compound (18) in the above Reaction Scheme-5.

The reaction of converting the compound (42) wherein  $R^{24}$  is a lower alkoxy group into the compound (43) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of converting the compound (1d) into the compound (1e) in the above Reaction Scheme-4.

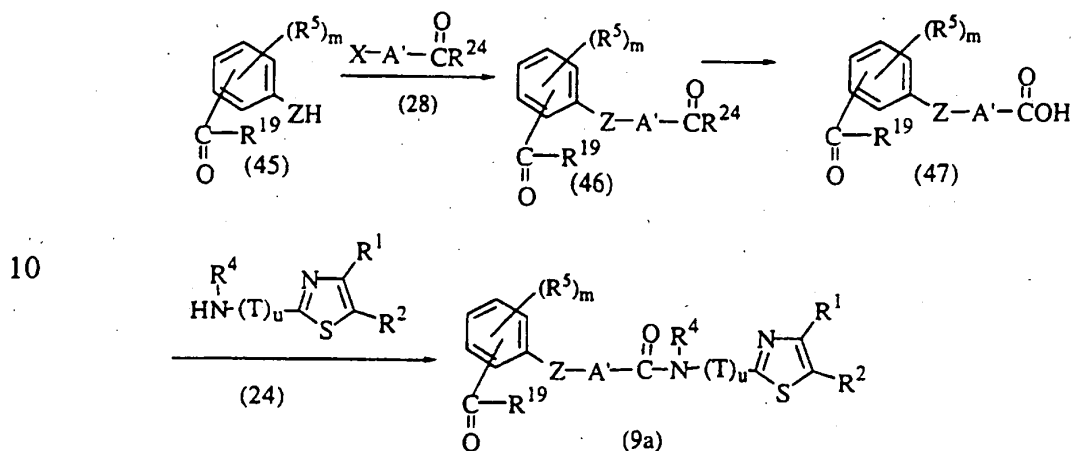
The reaction of converting the compound (42) wherein  $R^{24}$  is a phenyl-lower alkoxy group into the compound (43) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of converting the compound (5b) into the compound (5c) in the above Reaction Scheme-13.

The reaction of the compound (43) and the compound (24) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (1b) and the compound (5) in the above Reaction Scheme-2.

The reaction of the compound (19a) and the compound (44) is carried out in a suitable solvent in the presence of a basic compound, at 0°C to 150°C, preferably at room temperature to about 100°C, for about 0.5 to 8 hours. The solvent may be any solvent which does not disturb the reaction, and may be water, alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, etc.), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, diglyme, monoglyme, etc.), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, etc.), polar solvents (e.g., dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide, etc.), or a mixture of these solvents. The compound (44) is usually used at least in an equimolar amount, preferably in an amount of 1 to 5 moles, to 1 mole of the

compound (19a). The basic compound may be the same basic compounds which are used in the reaction of the compound (6) and the compound (7) in the above Reaction Scheme-3. The starting compound (9) can be prepared, for example, by the process in Reaction Scheme-19 or -20, as explained below.

### 5 Reaction Scheme-19



wherein T, u,  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $A'$ , Z,  $R^5$ , m, X,  $R^{24}$  and  $R^{19}$  are the same as defined

15 above.

The reaction of the compound (45) and the compound (28) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (1i) and the compound (22) in the above Reaction Scheme-6.

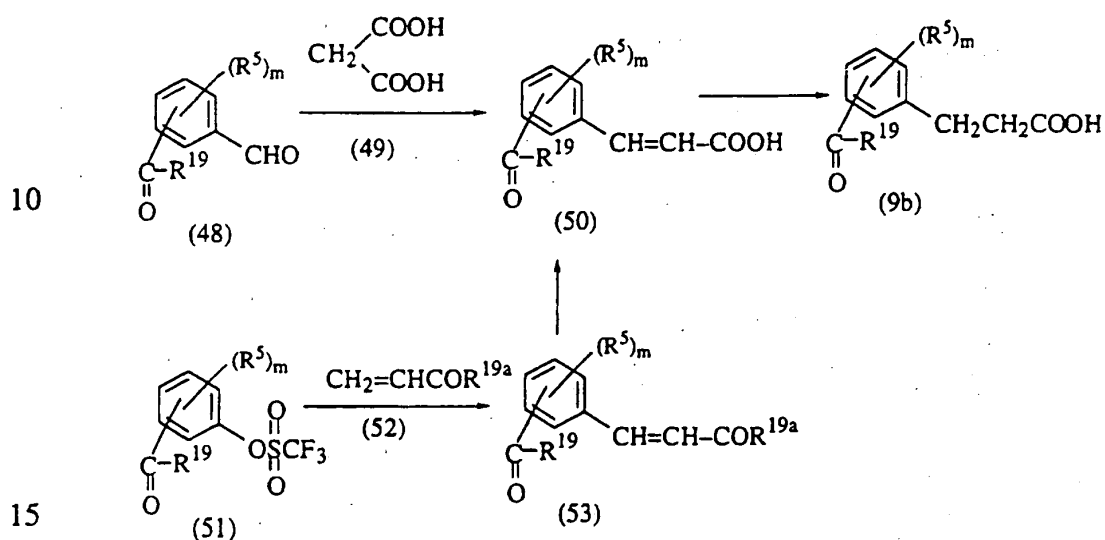
20 The reaction of converting the compound (46) wherein  $R^{24}$  is a lower alkoxy group into the compound (47) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of converting the compound (1d) into the compound (1e) in the above Reaction Scheme-4.

The reaction of converting the compound (46) wherein  $R^{24}$  is a phenyl-lower alkoxy group into the compound (47) is carried out under the same

conditions as those in the reaction of converting the compound (5b) into the compound (5c) in the above Reaction Scheme-13.

The reaction of the compound (47) and the compound (24) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (1b) and the compound (5) in the above Reaction Scheme-2.

#### Reaction Scheme-20



wherein R<sup>19</sup>, R<sup>5</sup> and m are the same as defined above, R<sup>19a</sup> is a lower alkoxy group.

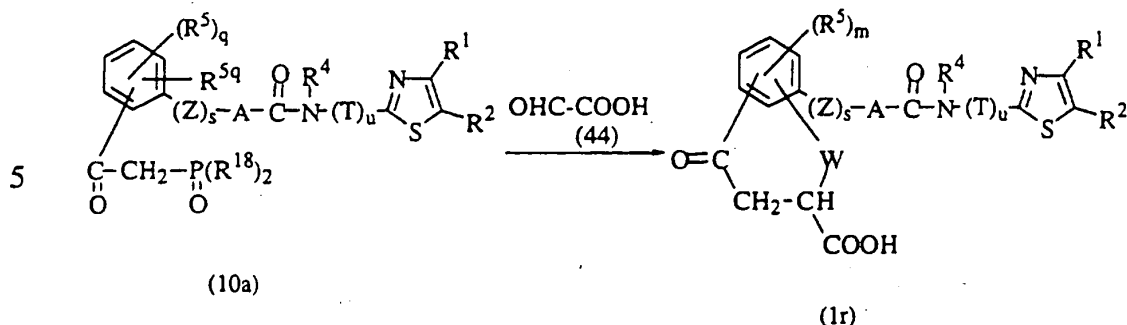
The reaction of the compound (48) and the compound (49) is carried out in a suitable solvent in the presence of a basic compound. The solvents and the basic compounds are the same ones which are used in the reaction of the compound (6) and the compound (7) in the above Reaction Scheme-3. The compound (49) is usually used at least in an equimolar amount, preferably in an amount of 1 to 3 moles, to 1 mole of the compound (48). The reaction is usually carried out at room temperature to 200°C, preferably at room temperature to

about 150°C, for about 1 to about 60 hours.

The reaction of converting the compound (50) into the compound (9b) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of converting the compound (5b) into the compound (5c) in the above Reaction Scheme-13.

5        The reaction of the compound (51) and the compound (52) is carried out in a suitable solvent in the presence of a basic compound and a catalyst. The solvent includes, for example, ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, monoglyme, diglyme, etc.), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.), aliphatic hydrocarbons (e.g., n-hexane, heptane, cyclo-  
10    hexane, etc.), dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide, or a mixture of these solvents. The basic compound may be the same ones which are used in the reaction of the compound (1b) and the compound (5) using a carboxylic halide in the above Reaction Scheme-2. The catalyst  
15    includes, for example, palladium chloride, tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium, palladium acetate, 1,3-bis(diphenylphosphino)propane, or a mixture of these solvents. The reaction is usually carried out at 0°C to 200°C, preferably at room temperature to about 150°C, for about 1 to about 20 hours. The compound (52) is usually used at least in an equimolar amount, preferably in an amount of 1 to 10 moles, to 1 mole of the compound (51). The basic compound is usually used  
20    at least in an equimolar amount, preferably in an amount of 1 to 3 moles, to 1 mole of the compound (51). The catalyst is used at least in an excess amount of the compound (51).

25        The reaction of converting the compound (53) into the compound (50) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of converting the compound (1d) into the compound (1e) in the above Reaction Scheme-4.

Reaction Scheme-21

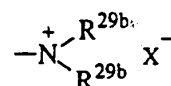
wherein T, u, R<sup>5</sup>, q, R<sup>18</sup>, R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, A, Z, s and W are the same as defined above,

R<sup>5q</sup> is an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent, and a group:

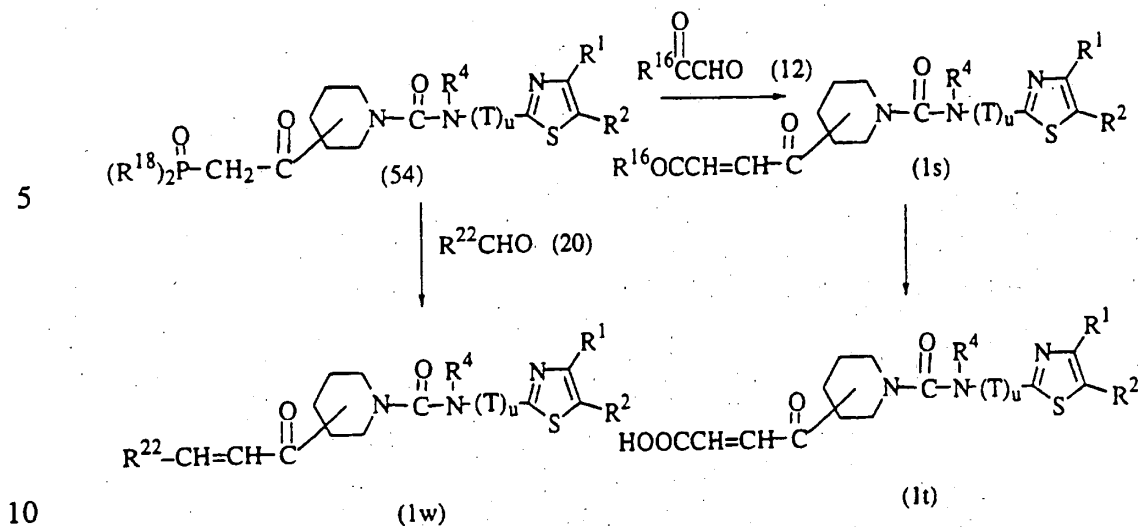
10 -C(O)CH<sub>2</sub>-P(O)(R<sup>18</sup>)<sub>2</sub> and a group: -R<sup>5q</sup> are positioned each other at ortho-position.

The reaction of the compound (10a) and the compound (44) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (10) and the compound (12) in the above Reaction Scheme-3.

15 The compound (1r) wherein W is a group of the formula:



wherein R<sup>29b</sup> and X<sup>-</sup> are the same as defined above) can be obtained by treating with a hydrohalogenic acid such as hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid; etc., after the reaction is complete.

Reaction Scheme-22

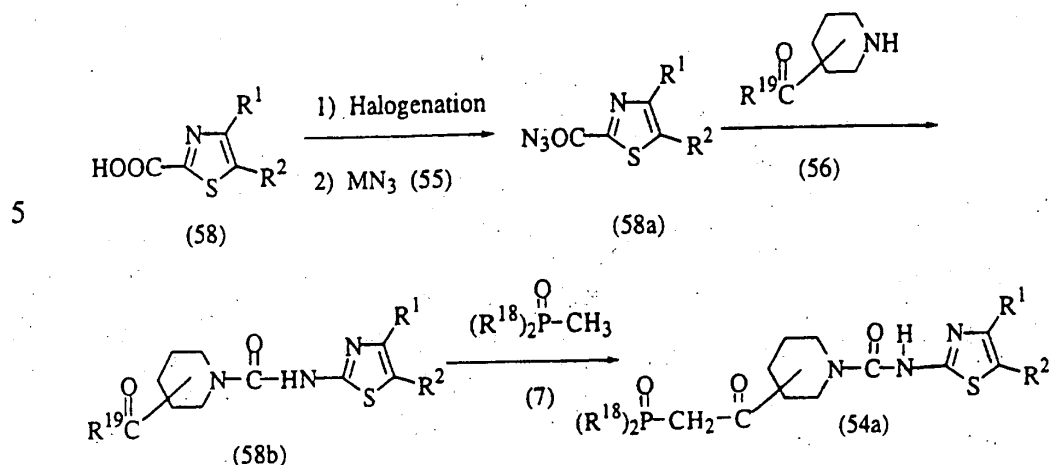
wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^{16}$ ,  $R^{18}$  and  $R^{22}$  are the same as defined above.

The reaction of the compound (54) and the compound (12) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (10) and the compound (12) in the above Reaction Scheme-3.

The reaction of converting the compound (1s) wherein  $R^{16}$  is a lower alkoxy group into the compound (1t) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of converting the compound (1d) into the compound (1e) in the above Reaction Scheme-4.

The reaction of the compound (54) and the compound (20) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (10) and the compound (20) in the above Reaction Scheme-3.

The starting compound (54) is prepared, for example, by the following process.

Reaction Scheme-23

10 wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ , M,  $R^{19}$  and  $R^{18}$  are the same as defined above.

The halogenation reaction of the compound (58) is carried out under conventional halogenation conditions which are employed in the halogenation reaction of a carboxylic acid. The reaction of the carboxylic acid halide compound of the compound (58) and the compound (55) is carried out in the presence or absence of a basic compound in a suitable solvent. The solvent includes, for example, halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., methylene chloride, chloroform, etc.), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dimethoxyethane, etc.), esters (e.g., methyl acetate, ethyl acetate, etc.), aprotic polar solvents (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide, etc.), alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, propanol, butanol, 3-methoxy-1-butanol, ethylcellosolve, methylcellosolve, etc.), pyridine, acetone, acetonitrile, water, or a mixture of these solvents. The basic compound includes, for example, organic basic compounds such as triethylamine, trimethylamine, pyridine, dimethylaniline, N-methylmorpholine, DBN, DBU, DABCO, etc., or inorganic basic

25

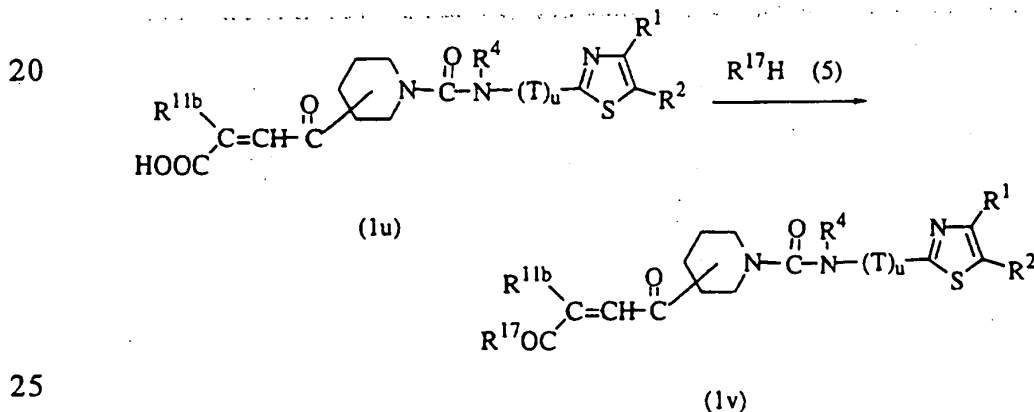


compounds such as potassium carbonate, sodium carbonate, potassium hydride, sodium hydride, potassium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide, silver carbonate, sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, etc. The compound (55) is used at least in an equimolar amount, preferably in an amount of 1 to 3 moles, to 1 mole of the  
 5 carboxylic acid halide compound of the compound (58). The reaction is usually carried out at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  to about  $180^{\circ}\text{C}$ , preferably at  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  to about  $150^{\circ}\text{C}$ , for about 5 minutes to about 30 hours.

The reaction of the compound (58a) and the compound (56) is carried out in a suitable solvent, or without a solvent, at  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  to about  $200^{\circ}\text{C}$ , preferably  
 10 at room temperature to about  $150^{\circ}\text{C}$ . The solvent may be the same solvents used in the above reaction of the carboxylic halide of the compound (58) and the compound (55). The compound (56) is used at least in an equimolar amount, preferably in an amount of 1 to 1.5 mole, to 1 mole of the compound (58a). The reaction is carried out for about 1 hour to about 5 hours.

15 The reaction of the compound (58b) and the compound (7) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (9) and the compound (7) in the above Reaction Scheme-3.

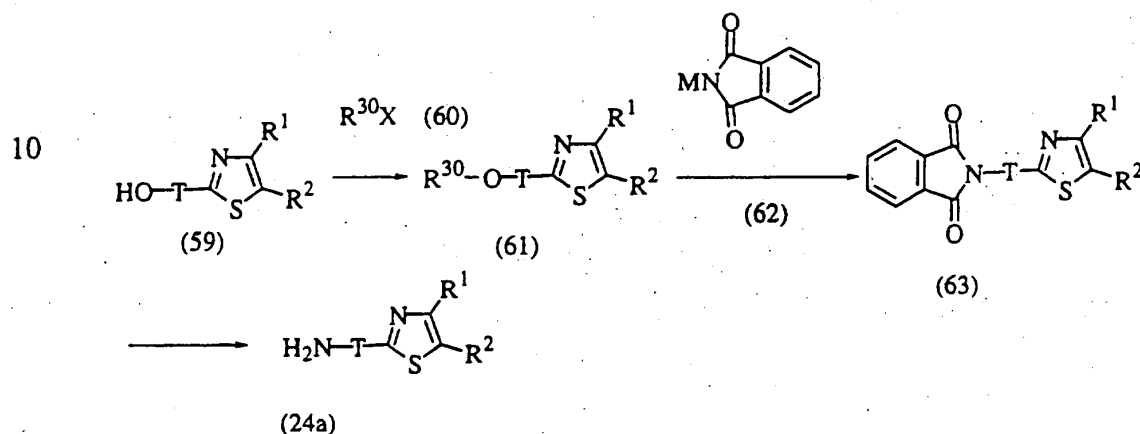
#### Reaction Scheme-24



wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^{11b}$ , T, u and  $R^{17}$  are the same as defined above.

The reaction of the compound (1u) and the compound (5) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (1b) and the compound (5) in the above Reaction Scheme-2. The starting compound (24) can be prepared, for example, by the method of Reaction Scheme-25, as explained below.

#### Reaction Scheme-25



wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ , M, X and T are the same as defined above, and  $R^{30}$  is a lower alkylsulfonyl group.

The reaction of the compound (59) and the compound (60) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (1i) and the compound (22) in the above Reaction Scheme-6. The reaction of the compound (61) and the compound (62) is carried out under the same conditions as those in the reaction of the compound (1i) and the compound (22) in the above Reaction Scheme-6.

The reaction of converting the compound (63) into the compound (24a) is carried out by treating the compound (63) with hydrazine in a suitable

solvent, or hydrolyzing the compound (63). The solvent used in the reaction with hydrazine may be, in addition to water, the same solvents used in the reaction using a carboxylic acid halide in the reaction of the compound (1b) and the compound (5) in Reaction Scheme-2. The reaction is usually carried out at  
5 room temperature to about 120°C, preferably at 0°C to about 100°C, for about 0.5 hour to about 5 hours. The hydrazine is usually used at least in an equimolar amount, preferably in an amount of 1 to 6 moles, to 1 mole of the compound (63).

The hydrolysis is carried out in a suitable solvent or without a solvent in  
10 the presence of an acid or a basic compound. The solvent includes, for example, water, lower alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, etc.), ketones (e.g., acetone, methyl ethyl ketone, etc.), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, ethylene glycol dimethyl ether, etc.), fatty acids (e.g., acetic acid, formic acid, etc.), or a mixture of these solvents. The acid includes, for example,  
15 mineral acids (e.g., hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, etc.), organic acids (e.g., formic acid, acetic acid, aromatic sulfonic acids, etc.). The basic compound includes, for example, an alkali metal carbonate (e.g., sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, etc.), an alkali metal or alkaline earth metal hydroxide (e.g., sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, calcium hydroxide, etc.). The reaction  
20 is usually carried out at room temperature to about 200°C, preferably at room temperature to about 150°C, for about 10 minutes to about 25 hours.

Among the desired compounds (1) of the present invention, the compounds having an acidic group can easily be converted into salts by treating them with a pharmaceutically acceptable basic compound. The basic  
25 compound includes, for example, an alkali metal hydroxide such as sodium

hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, lithium hydroxide, calcium hydroxide, etc., an alkali metal carbonate such as sodium carbonate, etc., an alkali metal hydrogen carbonate such as potassium hydrogen carbonate, an alkali metal alkoxide such as sodium methylate, potassium ethylate, and the like.

5        Besides, among the desired compounds (1) of the present invention, the compounds having a basic group can easily be converted into acid addition salts thereof by treating them with a pharmaceutically acceptable acid. The acid includes, for example, inorganic acids (e.g. sulfuric acid, nitric acid, hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, etc.), and organic acids (e.g. acetic acid, p-toluene-  
10       sulfonic acid, ethanesulfonic acid, oxalic acid, maleic acid, fumaric acid, citric acid, succinic acid, benzoic acid, etc.). These salts can be also used as an active ingredient of the pharmaceutical composition of the present invention as well as the compound (1) in a free form. In addition, the compounds of the present invention also include stereoisomers and optical isomers, and these isomers are  
15       also used as an active ingredient.

      The desired compound obtained in the above Reaction Schemes can easily be isolated and purified by conventional isolation methods from the reaction system. The isolation methods are, for example, distillation method, recrystallization method, column chromatography, ion exchange chromatography, gel chromatography, affinity chromatography, preparative thin layer  
20       chromatography, extraction with solvent, dilution method, and the like.

      The compounds (1) of the present invention are useful as a protein kinase inhibitor, and can be used in the form of a conventional pharmaceutical preparation. The preparation is prepared by using conventional diluents or  
25       carriers such as fillers, thickening agents, binders, wetting agent, disintegrators,

surfactants, lubricants, and the like. The pharmaceutical preparations can be selected from various forms in accordance with the desired utilities, and the representative forms are tablets, pills, powders, solutions, suspensions, emulsions, granules, capsules, suppositories, injections (solutions, suspensions, etc.), and the like. In order to form in tablets, there are used carriers such as vehicles (e.g. lactose, white sugar, sodium chloride, glucose, urea, starch, calcium carbonate, kaolin, crystalline cellulose, silicic acid, etc.), binders (e.g. water, ethanol, propanol, simple syrup, glucose solution, starch solution, gelatin solution, carboxymethyl cellulose, shellac, methyl cellulose, potassium phosphate, polyvinylpyrrolidone, etc.), disintegrators (e.g. dry starch, sodium alginate, agar powder, laminaran powder, sodium hydrogen carbonate, calcium carbonate, polyoxyethylene sorbitan fatty acid esters, sodium laurylsulfate, stearic monoglyceride, starches, lactose, etc.), disintegration inhibitors (e.g. white sugar, stearin, cacao butter, hydrogenated oils, etc.), absorption promoters (e.g. quaternary ammonium base, sodium laurylsulfate, etc.), wetting agents (e.g. glycerin, starches, etc.), adsorbents (e.g. starches, lactose, kaolin, bentonite, colloidal silicates, etc.), lubricants (e.g. purified talc, stearates, boric acid powder, polyethylene glycol, etc.), and the like. Moreover, the tablets may also be in the form of a conventional coated tablet, such as sugar-coated tablets, gelatin-coated tablets, enteric coated tablets, film coating tablets, or double or multiple layer tablets. In the preparation of pills, the carriers may be conventional ones, and include, for example, vehicles (e.g. glucose, lactose, starches, cacao butter, hydrogenated vegetable oils, kaolin, talc, etc.), binders (e.g. gum arabic powder, tragacanth powder, gelatin, ethanol, etc.), disintegrators (e.g. laminaran, agar, etc.), and the like. In the preparation of suppositories, the carriers may be

conventional ones, and include, for example, polyethylene glycol, cacao butter, higher alcohols, higher alcohol esters, gelatin, semi-synthetic glycerides, and the like. The capsules are prepared by mixing the active compound with a conventional carrier, and fulfilling the mixture into hard gelatin capsules or soft capsules. In the preparation of injections, the solutions and suspensions are sterilized and are preferably made isotonic with the blood. In the preparation of these solutions, emulsions and suspensions, there are used conventional diluents, such as water, ethyl alcohol, macrogol, propylene glycol, ethoxylated isostearyl alcohol, polyoxylated isostearyl alcohol, polyoxyethylene sorbitan fatty acid esters, and the like. In this case, the pharmaceutical preparations may also be incorporated with sodium chloride, glucose, or glycerin in an amount sufficient to make them isotonic, and may also be incorporated with conventional solubilizers, buffers, anesthetizing agents. Besides, the pharmaceutical preparations may optionally be incorporated with coloring agents, preservatives, perfumes, flavors, sweetening agents, and other medicaments, if required.

The amount of the desired compound (1) of the present invention or a salt thereof to be incorporated into the pharmaceutical preparation is not specified but may be selected from a broad range, but usually, it is preferably in the range of about 1 to 70 % by weight, preferably in the range of about 5 to 50 % by weight.

The pharmaceutical preparation of the present invention may be administered in any method, and the suitable method for administration may be determined in accordance with various forms of preparations, ages, sexes and other conditions of the patients, the degree of severity of diseases, and the like.

For example, tablets, pills, solutions, suspensions, emulsions, granules and capsules are administered orally. Injections are intravenously administered alone or together with a conventional auxiliary liquid (e.g. glucose, amino acid solutions), and further are optionally administered alone in intramuscular, intracutaneous, subcutaneous, or intraperitoneal route, if required. Suppositories are administered in intrarectal route.

The dosage of the pharmaceutical preparation of the present invention may be selected in accordance with the usage, ages, sexes and other conditions of the patients, the degree of severity of the diseases, and the like, but it is usually in the range of about 0.6 to 50 mg of the compound (1) or a salt thereof per 1 kg of body weight of the patient per day. The active compound is contained in an amount of about 10 to 1000 mg per one unit of the dosage form.

## BEST MODE FOR CARRYING OUT THE INVENTION

The present invention is illustrated in more detail by the following Preparations of pharmaceutical composition, Reference Examples of processes for preparing the starting compounds to be used for preparing the desired compounds of the present invention, and Examples of processes for preparing the desired compounds, and Experiment of the activities of the desired compounds of the present invention.

Preparation 1

Film coated tablets are prepared from the following components.

10	<u>Components</u>	<u>Amount</u>
	2-[2-Methoxy-4-{3-[4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinylcarbonyl]acryloyl}phenoxy)methyl-carbonylamino]benzothiazole	150 g
15	Avicel (trade mark of microcrystalline cellulose manufactured by Asahi Chemical Industry, Co., Ltd.)	40 g
	Corn starch	30 g
	Magnesium stearate	2 g
	Hydroxypropyl methylcellulose	10 g
	Polyethylene glycol-6000	3 g
20	Castor oil	40 g
	Ethanol	40 g

The active compound of the present invention, Avicel, corn starch and magnesium stearate are mixed and kneaded, and the mixture is tabletted by using a conventional poulder (R 10 mm) for sugar coating. The tablets thus obtained are coated with a film coating agent consisting of hydroxypropyl



methylcellulose, polyethylene glycol-6000, castor oil and ethanol to give film coated tablets.

### Preparation 2

Tablets are prepared from the following components.

5	<u>Components</u>	<u>Amount</u>
	2-[3-Methoxy-4-{3-[4-(3,4-dimethyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinylcarbonyl]acryloyl}phenoxy)methyl-carbonylamino]benzimidazole	150 g
	Citric acid	1.0 g
10	Lactose	33.5 g
	Dicalcium phosphate	70.0 g
	Pullonic F-68	30.0 g
	Sodium laurylsulfate	15.0 g
	Polyvinylpyrrolidone	15.0 g
15	Polyethylene glycol (Carbowax 1500)	4.5 g
	Polyethylene glycol (Carbowax 6000)	45.0 g
	Corn starch	30.0 g
	Dry sodium stearate	3.0 g
	Dry magnesium stearate	3.0 g
20	Ethanol	q.s.

The active compound of the present invention, citric acid, lactose, dicalcium phosphate, Pullonic F-68 and sodium laurylsulfate are mixed.

The mixture is screened with No. 60 screen and is granulated with an alcohol solution containing polyvinylpyrrolidone, Carbowax 1500 and 6000. If  
25 required, an alcohol is added thereto so that the powder mixture is made a paste-

like mass. Corn starch is added to the mixture and the mixture is continuously mixed to form uniform particles. The resulting particles are passed through No. 10 screen and entered into a tray and then dried in an oven at 100°C for 12 to 14 hours. The dried particles are screened with No. 16 screen and thereto are  
 5 added dry sodium laurylsulfate and dry magnesium stearate, and the mixture is tabletted to form the desired shape.

The core tablets thus prepared are vanished and dusted with talc in order to guard from wetting. Undercoating is applied to the core tablets. In order to administer the tablets orally, the core tablets are vanished several times. In order  
 10 to give round shape and smooth surface to the tablets, further undercoating and coating with lubricant are applied thereto. The tablets are further coated with a coloring coating material until the desired colored tablets are obtained. After drying, the coated tablets are polished to obtain the desired tablets having uniform gloss.

### 15 Preparation 3

An injection preparation is prepared from the following components.

	<u>Components</u>	<u>Amount</u>
	2-{2-(3-Morpholinopropyl)-4-[3-(4-pyridyl)acryloyl]-phoxymethylcarbonylamino}benzothiazole	5 g
20	Polyethylene glycol (molecular weight: 4000)	0.3 g
	Sodium chloride	0.9 g
	Polyoxyethylene sorbitan monooleate	0.4 g
	Sodium metabisulfite	0.1 g
	Methyl-paraben	0.18 g
25	Propyl-paraben	0.02 g

Distilled water for injection 10.0 ml

The above parabens, sodium metabisulfite and sodium chloride are dissolved with stirring in distilled water of half volume of the above at 80°C. The solution thus obtained is cooled to 40°C, and the active compound of the present invention and further polyethylene glycol and polyoxyethylene sorbitan monooleate are dissolved in the above solution. To the solution is added distilled water for injection to adjust to the desired volume, and the solution is sterilized by filtering with an appropriate filter paper to give an injection preparation.

10 Reference Example 1

A solution of o-isopropylphenol (39.5 g), potassium carbonate (40 g) and ethyl  $\alpha$ -bromoacetate (40 ml) in dimethylformamide (300 ml) is heated with stirring at 80°C for 8 hours. To the mixture is added water, and the mixture is extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract is washed with water, dried, and concentrated under reduced pressure to remove the solvent. The residue thus obtained is dissolved in a solution of sodium hydroxide (20 g) in water (300 ml) and ethanol (200 ml), and the mixture is refluxed for 1.5 hour. After cooling, the mixture is acidified with conc. hydrochloric acid, and the precipitated crystals are collected by filtration to give  $\alpha$ -(2-isopropylphenoxy)acetic acid (37 g).

20 White powder

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.24 (6H, d,  $J=7\text{Hz}$ ), 3.39 (1H, sept,  $J=7\text{Hz}$ ), 4.69 (2H, s), 6.75 (1H, dd,  $J=1\text{Hz}$ ,  $J=8\text{Hz}$ ), 6.95-7.3 (3H, m)

Reference Example 2

A solution of  $\alpha$ -(2-isopropylphenoxy)acetic acid (13.1 g) in thionyl

109

chloride (30 ml) is refluxed for 30 minutes. The mixture is concentrated under reduce pressure to remove the excess thionyl chloride, and the resultant is dissolved in dichloromethane (50 ml). The mixture is added dropwise into a solution of 2-aminobenzothiazole (9.1 g) and pyridine (7.2 ml) in dichloromethane (100 ml) under ice-cooling. The mixture is stirred at the same temperature for five hours, and then washed with water, dried, and concentrated under reduced pressure. To the residue is added ethanol to give 2-(2-isopropylphenoxy)methylcarbonylamino)benzothiazole (16.66 g).

Yellow powder

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.32 (6H, d, J=7Hz) 3.43 (1H, sept, J=7Hz), 4.78 (2H, s), 6.85 (1H, dd, J=1Hz, J=8Hz), 7.0-7.55 (5H, m), 7.8-7.9 (2H, m), 9.74 (1H, br)

### Reference Example 3

To a solution of dimethyl methylphosphonate (19.5 ml) in anhydrous tetrahydrofuran (300 ml) is added a 1.72 M solution of n-butyl lithium in n-hexane (107 ml) at -50°C. Thirty minutes later, to the mixture is added in portions 2-(2-methoxy-4-formylphenoxy)methylcarbonylamino)benzothiazole (20.5 g) under nitrogen atmosphere. The mixture is stirred at -50°C for one hour, and thereto is added water. The mixture is acidified with conc. hydrochloric acid, and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract is washed with water, dried and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue is purified by silica gel column chromatography (solvent; dichloromethane:methanol = 200:1 → 30:1) to give dimethyl {2-[3-methoxy-4-(2-benzothiazolylaminocarbonylmethoxy)phenyl]-2-hydroxyethyl}phosphonate (19.0 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 2.05-2.35 (2H, m), 3.73, 3.76, 3.78 and 3.81 (6H, each s), 3.98 (2H, d,  $J=2.5\text{Hz}$ ), 4.01 (3H, s), 4.77 (2H, s), 5.0-5.15 (1H, m), 6.90 (1H, dd,  $J=2\text{Hz}$ ,  $J=8\text{Hz}$ ), 6.98 (1H, d,  $J=8\text{Hz}$ ), 7.07 (1H, d,  $J=2\text{Hz}$ ), 7.25-7.5 (2H, m), 7.8-7.9 (2H, m), 10.66 (1H, br)

- 5 To a solution of dimethyl {2-[3-methoxy-4-(2-benzothiazolylamino-carbonylmethoxy)phenyl]-2-hydroxyethyl}phosphonate (19.0 g) in chloroform (300 ml) is added active manganese dioxide (17.7 g), and the mixture is refluxed for three hours. To the mixture is additionally added active manganese dioxide (18 g), and the mixture is refluxed for three hours. To the mixture is further
- 10 added active manganese dioxide (20 g), and the mixture is refluxed for three hours. The manganese dioxide is collected by filtration, and washed with chloroform. The filtrate and the washings are combined and concentrated under reduced pressure to remove the chloroform. The residue is purified by silica gel column chromatography (solvent; dichloromethane:methanol = 200:1  $\rightarrow$  50:1)
- 15 to give dimethyl {[3-methoxy-4-(2-benzothiazolylaminocarbonylmethoxy)-benzoyl]methyl}phosphonate (7.76 g).

White powder

- $^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 3.62 (2H, d,  $J=22.5\text{Hz}$ ), 3.79 (6H, d,  $J=11.2\text{Hz}$ ), 4.04 (3H, s), 4.85 (2H, s), 7.02 (1H, d,  $J=8.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.3-7.55 (2H, m), 7.6-7.7 (2H, m),
- 20 7.8-7.9 (2H, m), 10.31 (1H, br)

#### Reference Example 4

To a solution of chloroacetyl chloride (10.0 ml) in anhydrous 1,2-dichloroethane (250 ml) is added aluminum chloride (12 g) at room temperature, and the mixture is stirred for 20 minutes. To the mixture is added at once 2-(2-isopropyl-

phenoxymethylcarbonylamino)benzothiazole (20 g), and the mixture is stirred at room temperature for one hour. The reaction mixture is poured into water, and thereto is added n-hexane. The precipitates are collected by filtration, washed with water, and dried to give 2-[2-isopropyl-4-(2-chloroacetyl)phenoxy-methylcarbonylamino]benzothiazole (25.9 g).

White powder

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{DMSO-d}_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.24 (6H, d,  $J=7\text{Hz}$ ), 3.38 (1H, m), 5.12 (4H, s), 7.01 (1H, d,  $J=9\text{Hz}$ ), 7.25-7.55 (2H, m), 7.7-7.95 (3H, m), 7.97 (1H, d,  $J=8\text{Hz}$ ), 13.00 (1H, br)

10 Reference Example 5

A suspension of 2-[2-isopropyl-4-(2-chloroacetyl)phenoxy-methylcarbonylamino]benzimidazole (4.0 g) and triphenylphosphine (2.8 g) in chloroform (100 ml) is refluxed for 7 hours. The reaction mixture is concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue is crystallized from dichloromethane-diethyl ether to give [3-isopropyl-4-(2-benzothiazolylaminocarbonylmethoxy)benzoyl]methyltriphenylphosphonium chloride (3.8 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{DMSO-d}_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.23 (6H, d,  $J=7\text{Hz}$ ), 3.40 (1H, m), 5.18 (2H, s), 6.19 (2H, d,  $J=13.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.09 (1H, d,  $J=9\text{Hz}$ ), 7.25-7.5 (2H, m), 7.6-8.05 (19H, m), 12.77 (1H, s)

20 To a solution of [3-isopropyl-4-(2-benzothiazolylaminocarbonylmethoxy)benzoyl]methyltriphenylphosphonium chloride (3.3 g) in methanol (50 ml) is added DBU (1 ml), and the mixture is stirred at room temperature for two hours. The precipitated crystals are collected by filtration, washed with methanol, and dried to give [3-isopropyl-4-(2-benzothiazolylaminocarbonyl-

methoxy)benzoyl]methylenetriphenylphosphorane (2.27 g).

White powder

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.32 (6H, d,  $J=7\text{Hz}$ ), 3.42 (1H, sept,  $J=7\text{Hz}$ ), 4.2-4.6 (1H, m), 4.73 (2H, s), 6.75 (1H, d,  $J=8.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.25-8.0 (21H, m), 10.01 (1H, br)

5 Using the suitable starting compounds, the following compound is obtained in the same manner as in Reference Example 5.

[3-(3-chloropropyl)-4-(2-benzothiazolylaminocarbonylmethoxy)benzoyl]-methylenetriphenylphosphonium chloride:

White powder

10  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 2.11 (2H, tt,  $J=6.6\text{Hz}$ ,  $J=8.0\text{Hz}$ ), 2.86 (2H, t,  $J=8.0\text{Hz}$ ), 3.71 (2H, t,  $J=6.6\text{Hz}$ ), 5.20 (2H, s), 6.17 (2H, d,  $J=12.8\text{Hz}$ ), 7.13 (1H, d,  $J=8.7\text{Hz}$ ), 7.34 (1H, t,  $J=7.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.48 (1H, t,  $J=7.0\text{Hz}$ ), 7.76-8.02 (19H, m), 12.75 (1H, br)

#### Reference Example 6

15 To dimethylformamide (200 ml) are added 2-methoxy-4-acetylphenol (20 g), ethyl  $\alpha$ -bromoacetate (15 ml) and potassium carbonate (18.3 g), and the mixture is stirred at room temperature overnight. After the reaction is complete, water is added to the mixture, and the mixture is extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract is washed with aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, and  
20 dried over magnesium sulfate, and concentrated under reduced pressure to remove the solvent. The resulting crystals are collected, and washed with *n*-hexane-diethyl ether to give ethyl  $\alpha$ -(2-methoxy-4-acetylphenoxy)acetate (23.86 g).

To chloroform (230 ml) are added ethyl  $\alpha$ -(2-methoxy-4-acetylphenoxy)-

acetate (23 g) and copper (II) bromide (55 g), and the mixture is refluxed for 3.5 hours. After the reaction is complete, the mixture is filtered through a cerite pad to remove the precipitates, and washed with sodium hypochlorite. The filtrate is dried over magnesium sulfate, and concentrated under reduced pressure to  
5 remove the solvent, and then crystallized to give ethyl  $\alpha$ -[2-methoxy-4-(2-bromoacetyl)phenoxy]acetate (21.28 g).

To chloroform (200 ml) are added ethyl  $\alpha$ -[2-methoxy-4-(2-bromoacetyl)-  
phenoxy]acetate (20 g) and triphenylphosphine (20.6 g) in an ice-bath, and the  
mixture is stirred for one hour. After confirming that the starting compounds are  
10 well consumed, the mixture is washed with an aqueous potassium carbonate  
solution. The mixture is dried over magnesium sulfate, and concentrated under  
reduced pressure to remove the solvent. To the residue is added methanol (200  
ml), and thereto is added dropwise sodium hydroxide in an ice-bath. After  
confirming that the starting compounds are well consumed, to the mixture is  
15 added conc. hydrochloric acid. The precipitated crystals are washed with water  
and diethyl ether, and dried to give (3-methoxy-4-carboxymethoxybenzoyl)-  
methylenetriphenylphosphorane (25 g).

To dichloromethane (50 ml) are added (3-methoxy-4-carboxymethoxy-  
benzoyl)methylenetriphenylphosphorane (5 g), 2-aminobenzothiazole (1.9 g),  
20 bis(2-oxo-3-oxazolidinyl)phosphinic chloride (2.93 g) and triethylamine (3.3  
ml), and the mixture is stirred overnight. After the reaction is complete, the  
mixture is washed with an aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, and  
dried over magnesium sulfate to remove the solvent, and further recrystallized  
from toluene to give [3-methoxy-4-(2-benzothiazolylaminocarbonylmethoxy)-  
25 benzoyl]methylenetriphenylphosphorane (5.17 g).



Pale yellow powder

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 4.03 (3H, s), 4.12-4.62 (1H, m), 4.79 (2H, s), 6.96 (1H, d,  $J=8.3\text{Hz}$ ), 7.25-7.90 (22H, m)

Reference Example 7

5 To a solution of N-benzyl-4-piperidone (8.0 g) and 3,4-dimethyl-piperazine (9.5 g) in ethanol (100 ml) are added 5 % platinum-carbon (2 g) and acetic acid (14.4 ml), and the mixture is subjected to catalytic hydrogenation at room temperature under atmospheric pressure. The catalyst is removed by filtration, and the filtrate is concentrated under reduced pressure. Water is  
10 added to the resultant, and the mixture is basified with a 5% aqueous sodium hydroxide solution, and the mixture is extracted with diethyl ether. The extract is washed with water, dried and concentrated under reduced pressure to remove the solvent. The residue is dissolved in ethanol, and thereto is added to conc. hydrochloric acid to give a hydrochloride. The resulting white powder is  
15 collected by filtration, dissolved in water, and basified with a 5% aqueous sodium hydroxide solution. The mixture is extracted with diethyl ether, washed with water, dried, and concentrated under reduced pressure to give 4-(3,4-dimethyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-benzylpiperidine (4.2 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.04 (3H, d,  $J=6\text{Hz}$ ), 1.45-2.5 (12H, m), 2.27 (3H, s), 2.7-3.05 (4H, m), 3.48 (2H, s), 7.31 (5H, m)

To a solution of 4-(3,4-dimethyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-benzylpiperidine (4.2 g) in ethanol (50 ml) is added 20 % palladium hydroxide-carbon (0.4 g), and the mixture is subjected to catalytic hydrogenation at  $50^\circ\text{C}$  under atmospheric pressure. The catalyst is removed by filtration, and the filtrate is concentrated

115

under reduced pressure. The residue is evaporated to give 4-(3,4-dimethyl-1-piperazinyl)piperidine (1.65 g).

Colorless oil

b.p. 145°C (0.3 mmHg)

5         $^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.05 (3H, d,  $J=6\text{Hz}$ ), 1.25-1.55 (2H, m), 1.75-3.3 (14H, m), 2.31 (3H, s)

Reference Example 8

A solution of 1-benzyl-L-proline (50 g) in dichloromethane (300 ml) is cooled with ice. To the solution is added N-methylmorpholine (22.5 g), and  
10 then further thereto is added dropwise isobutyl chloroformate (30 g). The mixture is stirred at the same temperature for about one hour, and thereto is added dropwise pyrrolidine (18.8 ml) at the same temperature. The mixture is warmed to room temperature, and stirred for two days. The mixture is washed twice with water (250 ml), and dried over magnesium sulfate. The mixture is  
15 concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue is recrystallized from ethyl acetate-n-hexane to give 2-(1-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl-1-benzylpyrrolidine (31 g), as white powder.

In ethanol (300 ml) is suspended 5 % palladium-carbon (3 g), and thereto is added 2-(1-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl-1-benzylpyrrolidine (30 g), and the mixture  
20 is subjected to catalytic hydrogenation at room temperature under atmospheric pressure. The mixture is filtered, and the filtrate is concentrated under reduced pressure to remove the solvent to give 2-(1-pyrrolidinyl)carbonylpyrrolidine (about 18 g) as an oily product.

Lithium aluminum hydride (9 g) is suspended in dry tetrahydrofuran (100

ml) under ice-cooling, and thereto is added dropwise a solution of 2-(1-pyrrolidinyl)carbonylpyrrolidine (33 g) in dry tetrahydrofuran (80 ml). The mixture is refluxed under nitrogen atmosphere for four hours. The mixture is cooled with ice, and thereto is added a saturated aqueous sodium sulfate solution (about 15 ml), and then mixture is further stirred at room temperature for three hours. The precipitated sodium sulfate is removed by filtration, washed well with chloroform. The filtrate and the washings are combined, concentrated under reduced pressure, and evaporated to give 2-(1-pyrrolidinyl)methylpyrrolidine (22 g).

10           Colorless oil

B.p. 99-101°C (20 mmHg)

Reference Example 9

4-Benzyl-2-chloromethylmorpholine (15 g) and 4-(2-hydroxyethyl)piperazine (25 ml) are mixed, and the mixture is heated with stirring at 130°C for five hours. After the reaction is complete, the mixture is extracted with chloroform, and the extract is dried over magnesium sulfate. The residue thus obtained is concentrated under reduced pressure to give 4-benzyl-2-[4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-1-piperazinyl]methylmorpholine (16 g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.86 (1H, t, J=10.6Hz), 2.07-2.27 (2H, m), 2.37-3.05 (14H, m), 3.49 (2H, d, J=2.3Hz), 3.57-3.89 (5H, m), 7.24-7.33 (5H, m)

4-Benzyl-2-[4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-1-piperazinyl]methylmorpholine (16 g) is dissolved in ethanol (160 ml), and thereto is added palladium hydroxide (1.6 g). The mixture is subjected to de-benzylation at 50°C under hydrogen atmosphere. Five hours later, the mixture is filtered through a cerite pad, and the

117

filtrate is concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting crystals are washed with diethyl ether-n-hexane to give 2-[4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-1-piperazinyl]methyldmorpholine (9.09 g).

M.p. 73-75.5°C

5

White powder

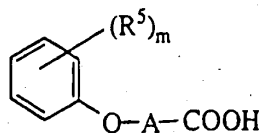
<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 2.25 (1H, dd, J=4.2Hz, J=13.0Hz), 2.37-2.74

(11H, m), 2.74-3.02 (6H, m), 3.49-3.77 (4H, m), 3.85-3.93 (1H, m)

Using the suitable starting compounds, the compounds as listed in Tables 1 to 4 are obtained in the same manner as in Reference Example 1.

118

Table 1



## Reference Example 10

$R^5$ : $CH_3$ (2-position)	m: 1	A: $-CH_2-$
Crystalline form: White powder	Form: Free	NMR (1)

## Reference Example 11

$R^5$ : $C_2H_5$ (2-position)	m: 1	A: $-CH_2-$
Crystalline form: White powder	Form: Free	NMR (2)

## Reference Example 12

$R^5$ : $-(CH_2)_2CH_3$ (2-position)	m: 1	A: $-CH_2-$
Crystalline form: White powder	Form: Free	NMR (3)

## Reference Example 13

$R^5$ : $-(CH_2)_3CH_3$ (2-position)	m: 1	A: $-CH_2-$
M.p. 102-104°C	Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water	
Crystalline form: White powder	Form: Free	

Table 2

---

Reference Example 14

R <sup>5</sup> : $-(CH_2)_4CH_3$ (2-position)	m: 1	A: $-CH_2-$
M.p. 71.4-74.4°C	Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water	
Crystalline form: White powder	Form: Free	

---

## Reference Example 15

R <sup>5</sup> : F (2-position)	m: 1	A: $-CH_2-$
Crystalline form: White powder	Form: Free	NMR (4)

---

## Reference Example 16

R <sup>5</sup> : Cl (2-position)	m: 1	A: $-CH_2-$
Crystalline form: White powder	Form: Free	NMR (5)

---

## Reference Example 17

R <sup>5</sup> : $-(CH_2)_4-$ (combined at 2- and 3-positions)		
m: 2	A: $-CH_2-$	
Crystalline form: White powder	Form: Free	NMR (6)

---

## Reference Example 18

R <sup>5</sup> : $CH_3$ (2- and 3-positions)	m: 2	A: $-CH_2-$
Crystalline form: White powder	Form: Free	NMR (7)

---

120

Table 3

## Reference Example 19

$R^5$ : $\text{CH}_3$ (2- and 6-positions)	m: 2	A: $-\text{CH}_2-$
Crystalline form: Yellow powder	Form: Free	NMR (8)

## Reference Example 20

$R^5$ : $\text{CH}_3$ (3- and 5-positions)	m: 2	A: $-\text{CH}_2-$
Crystalline form: White powder	Form: Free	NMR (9)

## Reference Example 21

$R^5$ : $\text{CH}_3$ (3-position)	m: 1	A: $-\text{CH}_2-$
Crystalline form: White powder	Form: Free	NMR (10)

## Reference Example 22

$R^5$ : $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ (3-position)	m: 1	A: $-\text{CH}_2-$
M.p. 102-104°C	Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water	
Crystalline form: White powder	Form: Free	

## Reference Example 23

$R^5$ : $-(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}_3$ (3-position)	m: 1	A: $-\text{CH}_2-$
M.p. 63.5-66.0°C	Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water	
Crystalline form: White powder	Form: Free	

Table 4

## Reference Example 24

R<sup>5</sup>:  $-(CH_2)_3CH_3$  (3-position)

m: 1

A:  $-CH_2-$ 

M.p. 69.0-72.5°C

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Crystalline form: Colorless prisms

Form: Free

NMR (11)

## Reference Example 25

R<sup>5</sup>:  $-\underset{\text{CH}_3}{\overset{\text{CH}_3}{\text{CH}}}$  (3-position)

m: 1

A:  $-CH_2-$ 

Crystalline form: White solid

Form: Free

NMR (12)

## Reference Example 26

R<sup>5</sup>: Cl (3-position)

m: 1

A:  $-CH_2-$ 

Crystalline form: White powder

Form: Free

NMR (13)

## Reference Example 27

R<sup>5</sup>: F (3-position)

m: 1

A:  $-CH_2-$ 

Crystalline form: White powder

Form: Free

NMR (14)

## Reference Example 28

R<sup>5</sup>:  $CH_3O$  (3-position)

m: 1

A:  $-CH_2-$ 

Crystalline form: Beige powder

Form: Free

NMR (15)

## Reference Example 29

R<sup>5</sup>:  $C_2H_5O$  (3-position)

m: 1

A:  $-CH_2-$ 

Crystalline form: Beige powder

Form: Free

NMR (16)



<sup>1</sup>H-NMR spectrum (NMR (1) to NMR (17)) as described in Tables 1 to 4 are as follows:

NMR (1) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.19 (3H, s), 4.68 (2H, s), 6.83 (2H, dd, J=7.8Hz, J=13.2Hz), 7.12 (2H, t, J=7.8Hz), 12.96 (1H, s)

5 NMR (2) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.14 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 2.61 (2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 4.69 (2H, s), 6.78-6.95 (2H, m), 7.05-7.20 (2H, m), 12.97 (1H, s)

NMR (3) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 0.95 (3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.5-1.8 (2H, m), 2.65 (2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 4.65 (2H, s), 6.73 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 6.9-7.05 (1H, m), 7.15 (2H, t, J=7.2Hz), 9.4-10.1 (1H, m)

10 NMR (4) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 4.77 (2H, s), 6.88-7.30 (4H, m), 13.09 (1H, s)

NMR (5) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 4.76 (2H, s), 6.89 (1H, dd, J=1.5Hz, J=8.0Hz), 6.99 (1H, dt, J=1.5Hz, J=7.6Hz), 7.23 (1H, dt, J=1.5Hz, J=7.6Hz), 7.41 (1H, dd, J=1.5Hz, J=8.0Hz), 8.16 (1H, br)

15 NMR (6) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.6-1.85 (4H, m), 2.55-2.75 (4H, m), 4.63 (2H, s), 6.57 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 6.65 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 6.9-7.05 (1H, m), 12.94 (1H, br)

NMR (7) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.10 (3H, s), 2.20 (3H, s), 4.63 (2H, s), 6.64 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 6.75 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 6.95-7.1 (1H, m), 12.9 (1H, br)

NMR (8) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.22 (6H, s), 4.35 (2H, s), 6.87-7.06 (3H, m), 12.87 (1H, s)

20 NMR (9) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.22 (6H, s), 4.48 (2H, s), 6.48 (2H, s), 6.60 (1H, s)

NMR (10) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.26 (3H, s), 4.62 (2H, s), 6.60-6.80 (3H, m), 7.11-7.18 (1H, m)

123

NMR (11) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 0.85 (3H, t,  $J=7.2$ Hz), 1.17-1.38 (2H, m),  
1.45-1.60 (2H, m), 2.49-2.57 (2H, m), 4.63 (2H, s), 6.66-6.79 (3H, m), 7.13-7.21  
(1H, m), 13.00 (1H, br)

NMR (12) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.22 (6H, d,  $J=6.9$ Hz), 2.77-3.00 (1H, m), 4.68  
5 (2H, s), 6.66-6.76 (1H, m), 6.81-6.95 (2H, m), 7.17-7.29 (1H, m), 8.65 (1H, brs)

NMR (13) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 4.69 (2H, s), 6.79-6.85 (1H, m), 6.85-7.04 (2H,  
m), 7.19-7.28 (1H, m), 8.00 (1H, br)

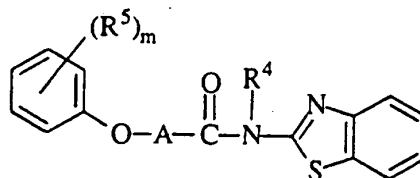
NMR (14) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 4.69 (2H, s), 6.62-6.79 (3H, m), 7.20-7.32 (1H,  
m), 9.07 (1H, br)

10 NMR (15) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 3.79 (3H, s), 4.67 (2H, s), 6.47-6.61 (3H, m),  
7.16-7.26 (1H, m), 9.12 (1H, br)

NMR (16) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.40 (3H, t,  $J=7.0$ Hz), 4.01 (2H, q,  $J=7.0$ Hz),  
4.66 (2H, s), 6.45-6.62 (3H, m), 7.13-7.25 (1H, m), 8.34 (1H, br)

Using the suitable starting compounds, the compounds as listed in Tables  
15 5-9 are obtained in the same manner as Reference Example 2.

Table 5



## Reference Example 30

R <sup>5</sup> : CH <sub>3</sub> (2-position)	m: 1	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	R <sup>4</sup> : H
Crystalline form: Yellow powder		Form: Free	NMR (1)

## Reference Example 31

R <sup>5</sup> : C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> (2-position)	m: 1	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	R <sup>4</sup> : H
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder		Form: Free	NMR (2)

## Reference Example 32

R <sup>5</sup> : -(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>3</sub> (2-position)	m: 1	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	R <sup>4</sup> : H
Crystalline form: Yellow powder		Form: Free	NMR (3)

## Reference Example 33

R <sup>5</sup> : -(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>3</sub> (2-position)	m: 1	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	R <sup>4</sup> : H
Crystalline form: Yellow solid		Form: Free	NMR (4)

Table 6

## Reference Example 34

R <sup>5</sup> : H (2-position)	m: 1	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	R <sup>4</sup> : H
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder		Form: Free	NMR (5)

## Reference Example 35

R <sup>5</sup> : -(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>3</sub> (2-position)	m: 1	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	R <sup>4</sup> : H
Crystalline form: Yellow powder		Form: Free	NMR (6)
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-n-hexane			

## Reference Example 36

R <sup>5</sup> : F (2-position)	m: 1	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	R <sup>4</sup> : H
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder		Form: Free	NMR (7)

## Reference Example 37

R <sup>5</sup> : Cl (2-position)	m: 1	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	R <sup>4</sup> : H
Crystalline form: Yellow powder		Form: Free	NMR (8)

## Reference Example 38

R <sup>5</sup> : -(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>4</sub> - (combined at 2- and 3-positions)			
m: 2	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	R <sup>4</sup> : H	
Crystalline form: White powder		Form: Free	NMR (9)

Table 7

---

Reference Example 39R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub> (2- and 3-positions)

m: 2

A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-R<sup>4</sup>: H

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Form: Free

NMR (10)

---

Reference Example 40R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub> (2- and 6-positions)

m: 2

A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-R<sup>4</sup>: H

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Form: Free

NMR (11)

---

Reference Example 41R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub> (3- and 5-positions)

m: 2

A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-R<sup>4</sup>: H

Crystalline form: White powder

Form: Free

NMR (12)

---

Reference Example 42R<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>Cl (2-position)

m: 1

A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-R<sup>4</sup>: H

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Form: Free

NMR (13)

---

Reference Example 43R<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>Cl (2-position)

m: 1

A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-R<sup>4</sup>: H

Crystalline form: White powder

Form: Free

NMR (14)

Table 8

## Reference Example 44

$R^5$ :  $\text{CH}_3$  (3-position)      m: 1    A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$        $R^4$ : H  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-n-hexane  
 Crystalline form: Pale brown powder      Form: Free      NMR (15)

## Reference Example 45

$R^5$ :  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$  (3-position)      m: 1    A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$        $R^4$ : H  
 Crystalline form: Beige needles      Form: Free      NMR (16)

## Reference Example 46

$R^5$ :  $-(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}_3$  (3-position)      m: 1    A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$        $R^4$ : H  
 M.p. 110.0-111.0°C      Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-n-hexane  
 Crystalline form: Pale yellow needles      Form: Free

## Reference Example 47

$R^5$ :  $-(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}_3$  (3-position)      m: 1    A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$        $R^4$ : H  
 M.p. 110.5-111.0°C      Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-n-hexane  
 Crystalline form: Pale yellow needles      Form: Free

## Reference Example 48

$R^5$ :  $-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$  (3-position)      m: 1    A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$        $R^4$ : H  
 M.p. 93.7-94.0°C      Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-n-hexane  
 Crystalline form: Pink powder      Form: Free

Table 9

## Reference Example 49

R <sup>5</sup> : Cl (3-position)	m: 1	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	R <sup>4</sup> : H
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder		Form: Free	NMR (17)

## Reference Example 50

R <sup>5</sup> : F (3-position)	m: 1	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	R <sup>4</sup> : H
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder		Form: Free	NMR (18)

## Reference Example 51

R <sup>5</sup> : CH <sub>3</sub> O (3-position)	m: 1	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	R <sup>4</sup> : H
Crystalline form: Beige powder		Form: Free	NMR (19)

## Reference Example 52

R <sup>5</sup> : C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> O (3-position)	m: 1	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	R <sup>4</sup> : H
Crystalline form: Brown powder		Form: Free	NMR (20)

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR spectrum (NMR (1) to NMR (20)) as described in Tables 5 to 9 are as follows:

NMR (1) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.45 (3H, s), 4.95 (2H, s), 6.81-6.95 (2H, m), 7.10-7.22 (2H, m), 7.32 (1H, t, J=6.1Hz), 7.45 (1H, t, J=6.4Hz), 7.77 (1H, d, J=6.4Hz), 7.99 (1H, d, J=6.3Hz), 12.60 (1H, s)

NMR (2) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.18 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 2.67 (2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 4.96 (2H, s), 6.89 (2H, dd, J=8.0Hz, J=12.5Hz), 7.09-7.23 (2H, m), 7.28-7.38 (1H, m), 7.40-7.52 (1H, m), 7.77 (1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 12.58 (1H, s)

NMR (3) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.03 (3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.6-1.8 (2H, m), 2.73 (2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 4.76 (2H, s), 6.84 (1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.01-7.50 (5H, m), 7.79-7.86 (2H, m), 9.6-9.8 (1H, s)

5 NMR (4) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 0.95 (3H, t J=7.2Hz), 1.37-1.55 (2H, m), 1.59-1.74 (2H, m), 2.71 (2H, d, J=7.2Hz), 4.77 (2H, s), 6.82 (1H, d, J=8.1Hz), 6.98-7.06 (1H, m), 7.16-7.26 (2H, m), 7.30-7.38 (1H, m), 7.41-7.50 (1H, m), 7.79-7.86 (2H, m), 9.78 (1H, brs)

NMR (5) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 4.76 (2H, s), 6.95-7.11 (3H, m), 7.26-7.47 (4H, m), 7.79-7.87 (2H, m), 9.92 (1H, br)

10 NMR (6) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 0.92 (3H, t, J=6.8Hz), 1.30-1.55 (4H, m), 1.55-1.90 (2H, m), 2.71 (2H, t, J=7.6Hz), 4.77 (2H, s), 6.82 (1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 6.98-7.05 (1H, m), 7.17-7.26 (2H, m), 7.31-7.38 (1H, m), 7.42-7.50 (1H, m), 7.79-7.87 (2H, m), 9.73 (1H, brs)

15 NMR (7) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 5.03 (2H, s), 6.90-7.07 (1H, m), 7.07-7.20 (2H, m), 7.20-7.50 (2H, m), 7.45 (1H, dt, J=1.3Hz, J=7.3Hz), 7.77 (1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.99 (1H, dd, J=0.7Hz, J=7.7Hz), 12.63 (1H, s)

NMR (8) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 4.80 (2H, s), 6.95-7.10 (2H, m), 7.23-7.49 (4H, m), 7.85 (2H, dd, J=2.0Hz, J=6.6Hz), 9.97 (1H, br)

20 NMR (9) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.75-2.0 (4H, m), 2.75-2.9 (4H, m), 4.74 (2H, s), 6.63 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 6.82 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.05-7.15 (1H, m), 7.3-7.5 (2H, m), 7.75-7.9 (2H, m), 9.73 (1H, br)

NMR (10) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 2.29 (3H, s), 2.32 (3H, s), 4.75 (2H, s), 6.70 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 6.90 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.05-7.15 (1H, m), 7.3-7.5 (2H, m), 7.75-7.9 (2H,



m), 9.76 (1H, br)

NMR (11) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 2.27 (6H, s), 4.63 (2H, s), 6.90-7.12 (3H, s), 7.29-7.40 (1H, m), 7.42-7.52 (1H, s), 7.76 (1H, d,  $J=7.8$ Hz), 8.02 (1H, d,  $J=7.4$  Hz), 12.49 (1H, s)

5 NMR (12) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 2.32 (6H, s), 4.73 (2H, s), 6.61 (2H, s), 6.72 (1H, s), 7.3-7.55 (2H, m), 7.8-7.95 (2H, m), 9.86 (1H, br)

NMR (13) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 2.18 (2H, tt,  $J=7.0$ Hz,  $J=8.0$ Hz), 2.96 (2H, t,  $J=7.0$ Hz), 3.63 (2H, t,  $J=8.0$ Hz), 4.80 (2H, s), 6.87 (1H, d,  $J=8.5$ Hz), 7.04 (1H, t,  $J=7.2$ Hz), 7.15-7.29 (2H, m), 7.34 (1H, t,  $J=8.9$ Hz), 7.43 (1H, t,  $J=8.0$ Hz), 7.79-7.87 (2H, m), 9.73 (1H, br)

10 NMR (14) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 3.22 (2H, t,  $J=7.0$ Hz), 3.82 (2H, t,  $J=7.0$ Hz), 4.81 (2H, s), 6.86 (1H, d,  $J=8.2$ Hz), 7.05 (1H, t,  $J=7.2$ Hz), 7.15-7.52 (4H, m), 7.81 (2H, t,  $J=8.4$ Hz), 9.78 (1H, br)

NMR (15) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 2.37 (3H, s), 4.74 (2H, s), 6.74-6.85 (2H, m), 6.85 (1H, d,  $J=7.3$ Hz), 7.17-7.30 (1H, m), 7.30-7.40 (1H, m), 7.40-7.54 (1H, m), 7.77-7.90 (2H, m), 9.88 (1H, brs)

NMR (16) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.25 (3H, t,  $J=7.6$ Hz), 2.65 (2H, q,  $J=7.6$ Hz), 4.74 (2H, s), 6.74-6.84 (2H, m), 6.88-6.95 (1H, m), 7.21-7.50 (3H, m), 7.79-7.86 (2H, m), 9.94 (1H, br)

20 NMR (17) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 4.73 (2H, s), 6.75-6.84 (1H, m), 6.84-6.98 (1H, m), 7.01-7.08 (1H, m), 7.21-7.46 (3H, m), 7.82 (2H, t,  $J=8.4$ Hz), 10.09 (1H, br)

NMR (18) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 4.94 (2H, s), 6.75-6.92 (3H, m), 7.27-7.47 (3H, m), 7.75 (1H, d,  $J=8.0$ Hz), 7.97 (1H, d,  $J=8.0$ Hz)

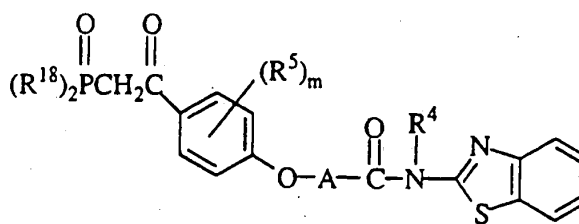
131

NMR (19) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 3.81 (3H, s), 4.73 (2H, s), 6.53-6.65 (3H, m),  
7.20-7.51 (3H, m), 7.79-7.86 (2H, m), 9.89 (1H, br)

NMR (20) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.43 (3H, t, J=7.0Hz), 4.04 (2H, q, J=7.0Hz),  
4.73 (2H, s), 6.50-6.66 (3H, m), 7.18-7.51 (3H, m), 7.78-7.90 (2H, m), 9.87 (1H, br)

5        Using the suitable starting compounds, the compounds as listed in Table  
10 are obtained in the same manner as in Reference Example 3.

Table 10



## Reference Example 53

$R^5$ :  $C_2H_5O$  (2-position)     $m$ : 1     $A$ :  $-CH_2-$      $R^4$ : H     $R^{18}$ :  $CH_3O$   
 Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder    Form: Free    NMR (1)

## Reference Example 54

$R^5$ :  $-OCH(CH_3)_2$  (3-position)     $m$ : 1     $A$ :  $-CH_2-$   
 $R^4$ : H     $R^{18}$ :  $CH_3O$   
 Crystalline form: White powder    Form: Free    NMR (2)

## Reference Example 55

$R^5$ :  $CF_3CH_2O$  (3-position)     $m$ : 1     $A$ :  $-CH_2-$   
 $R^4$ : H     $R^{18}$ :  $CH_3O$   
 Crystalline form: White powder    Form: Free    NMR (3)

## Reference Example 56

$R^5$ :  $CF_3$  (2-position)     $m$ : 1     $A$ :  $-CH_2-$      $R^4$ : H     $R^{18}$ :  $CH_3O$   
 Crystalline form: White powder    Form: Free    NMR (4)

## Reference Example 57

$R^5$ :  $CH_3O$  (3-position)     $m$ : 1     $A$ :  $-CH_2-$      $R^4$ : H     $R^{18}$ :  $CH_3O$   
 Crystalline form: White powder    Form: Free    NMR (5)

$^1\text{H}$ -NMR spectrum (NMR (1) to NMR (5)) as described in Table 10 are as follows:

NMR (1) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.58 (3H, t,  $J=7.0\text{Hz}$ ), 3.61 (2H, d,  $J=22.8\text{Hz}$ ),  
3.76 (3H, s), 3.82 (3H, s), 4.25 (2H, q,  $J=7.0\text{Hz}$ ), 4.85 (2H, s), 7.04 (1H, d,  
5  $J=8.6\text{Hz}$ ), 7.33 (1H, t,  $J=7.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.46 (1H, t,  $J=7.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.60-7.65 (2H, m), 7.79-  
7.86 (2H, m), 10.28 (1H, br)

NMR (2) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.47 (6H, d,  $J=6.0\text{Hz}$ ), 3.74 (3H, s), 3.79 (3H, s),  
3.85 (2H, d,  $J=20.2\text{Hz}$ ), 4.69 (1H, sept,  $J=6.0\text{Hz}$ ), 4.79 (2H, s), 6.51-6.56 (2H, m),  
7.36 (1H, t,  $J=7.0\text{Hz}$ ), 7.49 (1H, t,  $J=7.0\text{Hz}$ ), 7.79-7.88 (3H, m), 9.98 (1H, br)

10 NMR (3) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 3.76 (2H, d,  $J=21.3\text{Hz}$ ), 3.75 (3H, s), 3.80 (3H, s),  
4.40 (2H, q,  $J=7.9\text{Hz}$ ), 4.79 (2H, s), 6.44 (1H, d,  $J=2.2\text{Hz}$ ), 6.60 (1H, dd,  $J=2.2\text{Hz}$ ,  
 $J=8.8\text{Hz}$ ), 7.34 (1H, dt,  $J=1.3\text{Hz}$ ,  $J=7.3\text{Hz}$ ), 7.45 (1H, dt,  $J=1.3\text{Hz}$ ,  $J=7.3\text{Hz}$ ), 7.75-  
7.86 (3H, m)

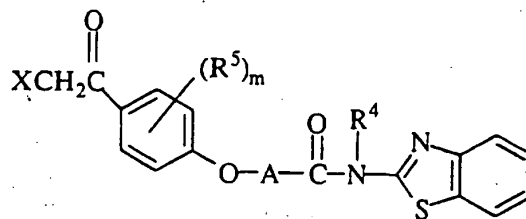
NMR (4) ( $\text{DMSO}-d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 3.62 (3H, s), 3.68 (3H, s), 3.93 (2H, d,  
15  $J=22.5\text{Hz}$ ), 5.27 (2H, s), 7.3-7.55 (3H, m), 7.78 (1H, d,  $J=8\text{Hz}$ ), 7.98 (1H, d,  
 $J=8\text{Hz}$ ), 8.2-8.35 (2H, m), 12.68 (1H, br)

NMR (5) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 3.74 (3H, s), 3.80 (3H, s), 3.81 (2H, d,  $J=21\text{Hz}$ ),  
3.95 (3H, s), 4.81 (2H, s), 6.5-6.65 (2H, m), 7.25-7.55 (2H, m), 7.75-7.95 (3H, m),  
10.01 (1H, s)

20 Using the suitable starting compounds, the compounds as listed in Tables  
11-13 are obtained in the same manner as in Reference Example 4.

134

Table 11



## Reference Example 58

$R^5$ : H	m: 1	A: $-\text{CH}_2-$	$R^4$ : H	X: Br
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder		Form: Free		NMR (1)

## Reference Example 59

$R^5$ : $\text{CH}_3$ (2-position)	m: 1	A: $-\text{CH}_2-$	$R^4$ : H	X: Cl
Crystalline form: Beige powder		Form: Free		NMR (2)

## Reference Example 60

$R^5$ : $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ (2-position)	m: 1	A: $-\text{CH}_2-$	$R^4$ : H	X: Cl
Crystalline form: Beige powder		Form: Free		NMR (3)

## Reference Example 61

$R^5$ : $-(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}_3$ (2-position)	m: 1	A: $-\text{CH}_2-$		
$R^4$ : H	X: Cl			
Crystalline form: White powder		Form: Free		NMR (4)

Table 12

---

Reference Example 62R<sup>5</sup>: Cl (2-position)      m: 1      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-      R<sup>4</sup>: H      X: Cl

M.p. 199-201°C

Solvent for recrystallization: 1,2-Dichloroethane-n-hexane

Crystalline form: White powder      Form: Free

---

Reference Example 63R<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>Cl (2-position)      m: 1      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-R<sup>4</sup>: H      X: Br

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder      Form: Free      NMR (5)

---

Reference Example 64R<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>Cl (2-position)      m: 1      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-R<sup>4</sup>: H      X: Br

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder      Form: Free      NMR (6)

---

Reference Example 65R<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>Cl (2-position)      m: 1      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-R<sup>4</sup>: H      X: Cl

M.p. 146.5-149°C      Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-n-hexane

Crystalline form: White powder      Form: Free

Table 13

## Reference Example 66

$R^5$ :  $-(CH_2)_2CO_2C_2H_5$  (2-position)    m: 1    A:  $-CH_2-$

$R^4$ : H    X: Cl

M.p. 131.0-133.0°C

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-n-hexane

Crystalline form: White powder    Form: Free

## Reference Example 67

$R^5$ :  $-(CH_2)_2CO_2CH_3$  (2-position)    m: 1    A:  $-CH_2-$

$R^4$ : H    X: Cl

Crystalline form: White powder    Form: Free    NMR (7)

## Reference Example 68

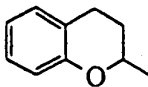
$R^5$ :  $\begin{array}{c} OCOCH_3 \\ | \\ -CH_2CHCH_2OCOCH_3 \end{array}$  (2-position)    m: 1    A:  $-CH_2-$

$R^4$ : H    X: Cl

Crystalline form: White powder    Form: Free    NMR (8)

## Reference Example 69

$R^5$  and A combine to form:



m: 1     $R^4$ : H    X: Cl

M.p. 206-208°C

Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-ethanol

Crystalline form: White powder    Form: Free

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR spectrum (NMR (1) to NMR (8)) as described in Tables 11-13 are as follows:

NMR (1) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 4.41 (2H, s), 4.84 (2H, s), 7.07 (2H, d, J=9.0Hz),  
7.36 (1H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.45 (1H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.88 (2H, t, J=8.5Hz), 8.03 (2H, d,  
5 J=9.0Hz)

NMR (2) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.30 (3H, s), 5.11 (4H, s), 7.00-7.10 (1H, m),  
7.28-7.40 (1H, m), 7.40-7.55 (1H, m), 7.70-7.93 (3H, m), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7.1Hz),  
12.68 (1H, s)

NMR (3) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.21 (3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 2.72 (2H, q, J=7.4Hz),  
10 5.12, 5.13 (4H, each s), 7.02 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.31 (1H, dt, J=1.2Hz, J=7.3Hz),  
7.45 (1H, dt, J=1.3Hz, J=7.3Hz), 7.75-7.92 (3H, m), 7.95-8.00 (1H, m), 12.68 (1H,  
brs)

NMR (4) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 0.97 (3H, t, J=7.2Hz), 1.39-1.59 (2H, m), 1.59-  
1.86 (2H, m), 2.77 (2H, t, J=7.6Hz), 4.67 (2H, s), 4.86 (2H, s), 6.89 (1H, d,  
15 J=8.6Hz), 7.32-7.39 (1H, m), 7.43-7.51 (1H, m), 7.79-7.87 (4H, m), 9.10-10.01  
(1H, brs)

NMR (5) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 3.16 (2H, t, J=6.9Hz), 3.92 (2H, t, J=6.9Hz), 4.83  
(2H, s), 5.13 (2H, s), 7.07 (1H, d, J=9.4Hz), 7.31 (1H, t, J=6.9Hz), 7.45 (1H, t,  
J=8.3Hz), 7.76 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.82-8.06 (3H, m)

20 NMR (6) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 2.17 (2H, tt, J=6.1Hz, J=7.5Hz), 3.03 (2H, t,  
J=7.5Hz), 3.64 (2H, t, J=6.1Hz), 4.40 (2H, s), 4.88 (2H, s), 6.95 (1H, d, J=9.3Hz),  
7.35 (1H, t, J=6.8Hz), 7.47 (1H, t, J=9.4Hz), 7.80-7.94 (4H, m), 9.68 (1H, br)

NMR (7) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 2.75 (2H, t, J=7.0Hz), 3.13 (2H, t, J=7.0Hz), 3.74

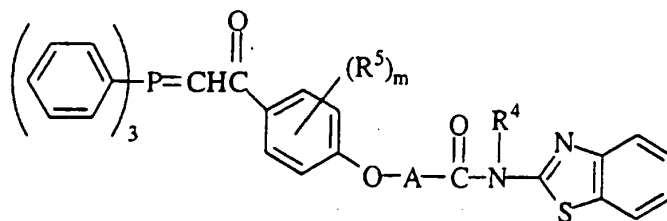


(3H, s), 4.65 (2H, s), 4.89 (2H, s), 6.89 (1H, d,  $J=8.4\text{Hz}$ ), 7.30-7.37 (1H, m), 7.41-7.48 (1H, m), 7.78-7.89 (4H, m), 9.00-11.30 (1H, brs)

NMR (8) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta\text{ppm}$ : 2.00 (3H, s), 2.09 (3H, s), 3.08 (1H, dd,  $J=8\text{Hz}$ ,  $J=14\text{Hz}$ ), 3.23 (1H, dd,  $J=6\text{Hz}$ ,  $J=14\text{Hz}$ ), 4.14 (1H, dd,  $J=5.5\text{Hz}$ ,  $J=12\text{Hz}$ ), 4.33  
5 (1H, dd,  $J=3\text{Hz}$ ,  $J=12\text{Hz}$ ), 4.64 (2H, s), 4.5 (2H, s), 5.49 (1H, m), 6.90 (1H, d,  $J=9\text{Hz}$ ), 7.3-8.0 (6H, m), 8.79 (1H, br)

Using the suitable starting compounds, the compounds as listed in Tables 14-22 are obtained in the same manner as in Reference Example 5 or 6.

Table 14



## Reference Example 70

R<sup>5</sup>: H

m: 1

A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-R<sup>4</sup>: H

Crystalline form: Pale yellow amorphous

Form: Free

NMR (1)

## Reference Example 71

R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub> (2-position)

m: 1

A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-R<sup>4</sup>: H

Crystalline form: Pale yellow amorphous

Form: Free

NMR (2)

## Reference Example 72

R<sup>5</sup>: C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub> (2-position)

m: 1

A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-R<sup>4</sup>: H

Crystalline form: White powder

Form: Free

NMR (3)

## Reference Example 73

R<sup>5</sup>:  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ | \\ -\text{CH} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$  (3-position)

m: 1

A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-R<sup>4</sup>: H

Crystalline form: White powder

Form: Free

NMR (4)

Table 15

---

Reference Example 74

$R^5$ : $-(CH_2)_3CH_3$ (2-position)	m: 1	A: $-CH_2-$	$R^4$ : H
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder		Form: Free	NMR (5)

---

## Reference Example 75

$R^5$ : Cl (2-position)	m: 1	A: $-CH_2-$	$R^4$ : H
Crystalline form: Pale yellow amorphous		Form: Free	NMR (6)

---

## Reference Example 76

$R^5$ : F (2-position)	m: 1	A: $-CH_2-$	$R^4$ : H
Crystalline form: White powder		Form: Free	NMR (7)

---

## Reference Example 77

$R^5$ : $-(CH_2)_2Cl$ (2-position)	m: 1	A: $-CH_2-$	$R^4$ : H
Crystalline form: White powder		Form: Free	NMR (8)

---

## Reference Example 78

$R^5$ : $-(CH_2)_4Cl$ (2-position)	m: 1	A: $-CH_2-$	$R^4$ : H
Crystalline form: White needles		Form: Free	NMR (9)

---

Table 16

## Reference Example 79

R<sup>5</sup>:  $-(CH_2)_2CO_2C_2H_5$  (2-position)

m: 1

A:  $-CH_2-$  R<sup>4</sup>: H

Crystalline form: White powder

Form: Free NMR (10)

## Reference Example 80

R<sup>5</sup>:  $\begin{array}{c} OCOCH_3 \\ | \\ -CH_2CHCH_2OCOCH_3 \end{array}$  (2-position)

m: 1

A:  $-CH_2-$  R<sup>4</sup>: H

Crystalline form: White powder

Form: Free NMR (11)

## Reference Example 81

R<sup>5</sup>:  $-(CH_2)_2-N \begin{array}{c} \diagup \diagdown \\ \diagdown \diagup \end{array} O$  (2-position)

m: 1

A:  $-CH_2-$  R<sup>4</sup>: H

Crystalline form: White powder

Form: Free NMR (12)

## Reference Example 82

R<sup>5</sup>:  $-(CH_2)_2-N \begin{array}{c} \diagup \diagdown \\ \diagdown \diagup \end{array} N-CH_3$  (2-position)

m: 1

A:  $-CH_2-$  R<sup>4</sup>: H

Crystalline form: Pale yellow amorphous

Form: Free NMR (13)

Table 17


## Reference Example 83

$R^5$ :  $-(CH_2)_3N(C_2H_5)_2$  (2-position) m: 1

A:  $-CH_2-$   $R^4$ : H

Crystalline form: White powder Form: Free NMR (14)


## Reference Example 84

$R^5$ :  $-(CH_2)_3-N$   (2-position) m: 1

A:  $-CH_2-$   $R^4$ : H

Crystalline form: White powder Form: Free NMR (15)

## Reference Example 85

$R^5$ :  $-(CH_2)_3-N$    $N-CH_3$  (2-position) m: 1

A:  $-CH_2-$   $R^4$ : H

Crystalline form: White powder Form: Free NMR (16)

## Reference Example 86

$R^5$ :  $-(CH_2)_3-N$    $N-COCH_3$  (2-position) m: 1

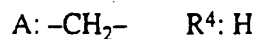
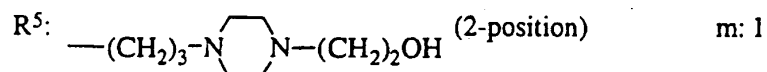
A:  $-CH_2-$   $R^4$ : H

M.p. 153-155°C Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate

Crystalline form: White powder Form: Free

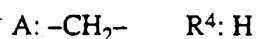
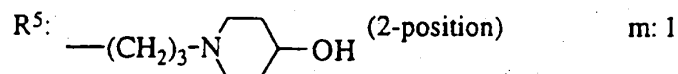
Table 18

## Reference Example 87



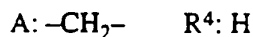
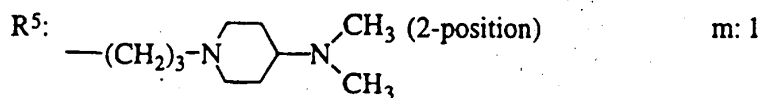
Crystalline form: White amorphous      Form: Free      NMR (17)

## Reference Example 88



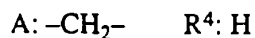
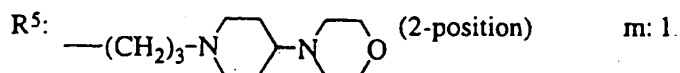
Crystalline form: White amorphous      Form: Free      NMR (18)

## Reference Example 89



Crystalline form: Colorless amorphous      Form: Free      NMR (19)

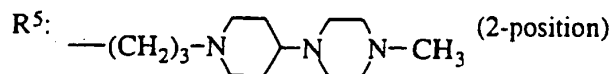
## Reference Example 90



Crystalline form: Colorless amorphous      Form: Free      NMR (20)

Table 19

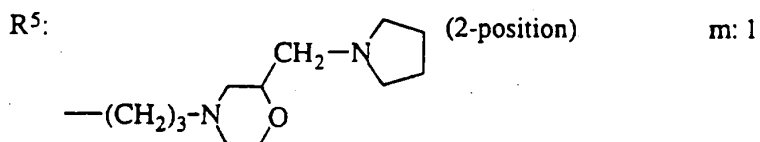
## Reference Example 91



m: 1      A:  $\text{---CH}_2\text{---}$        $R^4: \text{H}$

Crystalline form: Yellow amorphous      Form: Free      NMR (21)

## Reference Example 92

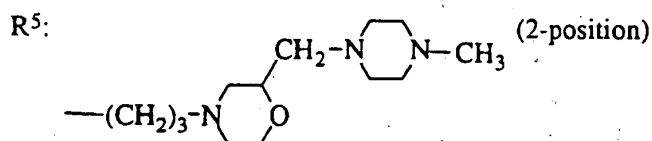


m: 1

A:  $\text{---CH}_2\text{---}$        $R^4: \text{H}$

Crystalline form: Colorless amorphous      Form: Free      NMR (22)

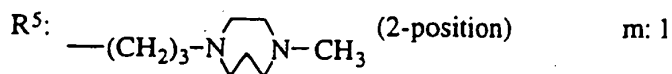
## Reference Example 93



m: 1      A:  $\text{---CH}_2\text{---}$        $R^4: \text{H}$

Crystalline form: Yellow amorphous      Form: Free      NMR (23)

## Reference Example 94



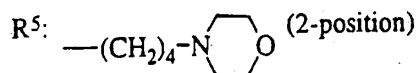
m: 1

A:  $\text{---CH}_2\text{---}$        $R^4: \text{H}$

Crystalline form: Yellow amorphous      Form: Free      NMR (24)

Table 20

## Reference Example 95

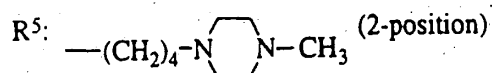


m: 1      A:  $\text{---CH}_2\text{---}$        $R^4: \text{H}$

Crystalline form: White powder

Form: Free      NMR (25)

## Reference Example 96

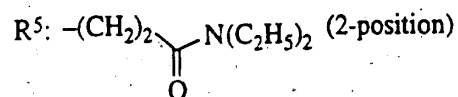


m: 1      A:  $\text{---CH}_2\text{---}$        $R^4: \text{H}$

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: Free      NMR (26)

## Reference Example 97

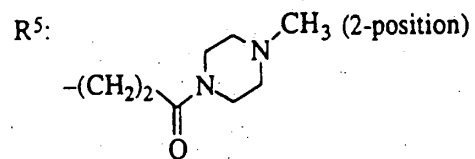


m: 1      A:  $\text{---CH}_2\text{---}$        $R^4: \text{H}$

Crystalline form: White amorphous

Form: Free      NMR (27)

## Reference Example 98



m: 1      A:  $\text{---CH}_2\text{---}$        $R^4: \text{H}$

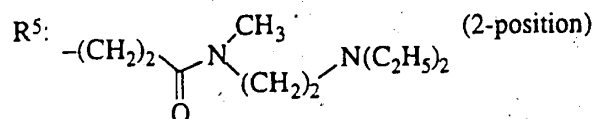
Crystalline form: White amorphous

Form: Free      NMR (28)



Table 21

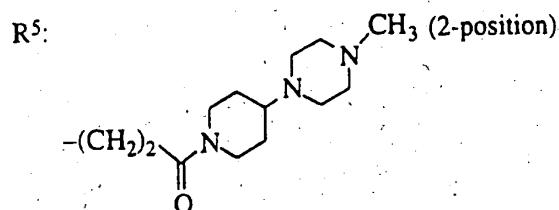
## Reference Example 99



m: 1      A:  $\text{---CH}_2\text{---}$       R<sup>4</sup>: H

Crystalline form: White amorphous      Form: Free      NMR (29)

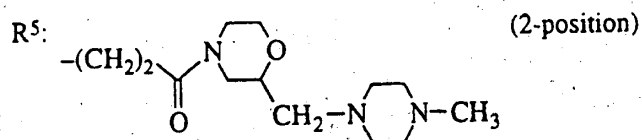
## Reference Example 100



m: 1      A:  $\text{---CH}_2\text{---}$       R<sup>4</sup>: H

Crystalline form: White amorphous      Form: Free      NMR (30)

## Reference Example 101



m: 1      A:  $\text{---CH}_2\text{---}$       R<sup>4</sup>: H

Crystalline form: Yellow amorphous      Form: Free      NMR (31)

## Reference Example 102

R<sup>5</sup>:  $\text{---COOCH}_3$  (2-position)      m: 1      A:  $\text{---CH}_2\text{---}$       R<sup>4</sup>: H

Crystalline form: Pale yellow amorphous      Form: Free      NMR (32)

147

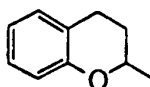
Table 22

---

Reference Example 103 $R^5$ :  $-(CH_2)_2CONH-$  (combined at 2- and 3-positions)m: 2      A:  $-CH_2-$        $R^4$ : H

Crystalline form: Yellow amorphous      Form: Free      NMR (33)

---

Reference Example 104 $R^5$  and A combine to form:m: 1       $R^4$ : H

Crystalline form: White powder      Form: Free      NMR (35)

$^1H$ -NMR spectrum (NMR (1) to NMR (35)) as described in Tables 14-22 are as follows:

NMR (1) ( $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 4.37 (1H, d,  $J=24Hz$ ), 4.77 (2H, s), 6.91 (2H, d,  $J=8.8Hz$ ), 7.16 (1H, t,  $J=7.3Hz$ ), 7.32 (1H, t,  $J=7.3Hz$ ), 7.38-7.82 (17H, m), 7.89 (2H, d,  $J=8.8Hz$ )

NMR (2) ( $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 2.35 (3H, s), 4.41 (1H, brs), 4.70 (2H, s), 6.70 (1H, d,  $J=8.2Hz$ ), 7.20-8.00 (21H, m)

NMR (3) ( $DMSO-d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.19 (3H, t,  $J=7.4Hz$ ), 2.69 (2H, q,  $J=7.4Hz$ ), 4.43 (1H, d,  $J=2.5Hz$ ), 5.00 (2H, s), 6.83 (1H, d,  $J=8.9Hz$ ), 7.25-7.38 (1H, m), 7.38-7.85 (19H, m), 7.98 (1H, d,  $J=7.1Hz$ ), 12.65 (1H, brs)

NMR (4) ( $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.32 (6H, d,  $J=7Hz$ ), 3.42 (1H, sept,  $J=7Hz$ ), 4.2-4.6 (1H, m), 4.73 (2H, s), 7.25-8.0 (21H, m), 10.01 (1H, br)

NMR (5) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 0.86 (3H, t, J=7.2Hz), 1.31-1.51 (2H, m), 1.51-1.72 (2H, m), 2.65-2.72 (2H, m), 3.76 (3H, s), 4.34 (1H, br-d, J=24.7Hz), 4.66 (2H, s), 5.98 (1H, br-s), 6.66 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 6.99-7.10 (1H, m), 7.19-7.31 (1H, m), 7.38-7.60 (11H, m), 7.60-7.87 (8H, m)

5 NMR (6) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 4.52 (1H, d, J=23Hz), 5.12 (2H, s), 7.07 (1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.31 (1H, td, J=7.6Hz, J=1.0Hz), 7.45 (1H, td, J=7.6Hz, J=1.4Hz), 7.45-8.15 (19H, m), 12.68 (1H, s)

NMR (7) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 4.34 (1H, d, J=22Hz), 4.79 (2H, s), 6.97 (1H, t, J=8.4Hz), 7.30-7.38 (2H, m), 7.38-7.92 (19H, m), 9.97 (1H, br)

10 NMR (8) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 3.16 (2H, t, J=7.0Hz), 3.92 (2H, t, J=7.0Hz), 4.83 (2H, s), 5.13 (2H, s), 7.07 (1H, d, J=9.4Hz), 7.34 (1H, t, J=6.5Hz), 7.44 (1H, t, J=6.5Hz), 7.60-8.12 (19H, m), 12.70 (1H, br)

NMR (9) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.67-1.90 (4H, m), 2.64-2.82 (2H, m), 3.68 (1H, bt, J=6.0Hz), 5.19 (2H, s), 6.12 (2H, d, J=14.0Hz), 7.10 (1H, d, J=10.0Hz), 7.29-7.41 (1H, m), 7.41-7.52 (1H, m), 7.69-7.95 (17H, m), 7.95-8.06 (2H, m), 12.74 (1H, br-s)

15 NMR (10) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.10 (3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.62 (2H, t, J=8.0Hz), 2.90 (2H, t, J=8.0Hz), 4.00 (2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 4.33 (1H, d, J=30.0Hz), 5.01 (2H, s), 6.82 (1H, d, J=14.0Hz), 7.29-7.38 (1H, m), 7.40-7.50 (1H, m), 7.50-7.80 (18H, m), 8.00-8.02 (1H, d, J=4.0Hz), 12.61 (1H, brs)

20 NMR (11) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 2.00 (3H, s), 2.05 (3H, s), 3.0-3.15 (2H, m), 4.0-4.35 (2H, m), 4.93, 5.05 (2H, ABq, J=16Hz), 5.40 (1H, m), 6.1-6.6 (2H, br), 6.98 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.2-8.5 (2H, m)

NMR (12) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 2.54-2.78 (6H, m), 2.87-3.12 (2H, m), 3.69-3.90

(4H, m), 4.36 (1H, d, J=24.0Hz), 4.78 (2H, s), 6.77 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.27-7.88 (21H, m)

150

s), 6.71 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.02-7.94 (21H, m)

NMR (21) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.41-2.03 (8H, m), 2.05-2.80 (13H, m), 2.77 (2H, t, J=7.6Hz), 2.88-3.07 (2H, m), 4.73 (2H, s), 6.75 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.32 (1H, t, J=6.4Hz), 7.40-7.90 (20H, m)

5 NMR (22) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.62-2.23 (8H, m), 2.29-2.97 (12H, m), 3.48-3.93 (3H, m), 4.22-4.57 (1H, br), 4.69 (2H, s), 6.70 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.22-8.04 (21H, m)

NMR (23) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.69-2.00 (3H, m), 2.00-2.62 (16H, m), 2.62-2.87 (4H, m), 3.50-3.92 (3H, m), 4.37 (1H, d, J=26.8Hz), 4.75 (2H, s), 6.77 (1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.28-7.92 (21H, m)

10

NMR (24) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.82-2.22 (4H, m), 2.50 (3H, s), 2.54-3.12 (12H, m), 4.73 (2H, s), 6.71 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.29-7.88 (21H, m)

NMR (25) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.55-1.85 (4H, m), 2.3-2.5 (6H, m), 2.7-2.9 (2H, m), 3.67 (4H, t, J=4.5Hz), 4.25-4.55 (2H, m), 4.76 (2H, s), 6.78 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.25-7.95 (21H, m)

15

NMR (26) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.37-1.70 (4H, m), 2.08 (3H, s), 2.14-2.43 (10H, m), 2.60-2.77 (2H, m), 4.33 (1H, d, J=26.0Hz), 4.96 (2H, s), 6.80 (1H, d, J=10.0Hz), 7.27-7.38 (1H, m), 7.38-7.80 (19H, m), 7.90-8.03 (1H, m)

NMR (27) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.00 (3H, t, J=7.0Hz), 1.01 (3H, t, J=7.0Hz), 2.68 (2H, t, J=6.9Hz), 3.12-3.27 (4H, m), 3.35-3.46 (2H, m), 4.25-4.60 (1H, m), 4.96 (2H, s), 6.67 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.23-7.27 (1H, m), 7.29-7.57 (10H, m), 7.68-7.81 (9H, m), 7.92 (1H, brs), 11.97 (1H, brs)

20

NMR (28) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 2.14-2.39 (4H, m), 2.22 (3H, s), 2.74 (2H, t,

J=6.3Hz), 2.98-3.20 (2H, m), 3.29-3.48 (2H, m), 3.63-3.80 (2H, m), 4.17-4.54 (1H, m), 4.73 (2H, s), 6.67 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.26-7.33 (1H, m), 7.33-7.62 (10H, m), 7.62-7.85 (9H, m), 7.90 (1H, brs)

NMR (29) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 0.89 (3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.00 (3H, t, J=7.1Hz),

5 2.35-4.47 (15H, m), 4.73 (2H, s), 6.67-6.74 (1H, m), 7.20-7.61 (11H, m), 7.61-7.85 (9H, m), 7.85-7.93 (1H, m)

NMR (30) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.01-1.47 (2H, m), 1.65-1.90 (2H, m), 2.29 (3H,

s), 2.35-2.65 (11H, m), 2.65-2.91 (2H, m), 3.03-3.22 (2H, m), 3.73-3.91 (1H, m), 4.22-4.54 (1H, m), 4.73 (2H, s), 4.75-4.92 (1H, m), 6.69 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.22-

10 7.63 (11H, m), 7.63-7.88 (9H, m), 7.88-8.00 (1H, m)

NMR (31) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 2.18-3.50 (20H, m), 3.50-3.71 (1H, m), 3.71-

3.95 (1H, m), 4.20-4.82 (4H, m), 6.65-6.74 (1H, m), 7.20-7.63 (12H, m), 7.63-7.86 (9H, m), 7.86-7.98 (1H, m)

NMR (32) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 4.09 (3H, s), 4.42 (1H, d, J=22.9Hz), 4.85 (2H,

15 s), 6.93 (1H, d, J=8.7Hz), 7.00-7.18 (1H, m), 7.18-7.98 (18H, m), 8.19 (1H, dd, J=2.2Hz, J=8.7Hz), 8.60 (1H, d, J=2.2Hz), 11.55 (1H, br)

NMR (33) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 2.73 (2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 3.37 (2H, t, J=7.4Hz),

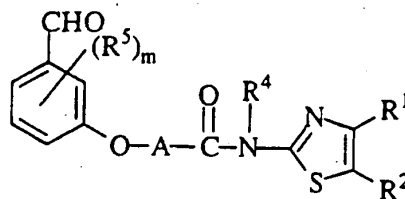
4.06 (1H, d, J=20.6Hz), 4.84 (2H, s), 6.77 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.28-7.77 (20H, m), 10.85 (1H, br), 12.16 (1H, br)

20 NMR (35) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.03-2.46 (2H, m), 2.67-3.06 (2H, m), 4.28-4.52 (1H, m), 4.94-5.24 (1H, m), 6.83-8.11 (22H, m), 12.61 (1H, brs)

Using the suitable starting compounds, the compounds as listed in Tables 23-31 are obtained in the same manner as in Reference Example 2.

152

Table 23



## Reference Example 105

R<sup>1</sup>: HR<sup>2</sup>: HR<sup>4</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: H

m: 1

A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

Crystalline form: White powder

Form: Free

NMR (1)

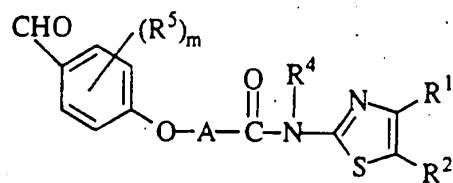
<sup>1</sup>H-NMR spectrum (NMR (1)) as described in Table 23 are as follows:

NMR (1) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 4.81 (2H, s), 7.05 (1H, d, J=3.5Hz), 7.25-7.35

(2H, m), 7.45-7.65 (2H, m), 7.50 (1H, d, J=3.5Hz), 10.00 (1H, s), 10.06 (1H, brs)

153

Table 24



## Reference Example 106

R<sup>1</sup>: HR<sup>2</sup>: HR<sup>4</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: H

m: 1

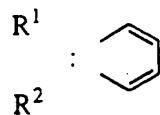
A: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-

Crystalline form: Pale yellow particles

Form: Free

NMR (1)

## Reference Example 107

R<sup>5</sup>: HR<sup>4</sup>: H

m: 1

A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

Crystalline form: Pale yellow particles

Form: Free

NMR (2)

## Reference Example 108

R<sup>1</sup>: HR<sup>2</sup>: HR<sup>4</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub> (2- and 6-positions)

m: 2

A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

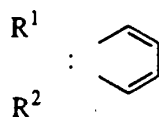
Form: Free

NMR (3)



Table 25

## Reference Example 109

R<sup>5</sup>: -CH<sub>2</sub>N(C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>2</sub> (2-position)R<sup>4</sup>: H

m: 1

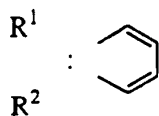
A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

Crystalline form: White powder

Form: Free

NMR (4)

## Reference Example 110

R<sup>5</sup>: -CH<sub>2</sub>-N(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-N-CH<sub>3</sub> (2-position)R<sup>4</sup>: H

m: 1

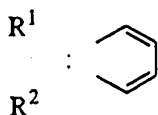
A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Form: Free

NMR (5)

## Reference Example 111

R<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>N(C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>2</sub> (2-position)R<sup>4</sup>: H

m: 1

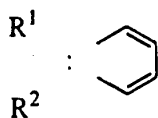
A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

Crystalline form: Brown powder

Form: HCl

NMR (6)

## Reference Example 112

R<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-N(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-N-CH<sub>3</sub> (2-position)R<sup>4</sup>: H

m: 1

A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

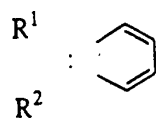
Crystalline form: White powder

Form: 2HCl

NMR (7)

Table 26

## Reference Example 113

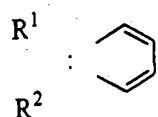
 $R^5: -(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{OH}$  (2-position) $R^4: \text{H}$        $m: 1$        $A: -\text{CH}_2-$ 

Crystalline form: White powder

Form: Free

NMR (8)

## Reference Example 114

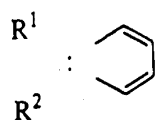
 $R^5: -(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{N} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \diagdown \\ \diagdown \diagup \end{array} \text{N-CH}_3$  (2-position) $R^4: \text{H}$        $m: 1$        $A: -\text{CH}_2-$ 

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: Free

NMR (9)

## Reference Example 115

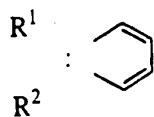
 $R^5: -\text{CH}_2\text{N}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$  (2-position) $R^4: \text{H}$        $m: 1$        $A: -(\text{CH}_2)_5-$ 

Crystalline form: Yellow oil

Form: Free

NMR (10)

## Reference Example 116

 $R^5: -\text{CH}_2\text{N}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$  (2-position) $R^4: \text{H}$        $m: 1$        $A: -(\text{CH}_2)_3-$ 

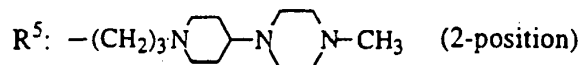
Crystalline form: Yellow amorphous

Form: Free

NMR (11)

Table 27

## Reference Example 117

R<sup>1</sup>R<sup>2</sup>R<sup>4</sup>: H

m: 1

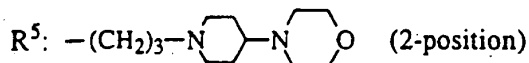
A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: Free

NMR (12)

## Reference Example 118

R<sup>1</sup>R<sup>2</sup>R<sup>4</sup>: H

m: 1

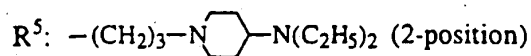
A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Form: 2HCl

NMR (13)

## Reference Example 119

R<sup>1</sup>R<sup>2</sup>R<sup>4</sup>: H

m: 1

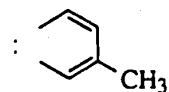
A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: 2HCl

NMR (14)

## Reference Example 120

R<sup>1</sup>R<sup>2</sup>R<sup>5</sup>: HR<sup>4</sup>: H

m: 1

A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Form: Free

NMR (15)

Table 28

## Reference Example 121

R<sup>1</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>R<sup>2</sup>: HR<sup>4</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: H

m: 1

A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

Crystalline form: Pale brown powder

Form: Free

NMR (16)

## Reference Example 122

R<sup>1</sup>: (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>C-R<sup>2</sup>: HR<sup>4</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: H

m: 1

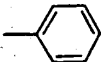
A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

Crystalline form: White powder

Form: Free

NMR (17)

## Reference Example 123

R<sup>1</sup>: R<sup>2</sup>: HR<sup>4</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: H

m: 1




A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: Free

NMR (18)

## Reference Example 124

R<sup>1</sup>: R<sup>2</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-N  (2-position)  
CH<sub>2</sub>N R<sup>4</sup>: H

m: 1

A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

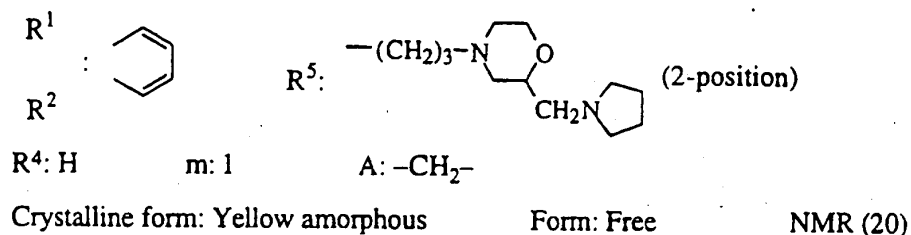
Crystalline form: Pale yellow oil

Form: Free

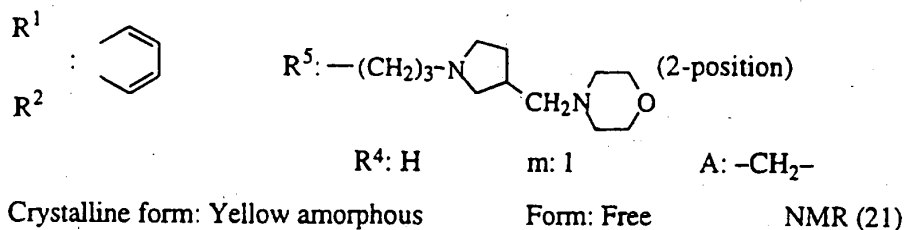
NMR (19)

Table 29

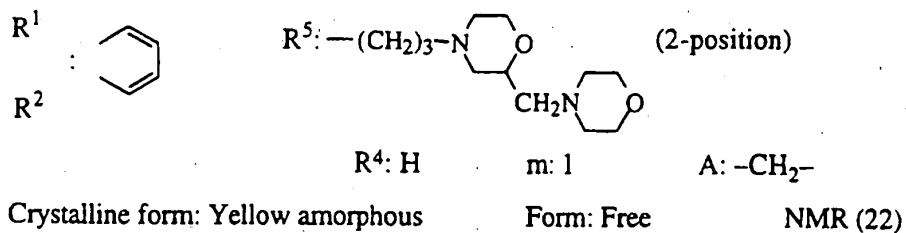
## Reference Example 125



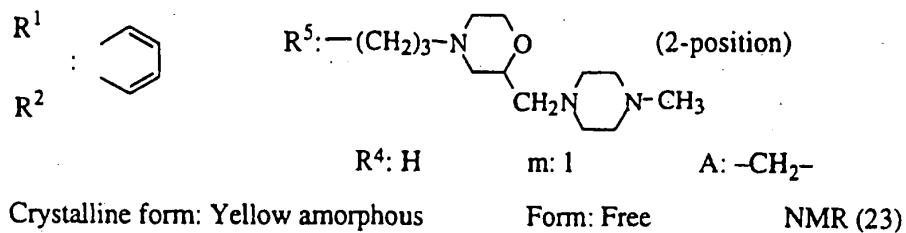
## Reference Example 126



## Reference Example 127



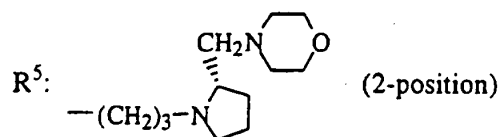
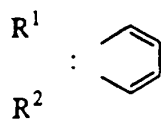
## Reference Example 128



159

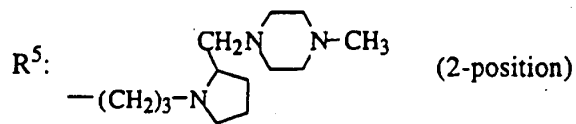
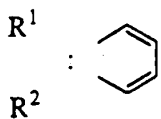
Table 30

## Reference Example 129


 $R^4: \text{H} \quad m: 1 \quad A: \text{---CH}_2\text{---}$ 

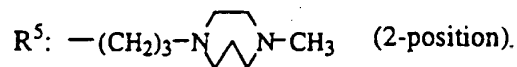
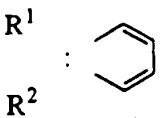
Crystalline form: Pale yellow amorphous      Form: Free      NMR (24)

## Reference Example 130


 $R^4: \text{H} \quad m: 1 \quad A: \text{---CH}_2\text{---}$ 

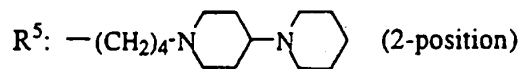
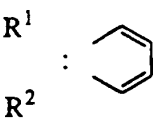
Crystalline form: Pale yellow amorphous      Form: Free      NMR (25)

## Reference Example 131


 $R^4: \text{H} \quad m: 1 \quad A: \text{---CH}_2\text{---}$ 

Crystalline form: Pale yellow amorphous      Form: Free      NMR (26)

## Reference Example 132

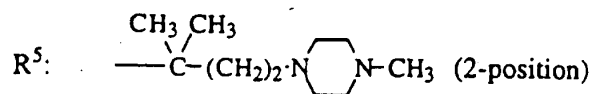
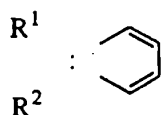

 $R^4: \text{H} \quad m: 1 \quad A: \text{---CH}_2\text{---}$ 

Crystalline form: Yellow amorphous      Form: 3HCl      NMR (27)

160

Table 31

## Reference Example 133

R<sup>4</sup>: H

m: 1

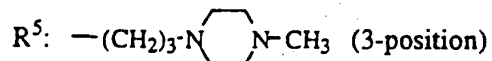
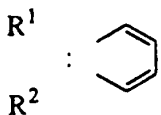
A:  $\text{---CH}_2\text{---}$ 

Crystalline form: Yellow amorphous

Form: Free

NMR (28)

## Reference Example 134

R<sup>4</sup>: H

m: 1

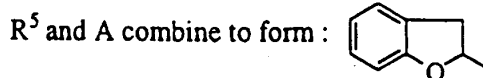
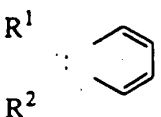
A:  $\text{---CH}_2\text{---}$ 

Crystalline form: Colorless amorphous

Form: Free

NMR (29)

## Reference Example 135

R<sup>4</sup>: H

m: 1

Crystalline form: White oil

Form: Free

NMR (30)

$^1\text{H}$ -NMR spectrum (NMR (1) to NMR (30)) as described in Tables 24-31 are as follows:

NMR (1) ( $\text{DMSO}-d_6$ )  $\delta\text{ppm}$ : 2.08 (2H, q,  $J=6.6\text{Hz}$ ), 2.62 (2H, t,  $J=7.2\text{Hz}$ ), 4.13 (2H, t,  $J=4.1\text{Hz}$ ), 7.10 (2H, d,  $J=8.6\text{Hz}$ ), 7.19 (1H, d,  $J=3.6\text{Hz}$ ), 7.45 (1H, d,  $J=3.6\text{Hz}$ ), 7.85 (2H, d,  $J=8.6\text{Hz}$ ), 9.86 (1H, s), 12.13 (1H, s)

NMR (2) ( $\text{DMSO}-d_6$ )  $\delta\text{ppm}$ : 5.07 (2H, s), 7.19 (2H, d,  $J=8.7\text{Hz}$ ), 7.27-7.40 (1H, m), 7.40-7.56 (1H, m), 7.77 (1H, d,  $J=7.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.90 (2H, d,  $J=8.8\text{Hz}$ ), 7.98 (1H, d,  $J=7.1\text{Hz}$ ), 9.89 (1H, s), 12.1-13.0 (1H, br)

NMR (3) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta\text{ppm}$ : 2.38 (6H, s), 4.57 (2H, s), 7.06 (1H, d,  $J=3.6\text{Hz}$ ), 7.51 (1H, d,  $J=3.6\text{Hz}$ ), 7.61 (2H, s), 9.92 (1H, s), 10.10 (1H, brs)

NMR (4) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta\text{ppm}$ : 1.13 (6H, t,  $J=7.1\text{Hz}$ ), 2.93 (4H, q,  $J=7.1\text{Hz}$ ), 3.79 (2H, s), 5.01 (2H, s), 7.08 (1H, d,  $J=8.2\text{Hz}$ ), 7.23-7.35 (1H, m), 7.35-7.45 (1H, m), 7.74-7.87 (4H, m), 9.92 (1H, s), 10.71 (1H, s)

NMR (5) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta\text{ppm}$ : 2.33 (3H, s), 2.42-2.88 (8H, m), 3.71 (2H, s), 4.92 (2H, s), 7.02 (1H, d,  $J=8.2\text{Hz}$ ), 7.27-7.40 (1H, m), 7.40-7.59 (1H, m), 7.67-7.93 (1H, m), 9.93 (1H, s)

NMR (6) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta\text{ppm}$ : 1.29 (6H, t,  $J=7.1\text{Hz}$ ), 2.98-3.48 (8H, m), 5.20 (2H, s), 7.22 (1H, d,  $J=9.0\text{Hz}$ ), 7.35 (1H, d,  $J=7.6\text{Hz}$ ), 7.49 (1H, d,  $J=7.6\text{Hz}$ ), 7.80 (1H, d,  $J=7.8\text{Hz}$ ), 7.85-7.98 (2H, m), 8.01 (1H, d,  $J=7.4\text{Hz}$ ), 9.91 (1H, s), 10.36 (1H, br), 12.84 (1H, br)

NMR (7) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta\text{ppm}$ : 2.86 (3H, s), 3.14-4.00 (12H, m), 5.21 (2H, s), 7.22 (1H, d,  $J=7.8\text{Hz}$ ), 7.35 (1H, t,  $J=7.6\text{Hz}$ ), 7.49 (1H, t,  $J=7.6\text{Hz}$ ), 7.78-7.87 (3H, m), 8.01 (1H, d,  $J=8.1\text{Hz}$ ), 9.90 (1H, s), 11.60 (2H, br), 12.75 (1H, br)



NMR (8) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.83-2.11 (2H, m), 3.06 (2H, t,  $J=7.3\text{Hz}$ ), 3.85 (2H, t,  $J=5.2\text{Hz}$ ), 4.22 (1H, br), 4.85 (2H, s), 6.98 (1H, d,  $J=8.2\text{Hz}$ ), 7.28-7.41 (1H, m), 7.41-7.49 (1H, m), 7.74-7.86 (4H, m), 9.92 (1H, s), 11.84 (1H, br)

5 NMR (9) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.83-2.06 (2H, m), 2.25 (3H, s), 2.32-2.76 (10H, m), 2.88 (2H, t,  $J=7.7\text{Hz}$ ), 4.87 (2H, s), 6.97 (1H, d,  $J=8.3\text{Hz}$ ), 7.30-7.42 (1H, m), 7.42-7.51 (1H, m), 7.72-7.87 (4H, m), 9.94 (1H, s)

10 NMR (10) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 0.99 (6H, t,  $J=7.1\text{Hz}$ ), 1.40-1.61 (2H, m), 1.70-1.92 (4H, m), 2.43-2.63 (6H, m), 3.56 (2H, s), 3.95 (2H, t,  $J=6.3\text{Hz}$ ), 6.86 (1H, d,  $J=8.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.28-7.40 (1H, m), 7.40-7.51 (1H, m), 7.70-7.91 (3H, m), 7.95 (1H, d,  $J=2.1\text{Hz}$ ), 9.89 (1H, s), 10.39-13.00 (1H, brs)

NMR (11) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 0.97 (6H, t,  $J=7.1\text{Hz}$ ), 2.10-2.40 (2H, m), 2.40-2.68 (6H, m), 3.54 (2H, s), 3.95-4.23 (2H, m), 6.84 (1H, t,  $J=8.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.20-7.40 (2H, m), 7.58-7.88 (3H, m), 7.90 (1H, d,  $J=2.1\text{Hz}$ ), 9.87 (1H, s)

15 NMR (12) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.38-1.76 (2H, m), 1.76-2.13 (6H, m), 2.13-2.70 (14H, m), 2.88 (2H, t,  $J=7.6\text{Hz}$ ), 2.95-3.18 (2H, m), 4.86 (2H, s), 6.97 (1H, d,  $J=8.2\text{Hz}$ ), 7.31-7.42 (1H, m), 7.42-7.57 (1H, m), 7.73-7.87 (4H, m), 9.91 (1H, s)

20 NMR (13) ( $\text{DMSO}-d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.92-2.45 (6H, m), 2.60-3.21 (9H, m), 3.21-3.76 (4H, m), 3.76-4.16 (4H, m), 5.17 (2H, s), 7.15 (1H, d,  $J=8.8\text{Hz}$ ), 7.31 (1H, t,  $J=6.9\text{Hz}$ ), 7.45 (1H, t,  $J=6.9\text{Hz}$ ), 7.68-7.92 (3H, m), 7.99 (1H, d,  $J=7.0\text{Hz}$ ), 9.87 (1H, s), 10.73 (1H, br), 11.78 (1H, br), 12.80 (1H, s)

NMR (14) ( $\text{DMSO}-d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.28 (6H, t,  $J=7.1\text{Hz}$ ), 2.00-2.38 (6H, m), 2.68-2.90 (2H, m), 2.90-3.25 (8H, m), 3.47-3.83 (3H, m), 5.18 (2H, s), 7.18 (1H, d,  $J=8.7\text{Hz}$ ), 7.34 (1H, t,  $J=7.7\text{Hz}$ ), 7.45 (1H, t,  $J=7.7\text{Hz}$ ), 7.78-7.86 (3H, m), 8.00 (1H, d,  $J=7.0\text{Hz}$ ), 9.90 (1H, s), 10.78 (2H, br), 12.80 (1H, br)

NMR (15) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 2.40 (3H, s), 5.06 (2H, s), 7.15-7.40 (3H, m), 7.65 (1H, d,  $J=8.4$ Hz), 7.77 (1H, s), 7.89 (2H, d,  $J=8.6$ Hz), 9.88 (1H, s), 12.61 (1H, s)

5. NMR (16) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 2.27 (3H, d,  $J=0.9$ Hz), 4.98 (2H, s), 6.79 (1H, d,  $J=1.0$ Hz), 7.12-7.25 (2H, m), 7.82-7.96 (2H, m), 9.88 (1H, s), 12.0-12.7 (1H, br)

NMR (17) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.26 (9H, s), 4.98 (2H, s), 6.78 (1H, s), 7.15 (2H, d,  $J=8.8$ Hz), 7.90 (2H, d,  $J=8.8$ Hz), 9.88 (1H, s), 12.42 (1H, s)

NMR (18) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 5.05 (2H, s), 7.19 (2H, d,  $J=8.8$ Hz), 7.25-7.55 (3H, m), 7.69 (1H, s), 7.80-8.02 (4H, m), 9.89 (1H, s), 12.60 (1H, s)

10. NMR (19) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.57-1.84 (7H, m), 1.84-2.05 (3H, m), 2.20 (1H, q,  $J=8.5$ Hz), 2.30-2.72 (8H, m), 2.74-3.12 (3H, m), 3.16-3.30 (1H, m), 4.87 (2H, s), 6.97 (1H, d,  $J=8.3$ Hz), 7.27-7.41 (1H, m), 7.41-7.53 (1H, m), 7.70-7.93 (4H, m), 9.91 (1H, s)

15. NMR (20) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.67-2.95 (20H, m), 3.55-3.95 (3H, m), 4.90 (2H, s), 6.96 (1H, d,  $J=8.3$ Hz), 7.25-7.53 (2H, m), 7.55-7.95 (4H, m), 9.90 (1H, s)

NMR (21) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.55-3.80 (23H, m), 4.91 (2H, s), 6.96 (1H, d,  $J=8.4$ Hz), 7.25-7.52 (2H, m), 7.65-7.78 (4H, m), 9.88 (1H, s)

NMR (22) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.75-2.95 (16H, m), 3.55-3.95 (7H, m), 4.88 (2H, s), 6.95 (1H, d,  $J=8.3$ Hz), 7.28-7.55 (2H, m), 7.65-7.95 (4H, m), 9.90 (1H, s)

20. NMR (23) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.75-3.00 (20H, m), 2.27 (3H, s), 3.58-3.98 (3H, m), 4.88 (2H, s), 6.95 (1H, d,  $J=8.3$ Hz), 7.30-7.52 (2H, m), 7.65-7.90 (4H, m), 9.89 (1H, s)

NMR (24) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.5-3.4 (15H, m), 2.40 (4H, t,  $J=4.5$ Hz), 3.61

(4H, t, J=4.5Hz), 4.88 (2H, s), 6.99 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.3-7.55 (2H, m), 7.7-7.9 (4H, m), 9.92 (1H, s)

NMR (25) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.5-3.1 (23H, m), 2.24 (3H, s), 4.91 (2H, s), 7.00 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.3-7.5 (2H, m), 7.7-7.9 (4H, m), 9.91 (1H, s)

5 NMR (26) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.7-2.0 (4H, m), 2.33 (3H, s), 2.5-3.0 (12H, m), 4.87 (2H, s), 6.97 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.3-7.9 (6H, m), 9.91 (1H, s)

NMR (27) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.30-3.51 (25H, m), 3.51-3.75 (2H, m), 5.16 (2H, s), 7.09 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.27-7.39 (1H, m), 7.39-7.52 (1H, m), 7.70-7.84 (3H, m), 7.98-8.09 (1H, m), 9.86 (1H, s), 10.58-11.17 (3H, m)

10 NMR (28) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.45 (6H, s), 2.68-3.01 (2H, m), 2.77 (3H, s), 3.21-3.85 (10H, m), 5.24 (2H, s), 7.10 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.29-7.40 (1H, m), 7.40-7.52 (1H, m), 7.74-7.89 (3H, m), 7.93-8.05 (1H, m), 9.89 (1H, s), 11.10-13.00 (3H, m)

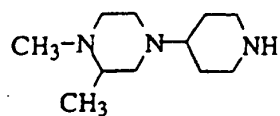
15 NMR (29) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.86 (2H, quint, J=7.5Hz), 2.18-2.63 (10H, m), 2.30 (3H, s), 3.05 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 4.82 (2H, s), 6.24-7.01 (2H, m), 7.10-7.59 (3H, m), 7.73-7.93 (3H, m), 10.17 (1H, s)

NMR (30) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 3.46 (1H, dd, J=6.5Hz, J=16.5Hz), 3.68 (1H, dd, J=10.5Hz, J=16.5Hz), 5.67 (1H, dd, J=6.5Hz, J=10.5Hz), 7.08 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.25-7.55 (2H, m), 7.75-7.85 (3H, m), 7.99 (2H, d, J=8.5Hz), 9.84 (1H, s)

20 Using the suitable starting compounds, the compounds as listed in Tables 32-37 are obtained in the same manner as in Reference Examples 7, 8 or 9.

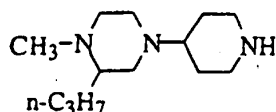
Table 32

## Reference Example 136



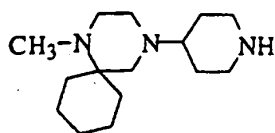
B.p.: 145°C (0.3 mmHg)  
 Crystalline form: Colorless oil  
 Form: Free  
 NMR (1)

## Reference Example 138



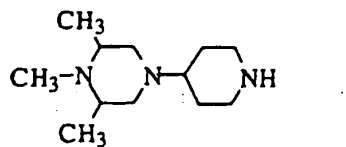
Crystalline form: Colorless oil  
 Form: Free  
 NMR (3)

## Reference Example 140



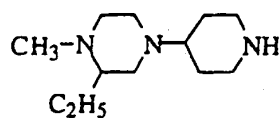
Crystalline form: Brown oil  
 Form: Free  
 NMR (5)

## Reference Example 142



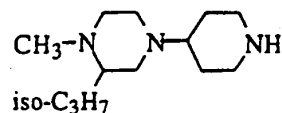
(cis-form)  
 B.p.: 90-95°C (0.2 mmHg)  
 Crystalline form: Colorless oil  
 Form: Free

## Reference Example 137



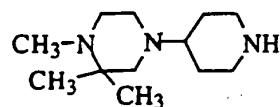
Crystalline form: Pale yellow oil  
 Form: Free  
 NMR (2)

## Reference Example 139



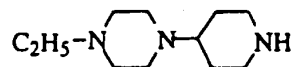
Crystalline form: Brown oil  
 Form: Free  
 NMR (4)

## Reference Example 141



B.p.: 90-95°C (0.15 mmHg)  
 Crystalline form: Colorless oil  
 Form: Free

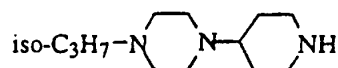
## Reference Example 143



B.p.: 107°C (0.35 mmHg)  
 Crystalline form: Colorless oil  
 Form: Free

Table 33

## Reference Example 144

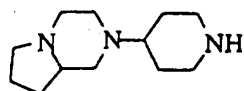


Crystalline form: White solid

Form: Free

NMR (6)

## Reference Example 146



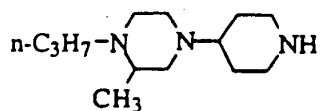
B.p.: 135-140°C (0.25-0.3 mmHg)

Crystalline form: Colorless oil

Form: Free

NMR (7)

## Reference Example 148

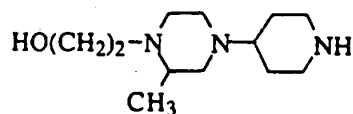


Crystalline form: Colorless oil

Form: Free

NMR (9)

## Reference Example 150

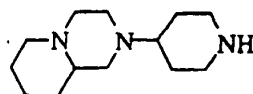


Crystalline form: Colorless oil

Form: Free

NMR (11)

## Reference Example 145

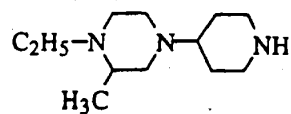


B.p.: 160-165°C (0.25-0.3 mmHg)

Crystalline form: Colorless oil

Form: Free

## Reference Example 147

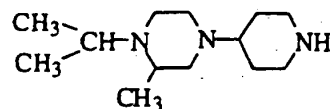


Crystalline form: Colorless oil

Form: Free

NMR (8)

## Reference Example 149

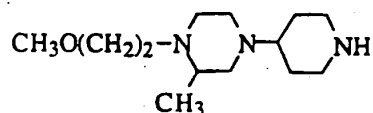


Crystalline form: White amorphous

Form: Free

NMR (10)

## Reference Example 151



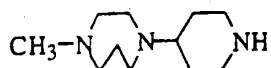
Crystalline form: Brown oil

Form: Free

NMR (12)

Table 34

## Reference Example 152



B.p.: 110-115°C (0.22 mmHg)

Crystalline form: Colorless oil

Form: Free

## Reference Example 154

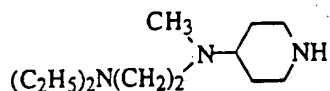


Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Form: Free

NMR (14)

## Reference Example 156

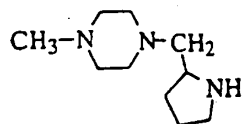


B.p.: 110-115°C (0.28 mmHg)

Crystalline form: Colorless oil

Form: Free

## Reference Example 158

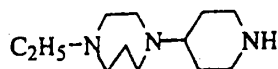


B.p.: 113-130°C (18 mmHg)

Crystalline form: Colorless oil

Form: Free

## Reference Example 153

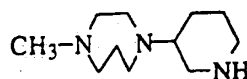


Crystalline form: Pale yellow oil

Form: Free

NMR (13)

## Reference Example 155

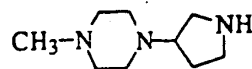


B.p.: 110°C (0.35 mmHg)

Crystalline form: Colorless oil

Form: Free

## Reference Example 157

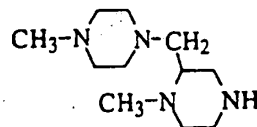


B.p.: 120-127°C (12 mmHg)

Crystalline form: Colorless oil

Form: Free

## Reference Example 159



B.p.: 165-170°C (15 mmHg)

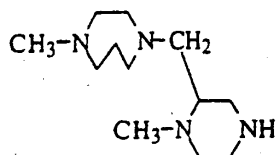
Crystalline form: Colorless oil

Form: Free

NMR (15)

Table 35

## Reference Example 160



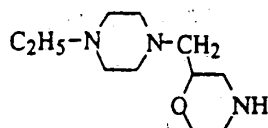
B.p.: 180-185°C (15 mmHg)

Crystalline form: Colorless oil

Form: Free

NMR (16)

## Reference Example 162



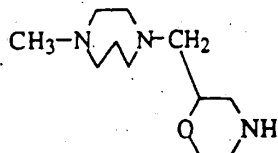
B.p.: 112-116°C (0.23 mmHg)

M.p. 39-41°C

Crystalline form: Colorless oil

Form: Free

## Reference Example 164

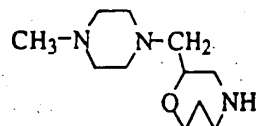


B.p.: 108°C (0.3 mmHg)

Crystalline form: Colorless oil

Form: Free

## Reference Example 166

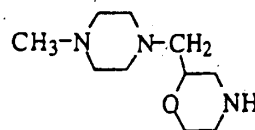


B.p.: 134-137°C (2.5 mmHg)

Crystalline form: Colorless oil

Form: Free

## Reference Example 161

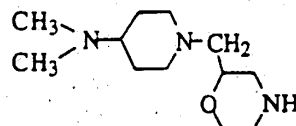


B.p.: 138-143°C (12 mmHg)

Crystalline form: Colorless oil

Form: Free

## Reference Example 163

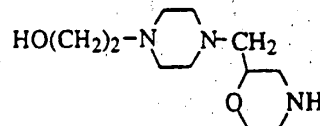


B.p.: 116°C (0.23 mmHg)

Crystalline form: Colorless oil

Form: Free

## Reference Example 165

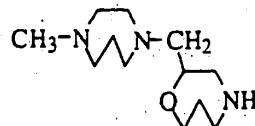


M.p. 73-75.5°C

Crystalline form: White powder

Form: Free

## Reference Example 167



B.p.: 124-130°C (0.7 mmHg)

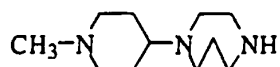
Crystalline form: Colorless oil

Form: Free

169

Table 36

## Reference Example 168

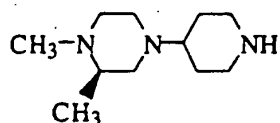


Crystalline form: White powder

Form: 3HCl

NMR (17)

## Reference Example 170

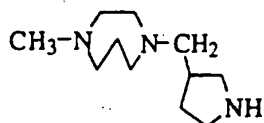


Crystalline form: Colorless oil

Form: Free

NMR (19)

## Reference Example 172

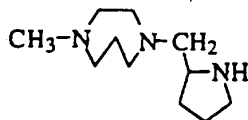


B.p.: 110-128°C (20 mmHg)

Crystalline form: Colorless oil

Form: Free

## Reference Example 174

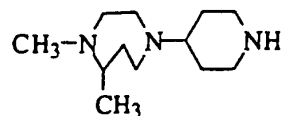


B.p.: 115-133°C (20 mmHg)

Crystalline form: Colorless oil

Form: Free

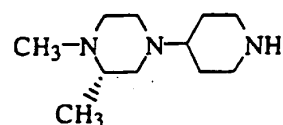
## Reference Example 169



Form: Free

NMR (18)

## Reference Example 171

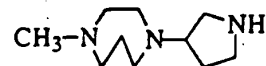


Crystalline form: Colorless oil

Form: Free

NMR (20)

## Reference Example 173

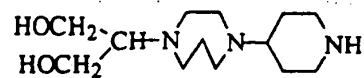


B.p.: 115-136°C (20 mmHg)

Crystalline form: Colorless oil

Form: Free

## Reference Example 175



Crystalline form: White powder

Form: 3HCl

NMR (21)

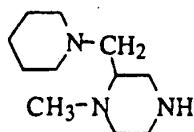


170

Table 37

## Reference Example 176

5



B.p.: 165-170°C (18 mmHg)

Crystalline form: Yellow oil

Form: Free

NMR (22)

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR spectrum (NMR (1) to NMR (22)) as described in Tables 32-37

are as follows:

10 NMR (1) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.05 (3H, d, J=6Hz), 1.25-1.55 (2H, m), 1.75-3.3 (14H, m), 2.31 (3H, s)

NMR (2) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 0.89 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.17-1.54 (3H, m), 1.54-1.78 (1H, m), 1.78-1.94 (2H, m), 1.94-2.18 (3H, m), 2.18-2.49 (6H, m), 2.49-2.72 (2H, m), 2.72-2.95 (3H, m), 3.03-3.27 (2H, m)

15 NMR (3) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 0.91 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 1.15-1.7 (5H, m), 1.75-2.15 (6H, m), 2.28 (3H, s), 2.15-2.45 (3H, m), 2.45-2.65 (2H, m), 2.7-2.95 (3H, m), 3.05-3.25 (2H, m)

NMR (4) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 0.85-0.94 (6H, m), 1.23-1.54 (2H, m), 1.62 (1H, br), 1.80-1.96 (3H, m), 1.96-2.18 (2H, m), 2.18-2.45 (6H, m), 2.45-2.68 (2H, m),  
20 2.68-2.92 (3H, m), 3.00-3.24 (2H, m)

NMR (5) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.06-1.98 (15H, m), 2.20-2.47 (5H, m), 2.47-2.61 (1H, m), 2.61-2.90 (6H, m), 3.09-3.33 (2H, m)

NMR (6) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.06 (6H, d, J=6.5Hz), 1.25-1.55 (2H, m), 1.75-1.95 (2H, m), 2.2-2.4 (1H, m), 2.45-2.75 (11H, m), 3.05-3.2 (2H, m)

25 NMR (7) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.25-1.6 (3H, m), 1.6-2.75 (14H, m), 2.85 (1H, dd,

171

$J=2\text{Hz}$ ,  $J=11.5\text{Hz}$ , 2.9-3.3 (5H, m)

NMR (8) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta\text{ppm}$ : 1.00 (3H, t,  $J=7.3\text{Hz}$ ), 1.04 (3H, d,  $J=6.3\text{Hz}$ ),  
1.24-1.51 (2H, m), 1.70-1.92 (3H, m), 2.03 (1H, t,  $J=10.7\text{Hz}$ ), 2.20-2.50 (5H, m),  
2.50-2.69 (2H, m), 2.69-3.00 (4H, m), 3.07-3.22 (2H, m)

5 NMR (9) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta\text{ppm}$ : 0.84 (3H, t,  $J=7.3\text{Hz}$ ), 1.03 (3H, d,  $J=6.2\text{Hz}$ ),  
1.25-1.65 (4H, m), 1.65-1.93 (3H, m), 2.02 (1H, q,  $J=10.7\text{Hz}$ ), 2.19-2.48 (5H, m),  
2.48-2.95 (6H, m), 3.05-3.21 (2H, m)

NMR (10) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta\text{ppm}$ : 0.89 (3H, d,  $J=6.5\text{Hz}$ ), 1.03 (6H, dd,  $J=6.5\text{Hz}$ ,  
 $J=15.1\text{Hz}$ ), 1.44-1.69 (2H, m), 1.80-2.00 (2H, m), 2.05-2.24 (2H, m), 2.24-2.50  
10 (2H, m), 2.50-2.95 (6H, m), 3.13-3.40 (3H, m), 4.85 (1H, br)

NMR (11) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta\text{ppm}$ : 1.03 (3H, d,  $J=6.2\text{Hz}$ ), 1.33-1.52 (2H, m), 1.72-  
3.08 (16H, m), 3.08-3.23 (2H, m), 3.45-3.80 (2H, m)

NMR (12) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta\text{ppm}$ : 1.04 (3H, d,  $J=6.2\text{Hz}$ ), 1.49-1.68 (2H, m), 1.80-  
1.99 (2H, m), 2.06 (1H, t,  $J=10.1\text{Hz}$ ), 2.24-2.55 (5H, m), 2.57-2.88 (4H, m), 2.90-  
15 3.10 (2H, m), 3.15-3.31 (3H, m), 3.34 (3H, s), 3.44-3.62 (2H, m)

NMR (13) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta\text{ppm}$ : 1.07 (3H, t,  $J=7.1\text{Hz}$ ), 1.40 (2H, dq,  $J=3.8\text{Hz}$ ,  
 $J=12.0\text{Hz}$ ), 1.65-1.98 (5H, m), 2.39-2.72 (9H, m), 2.72-2.84 (4H, m), 3.05-3.22  
(2H, m)

NMR (14) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta\text{ppm}$ : 0.91 (3H, t,  $J=7.1\text{Hz}$ ), 1.14-1.58 (5H, m), 1.58-  
20 2.13 (5H, m), 2.22-2.87 (13H, m), 3.01-3.24 (2H, m)

NMR (15) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta\text{ppm}$ : 2.0-3.2 (17H, m), 2.26 (3H, s), 2.32 (3H, s)

NMR (16) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta\text{ppm}$ : 1.8-1.9 (2H, m), 2.0-3.2 (17H, m), 2.33 (3H, s),  
2.34 (3H, s)

172

NMR (17) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.94-2.46 (6H, m), 2.69 (3H, d,  $J=3.7$ Hz), 2.84-3.16 (2H, m), 3.16-4.30 (11H, m), 9.56 (1H, br), 9.99 (1H, br), 11.04 (1H, br), 12.06 (1H, br)

NMR (18) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.08 (3H, d,  $J=6.2$ Hz), 1.28-1.55 (2H, m), 1.55-1.95 (5H, m), 2.38 (3H, s), 2.40-2.99 (10H, m), 3.02-3.22 (2H, m)

NMR (19) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.05 (3H, d,  $J=6$ Hz), 1.25-1.55 (2H, m), 1.75-3.3 (14H, m), 2.31 (3H, s)

NMR (20) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.05 (3H, d,  $J=6$ Hz), 1.25-1.55 (2H, m), 1.75-3.3 (14H, m), 2.31 (3H, s)

NMR (21) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.78-2.47 (6H, m), 2.68-3.06 (2H, m), 3.14-4.32 (16H, m), 5.20-5.78 (2H, m), 9.1-9.82 (2H, m), 10.54-11.36 (1H, m), 11.82-12.38 (1H, m)

NMR (22) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.3-1.7 (6H, m), 2.0-3.2 (13H, m), 2.32 (3H, s)

#### Reference Example 182

To a solution of t-butyl propiolate (9.7 g) in tetrahydrofuran (300 ml) is added dropwise a 1.6M solution of n-butyl lithium in n-hexane (48 ml) at  $-70^\circ\text{C}$ , and the mixture is reacted for 10 minutes. To the mixture is added dropwise a solution of 2-[(2-methoxy-4-formylphenoxy)methylcarbonylamino]-benzothiazole (10 g) in tetrahydrofuran (200 ml) and N,N-dimethylpropylene urea (20 ml) at the same temperature over a period of 20 minutes. The reaction mixture is further reacted for 20 minutes, and then the reaction vessel is taken out from the iced bath, and the mixture is further stirred for 20 minutes. To the

mixture is added acetic acid (5 ml), and the mixture is diluted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer is washed with a saturated aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, dried over sodium sulfate, concentrated, and the residue thus obtained is recrystallized from ethyl acetate-n-hexane. The crystals are collected by filtration to give 2-[2-methoxy-4-(3-t-butoxycarbonyl-1-hydroxypropargyl)phenoxyethylcarbonylamino]benzothiazole (13 g) as white power.

#### Reference Example 183

A solution of sodium hydroxide (4.92 g) in water (5 ml) is diluted with ethanol (80 ml), and the mixture is subjected to deaeration, and then put under nitrogen atmosphere. To the mixture is added 3-methoxy-4-dimethylamino-carbonylthiobenzaldehyde (20 g), and the mixture is refluxed for 14 hours. After cooling, to the mixture is added dropwise ethyl bromoacetate (9.74 ml), and the mixture is stirred at room temperature for three hours. To the mixture are added ethanol, 1.5N hydrochloric acid and water, and the mixture is extracted with chloroform. The extract is dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated, and the residue is purified by silica gel column chromatography (solvent; n-hexane:ethyl acetate = 9:1 → 5.6:1 → 4:1) to give 3-methoxy-4-ethoxycarbonylmethylthiobenzaldehyde (11.8 g) as white solid.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.21 (3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 3.74 (2H, s), 3.99 (3H, s), 4.14 (2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 7.32-7.48 (3H, m), 9.92 (1H, s)

#### Reference Example 184

Using the suitable starting compounds, the following compound is obtained in the same manner as in Reference Example 1.

$\alpha$ -(2-Methoxy-4-formylphenoxyethyl)acetic acid:

Yellow powder

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{DMSO-d}_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 3.84 (3H, s), 4.82 (2H, s), 7.05 (1H, d,  $J=8\text{Hz}$ ),

7.41 (1H, d,  $J=2\text{Hz}$ ), 7.51 (1H, dd,  $J=2\text{Hz}$ ,  $J=8\text{Hz}$ ), 9.83 (1H, s), 13.14 (1H, br)

5 Reference Example 185

Using the suitable starting compounds, the following compounds are obtained in the same manner as in Reference Example 2.

2-(2-Methoxy-4-formylphenoxyethylcarbonylamino)benzimidazole:

Yellow powder

10  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 4.06 (3H, s), 4.86 (2H, s), 7.09 (1H, d,  $J=8.5\text{Hz}$ ),

7.3-7.55 (4H, m), 7.8-7.9 (2H, m), 9.91 (1H, s), 10.25 (1H, br)

2-(2-Ethoxy-4-formylphenoxyethylcarbonylamino)benzimidazole:

White powder

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.60 (3H, t,  $J=7.0\text{Hz}$ ), 4.26 (2H, q,  $J=7.0\text{Hz}$ ), 4.87

15 (2H, s), 7.11 (1H, d,  $J=8.3\text{Hz}$ ), 7.30-7.49 (4H, m), 7.79-7.88 (2H, m), 9.90 (1H, s),

10.34 (1H, br)

2-[2-(Diethylaminocarbonylmethoxy)-4-formylphenoxyethylcarbonylamino]-benzimidazole:

White powder

20  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.16 (3H, t,  $J=7\text{Hz}$ ), 1.30 (3H, t,  $J=7\text{Hz}$ ), 3.35 (2H,

q,  $J=7\text{Hz}$ ), 3.49 (2H, q,  $J=7\text{Hz}$ ), 4.92 (2H, s), 5.00 (2H, s), 7.09 (1H, d,  $J=8\text{Hz}$ ),

7.25-7.55 (4H, m), 7.7-7.85 (2H, m), 9.86 (1H, s)

Reference Example 186

Using the suitable starting compounds, the following compounds are obtained in the same manner in Reference Example 5.

[3-(2-Chloroethyl)-4-(2-benzothiazolylaminocarbonylmethoxy)benzoyl]methyltriphenylphosphonium bromide:

- 5           <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 3.16 (2H, t, J=7.0Hz), 3.92 (2H, t, J=7.0Hz), 5.18 (2H, s), 6.12 (2H, d, J=13.1Hz), 7.14 (1H, d, J=9.4Hz), 7.31 (1H, t, J=6.5Hz), 7.44 (1H, t, J=6.5Hz), 7.60-8.12 (19H, m), 12.70 (1H, br)

[3-(2,3-Diacetyloxypropyl)-4-(2-benzothiazolylaminocarbonylmethoxy)benzoyl]methyltriphenylphosphonium chloride:

- 10           <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 2.00 (3H, s), 2.05 (3H, s), 3.0-3.15 (2H, m), 4.0-4.35 (2H, m), 4.93, 5.05 (2H, AB-q, J=16Hz), 5.40 (1H, m), 6.1-6.6 (2H, br), 6.98 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.2-8.5 (21H, m)

#### Reference Example 187

- 15           To a solution of methyl 2,4-dihydroxybenzoate (25.1 g) in acetone (250 ml) are added methyl bromoacetate (14.9 ml) and potassium carbonate (21.7 g), and the mixture is refluxed for 3 hours. The mixture is filtered, and the filtrate is concentrated, and the residue is purified by silica gel column chromatography (solvent; n-hexane:ethyl acetate = 3:1) to give ethyl 2-(3-hydroxy-4-methoxycarbonylphenoxy)acetate (31.5 g).

- 20           White solid

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 3.81 (3H, s), 3.91 (3H, s), 4.65 (2H, s), 6.39 (1H, d, J=2.6Hz), 6.45 (1H, dd, J=2.6Hz, J=8.8Hz), 7.73 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 10.97 (1H, s)

#### Reference Example 188

To ethanol (50 ml) are added 2-(2-phthalimide)methylbenzothiazole

(3.37 g) and hydrazine monohydrate (3 ml), and the mixture is refluxed for 30 minutes. After confirming that the starting compounds are consumed, the precipitated solid is removed by filtration, and the filtrate is concentrated. To the residue is added aqueous potassium carbonate solution, and the mixture is  
5 extracted with dichloromethane. The extract is dried over magnesium sulfate, and concentrated under reduced pressure to remove the solvent to give 2-aminomethylbenzothiazole (1.42 g).

Yellow powder

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.83 (2H, br), 4.30 (2H, s), 7.33-7.51 (2H, m),  
10 7.85-7.99 (2H, m)

Reference Example 189

To dichloromethane (50 ml) are added 2-hydroxymethylbenzothiazole (2 g) and triethylamine (2.5 ml), and further thereto is added methanesulfonyl chloride (1.03 ml) under ice-cooling, and the mixture is stirred at the same  
15 temperature for one hour. After the reaction is complete, the mixture is washed with hydrochloric acid, dried over magnesium sulfate, and concentrated under reduced pressure to remove the solvent. The resulting crude product is dissolved in dimethylformamide (50 ml), and thereto is added potassium phthalimide (5.6 g). The mixture is heated with stirring at 70°C for one hour.  
20 After the reaction is complete, the reaction mixture is poured into water, and the precipitated crystals are collected by filtration. Separately, the filtrate is extracted with ethyl acetate, and the extract is concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue and the crystals obtained before are combined, and washed with n-hexane-diethyl ether to give 2-(2-phthalimide)methylbenzo-

thiazole (3.37 g).

Yellow powder

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 5.30 (2H, s), 7.35-7.47 (2H, m), 7.74-8.02 (6H, m)

5     Reference Example 190

A solution of methyl p-formylbenzoate (12.33 g), malonic acid (16 g) and piperidine (1 ml) in pyridine (100 ml) is refluxed for two hours. The reaction mixture is poured into ice-water, and the precipitated white powder is collected by filtration, and washed with water, and dried to give 4-methoxycarbonyl

10    cinnamic acid (14.7 g).

White powder

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{DMSO-d}_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 3.85 (3H, s), 6.65 (1H, d,  $J=16\text{Hz}$ ), 7.63 (1H, d,  $J=16\text{Hz}$ ), 7.82 (2H, d,  $J=8\text{Hz}$ ), 8.01 (2H, d,  $J=8\text{Hz}$ ), 12.57 (1H, br)

Reference Example 191

15     To a solution of 4-methoxycarbonylcinnamic acid (4.64 g) in acetic acid (300 ml) is added 10 % palladium-carbon (0.5 g), and the mixture is subjected to hydrogenation at  $70^\circ\text{C}$  under atmospheric pressure for two hours. The catalyst is removed by filtration, and the filtrate is concentrated under reduced pressure. To the residue is added water, and the precipitated white powder is collected by  
20    filtration to give 3-(4-methoxycarbonylphenyl)propionic acid (3.87 g).

White powder

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 2.71 (2H, t,  $J=7.5\text{Hz}$ ), 3.02 (2H, t,  $J=7.5\text{Hz}$ ), 3.91 (3H, s), 7.29 (2H, d,  $J=8.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.97 (2H, d,  $J=8.5\text{Hz}$ )

Reference Example 192



To a suspension of 2-carboxybenzothiazole (6.5 g) in anhydrous dichloromethane (100 ml) are added oxalyl chloride (3.2 ml) and a drop of dimethylformamide, and the mixture is stirred at room temperature for three hours. The mixture is evaporated to remove the dichloromethane, and the  
5 residue is dissolved in acetone (100 ml), and added dropwise into an aqueous solution of sodium azide (5 g) in water (20 ml) under ice-cooling. The mixture is stirred at the same temperature for three hours, and thereto is added water. The precipitated crystals are collected by filtration, dissolved in dichloromethane (50 ml), dried, and concentrated under reduced pressure to remove the solvent. To  
10 the residue is added benzene (50 ml), and the mixture is refluxed for four hours. To the mixture is added ethyl 4-piperidinecarboxylate (5.7 g), and the mixture is refluxed for 6 hours. To the reaction solution is added water, and the mixture is extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract is washed with water, dried, and concentrated under reduced pressure to remove the solvent. The residue is  
15 purified by silica gel column chromatography (solvent; dichloromethane: methanol = 200:1 → 100:1) to give 2-(4-ethoxycarbonyl-1-piperidiny)-carbonylaminobenzothiazole (4.0 g).

White powder

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.25 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 1.65-2.05 (4H, m), 2.4-2.6  
20 (1H, m), 2.95-3.2 (2H, m), 4.0-4.2 (2H, m), 4.14 (2H, q, J=7Hz), 7.15-7.45 (2H, m), 7.58 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.75 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 10.11 (1H, br)

#### Reference Example 193

To a solution of methyl 2-methoxy-4-trifluoromethanesulfonyloxybenzoate (26.8 g), t-butyl acrylate (62.5 ml), triethylamine (25 ml) in anhydrous

dimethylformamide (100 ml) are added palladium acetate (0.4 g) and 1,3-bis(diphenylphosphino)propane (0.74 g) under argon atmosphere, and the mixture is heated with stirring at 75°C for 16 hours. The reaction solution is concentrated under reduced pressure to remove the solvent, and thereto is added water. The mixture is extracted with ethyl acetate, and the extract is washed with water, dried, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue is purified by silica gel column chromatography (solvent; ethyl acetate: n-hexane = 1:5) to give t-butyl 3-methoxy-4-methoxycarbonylcinnamate (23.5 g).

10 Yellow powder

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.54 (9H, s), 3.90 (3H, s), 3.94 (3H, s), 6.42 (1H, d, J=16Hz), 7.07 (1H, d, J=1.5Hz), 7.13 (1H, dd, J=1.5, 8Hz), 7.55 (1H, d, J=16Hz), 7.80 (1H, d, J=8Hz)

Reference Example 194

15 To a solution of t-butyl 3-methoxy-4-methoxycarbonylcinnamate (23.5 g) in anhydrous dichloromethane (100 ml) is added trifluoroacetic acid (50 ml) under ice-cooling, and the mixture is stirred at room temperature overnight. The reaction solution is concentrated under reduced pressure to remove the solvent, and the residue is crystallized from ethanol to give 3-methoxy-4-methoxycarbonylcinnamic acid (8.35 g).

20

White powder

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>+DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 3.88 (3H, s), 3.94 (3H, s), 6.50 (1H, d, J=16Hz), 7.13 (1H, s), 7.15 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.62 (1H, d, J=16Hz), 7.78 (1H, d, J=8Hz)

Reference Example 195

To a suspension of 3-methoxy-4-methoxycarbonylcinnamic acid (8.35 g) in acetic acid (200 ml) is added 10 % palladium-carbon (1.0 g), and the mixture is subjected to hydrogenation at room temperature. The catalyst is removed by  
5 filtration, and the filtrate is concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue is crystallized from diethyl ether-n-hexane to give 3-(3-methoxy-4-methoxy-carbonylphenyl)propionic acid (7.5 g).

White powder

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 2.70 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 2.98 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 3.88  
10 (3H, s), 3.89 (3H, s), 5.71 (1H, br), 6.75-6.9 (2H, m), 7.75 (1H, d, J=8Hz)

Reference Example 196

To a solution of dimethyl methylphosphonate (7.7 ml) in anhydrous tetrahydrofuran (100 ml) is added dropwise a 1.66M solution of n-butyl lithium in n-hexane (43 ml) at -50°C to -60°C. Subsequently, a solution of 2-[2-(3-  
15 methoxy-4-methoxycarbonylphenyl)ethyl]carbonylaminobenzothiazole (8.72 g) in anhydrous tetrahydrofuran (50 ml) is added dropwise to the reaction solution. A yellow gummy material generates in the reaction mixture, and thereto is further added 1,3-dimethyl-3,4,5,6-tetrahydro-2(1H)pyrimidinone (10 ml), and the mixture is stirred at the same temperature for two hours. To the reaction mixture is added  
20 a saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution, and the mixture is acidified with diluted hydrochloric acid. The mixture is extracted with ethyl acetate, and the extract is washed with water, dried, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue is purified by silica gel column chromatography (solvent; dichloro-methane:methanol = 100:1 → 10:1) to give dimethyl [(3-methoxy-4-[2-(2-benzo-

thiazolyl)aminocarbonyl)ethyl]benzoyl)methyl]phosphonate (6.4 g), whereby the starting compound (3.1 g) is also recovered.

Yellow powder

- $^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 2.80 (2H, t,  $J=7.5\text{Hz}$ ), 3.05 (2H, t,  $J=7.5\text{Hz}$ ), 3.73 (3H, s), 3.78 (3H, s), 3.79 (3H, s), 3.82 (2H, d,  $J=21.5\text{Hz}$ ), 6.65-6.8 (2H, m), 7.25-7.45 (2H, m), 7.60 (1H, d,  $J=8.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.64 (1H, d,  $J=7.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.82 (1H, dd,  $J=1\text{Hz}$ ,  $J=7.5\text{Hz}$ ), 11.49 (1H, br)

Reference Example 197

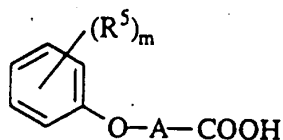
- Dimethyl methylphosphonate (3.9 ml), 1.65M n-butyl lithium (22 ml) and 2-(4-ethoxycarbonyl-1-piperidiny)carbonylaminobenzothiazole (4.0 g) are treated in the same manner as in Reference Example 196 to give dimethyl [1-(2-benzothiazolyl)aminocarbonyl)-4-piperidinylcarbonylmethyl]phosphonate (2.5 g).



Pale yellow oil

- $^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.5-2.05 (4H, m), 2.75-3.1 (3H, m), 3.16 (2H, d,  $J=28\text{Hz}$ ), 3.76 (3H, s), 3.82 (3H, s), 4.1-4.35 (2H, m), 7.15-7.45 (2H, m), 7.57 (1H, d,  $J=7.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.74 (1H, d,  $J=8\text{Hz}$ ), 10.04 (1H, br)

Using the suitable starting compounds, the compounds as listed in Table 36-1 are obtained in the same manner as in Reference Example 1.

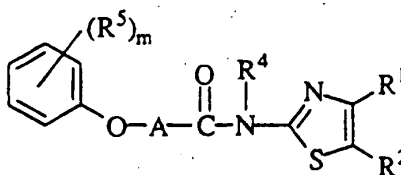
Table 36-1



Ref. Ex. No.	R <sup>5</sup> (substitution position)	m	A	M.p. (°C) or NMR (Salt)	Crystalline form (Solvent for recrystallization)
198	-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>3</sub> (2) -OCH <sub>3</sub> (5)	2	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	NMR (11) (Free)	White powder
199	-CH <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>3</sub> (2) -OCH <sub>3</sub> (5)	2	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	111.8-112.5 (Free)	White powder (Ethyl acetate)
200	-CH <sub>3</sub> (2) -OCH <sub>3</sub> (3)	2	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	NMR (17) (Free)	Yellow powder
201	-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>3</sub> (2) -OCH <sub>3</sub> (3)	2	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	NMR (18) (Free)	White powder
202	-OCH <sub>3</sub> (3)	1	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\   \\ -\text{CH}- \end{array}$	93-95 (Free)	White powder (Diethyl ether-n-hexane)
203	 (2,3)	2	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	152-154 (Free)	Colorless needles
204	 (2,3)	2	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	122-123 (Free)	White powder
205	-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>3</sub> (2) -OCH <sub>3</sub> (5)	2	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	95-98 (Free)	White powder
206	-CH(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> (2) -OCH <sub>3</sub> (5)	2	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	NMR (50) (Free)	White powder
207	-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>5</sub> CH <sub>3</sub> (2) -OCH <sub>3</sub> (5)	2	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	NMR (51) (Free)	White powder
208	-CH <sub>3</sub> (2) -OCH <sub>3</sub> (5)	2	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	NMR (55) (Free)	White powder
209	-OCH <sub>3</sub> (2, 5)	2	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	NMR (60) (Free)	White powder
210	-OC <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>5</sub> (2) -OCH <sub>3</sub> (5)	2	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	NMR (62) (Free)	White powder

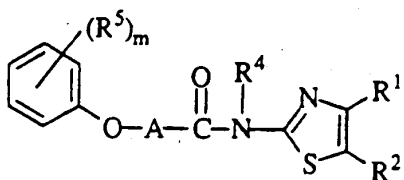
Using the suitable starting compounds, the compounds as listed in Tables 36-2 to 36-9 are obtained in the same manner as Reference Example 2.

Table 36-2



Ref. Ex. No.	R <sup>5</sup> (substitution position)	m	A	R <sup>4</sup>	R <sup>1</sup> and R <sup>2</sup>	M.p. (°C) or NMR (salt)	Crystalline form (solvent for recrystal.)
211	-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>3</sub> (2) -OCH <sub>3</sub> (5)	2	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	H		130.0-130.3 (Free)	Yellow powder (Ethyl acetate-n-hexane)
212	-CH <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>3</sub> (2) -OCH <sub>3</sub> (5)	2	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	H		193-196 (Free)	Pale yellow needles (Ethyl acetate-n-hexane)
213	-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>3</sub> (2) -OCH <sub>3</sub> (3)	2	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	H		NMR (19) (Free)	Yellow powder
214	-CH <sub>3</sub> (2) -OCH <sub>3</sub> (3)	2	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	H		NMR (39) (Free)	Yellow powder
215	-OCH <sub>3</sub> (3)	1	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	H		190-191 (Free)	Pale yellow powder
216	-OCH <sub>3</sub> (3)	1		H		NMR (42) (Free)	Orange oil
217	 (2,3)	2	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	H		148-149 (Free)	Pale yellow powder (Ethanol-n-hexane)

Table 36-3










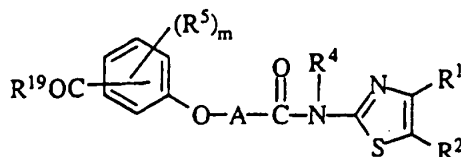
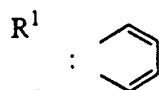
Ref. Ex. No.	R <sup>5</sup> (substitution position)	m	A	R <sup>4</sup>	R <sup>1</sup> and R <sup>2</sup>	M.p. (°C) or NMR (salt)	Crystalline form (solvent for recrystal.)
218	 (2,3)	2	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	H		126-128 (Free)	Pale yellow powder (Ethanol-n- hexane)
219	-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>3</sub> (2) -OCH <sub>3</sub> (5)	2	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	H		140-142 (Free)	Pale orange powder (Ethanol)
220	-CH <sub>3</sub> (2) -OCH <sub>3</sub> (5)	2	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	H		NMR (52) (Free)	Yellow powder
221	-CH(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> (2) -OCH <sub>3</sub> (5)	2	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	H		NMR (53)	Pale red powder
222	-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>5</sub> CH <sub>3</sub> (2) -OCH <sub>3</sub> (5)	2	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	H		NMR (54)	White powder
223	-OCH <sub>3</sub> (2 & 5)	2	-CH <sub>2</sub> -	H		NMR (61) (Free)	Pale brown powder

Table 36-4



## Reference Example 224

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>2</sup>R<sup>19</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)R<sup>5</sup>: -OCH<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub> (3-position)

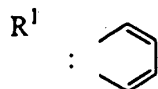
M.p. 197.0-197.5°C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-dimethylformamide

Form: Free

## Reference Example 225

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>2</sup>R<sup>19</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)R<sup>5</sup>: -OCH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub> (3-position)

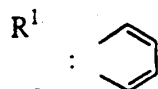
M.p. 130-132°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-n-hexane

Form: Free

## Reference Example 226

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>2</sup>R<sup>19</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)R<sup>5</sup>: -O-C<sub>4</sub>H<sub>8</sub> (3-position)

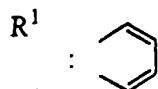
M.p. 131.5-132.5°C

Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: n-Hexane-ethyl acetate-dichloromethane

Form: Free

## Reference Example 227

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>2</sup>R<sup>19</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)R<sup>5</sup>: -C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub> (3-position)

M.p. 169.9-170.3°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

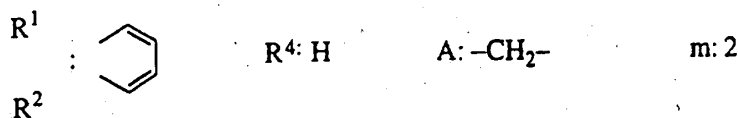
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-n-hexane

Form: Free



Table 36-5

## Reference Example 228



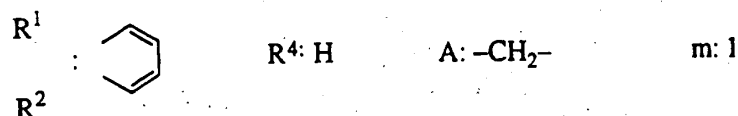
$R^{19}$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (4-position)

$R^5$ :  $-(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}_3$  (2-position) &  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (3-position)

M.p. 147.0-147.5°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-n-hexane      Form: Free

## Reference Example 229

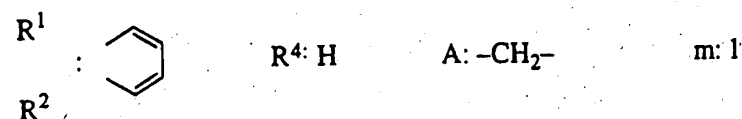


$R^{19}$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (4-position)       $R^5$ :  (3-position)

M.p. 142.0-143.0°C      Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-n-hexane      Form: Free

## Reference Example 230

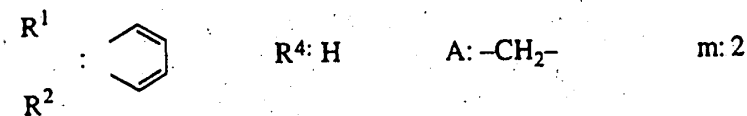


$R^{19}$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (4-position)       $R^5$ :  $-\text{SCH}_3$  (3-position)

NMR (22)      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: Free

## Reference Example 231



$R^{19}$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (4-position)

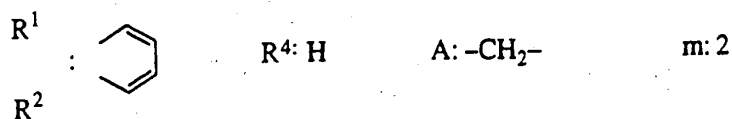
$R^5$ :  $-(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}_3$  (2-position) &  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (3-position)

NMR (27)      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: Free

Table 36-6

## Reference Example 232



$R^{19}$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (4-position)

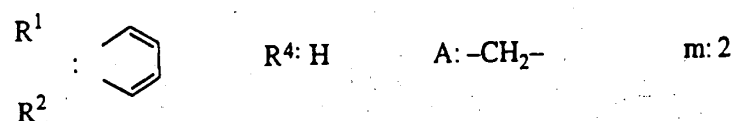
$R^5$ :  $-\text{CH}_3$  (2-position) &  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (3-position)

NMR (35)

Crystalline form: Orange powder

Form: Free

## Reference Example 233



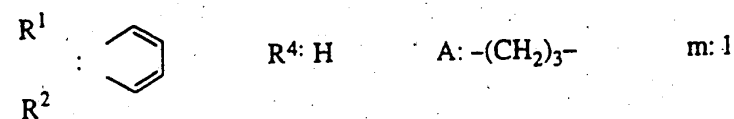
$R^{19}$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (4-position)

$R^5$ :  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$  (2-position) &  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (3-position)

NMR (36)

Crystalline form: Orange powder

## Reference Example 234



$R^{19}$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (4-position)

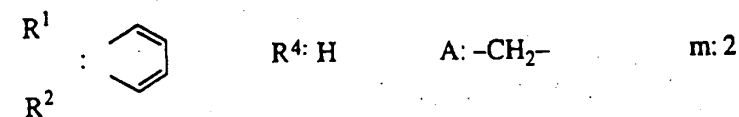
$R^5$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (3-position)

M.p. 186-188°C

Crystalline form: White powder

Form: Free

## Reference Example 235



$R^{19}$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (4-position)

$R^5$ :  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$  (2-position) &  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (5-position)

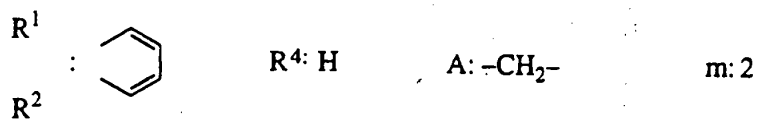
M.p. 187-189°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: Free

Table 36-7

## Reference Example 236



$R^{19}$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (4-position)

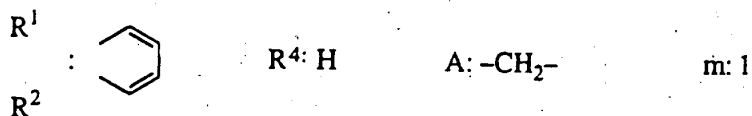
$R^5$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (2-position) &  $-\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$  (3-position)

NMR (46)

Crystalline form: White powder

Form: Free

## Reference Example 237



$R^{19}$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (4-position)

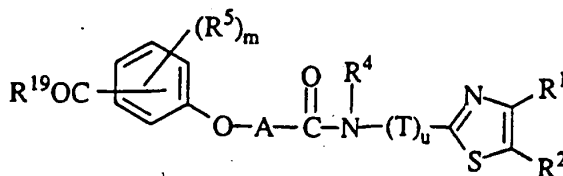
$R^5$ :  $-\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$  (2-position)

NMR (65)

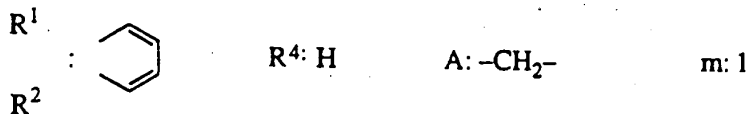
Crystalline form: White powder

Form: Free

Table 36-8



## Reference Example 238



$R^{19}$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (4-position)       $R^5$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (3-position)

T:  $-\text{CH}_2-$

u: 1

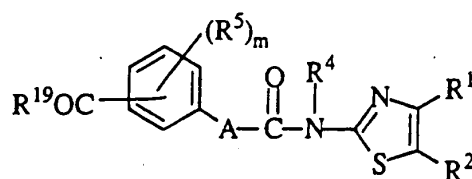
NMR (48)

Crystalline form: White powder

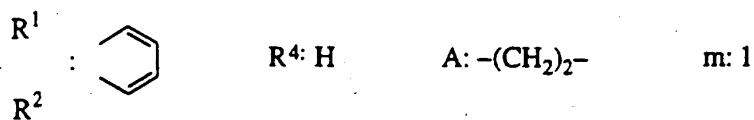
Form: Free

189

Table 36-9



## Reference Example 239



$R^2$   
 $R^{19}$ :  $-OCH_3$  (4-position)
  $R^5$ : H  
 NMR (73) Crystalline form: Yellow powder  
 Form: Free

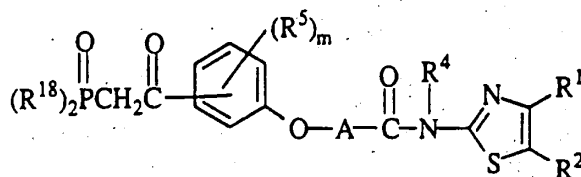
## Reference Example 240



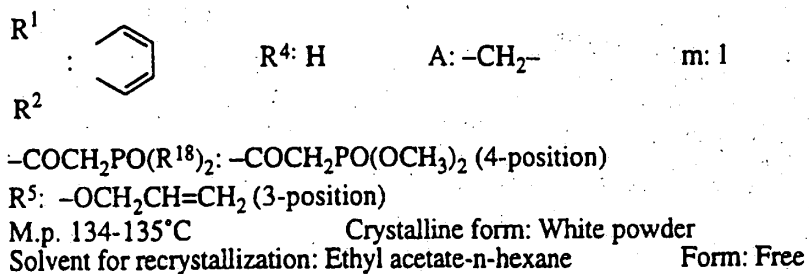
$R^2$   
 $R^{19}$ :  $-OCH_3$  (4-position)  
 $R^5$ :  $-OCH_3$  (3-position)  
 NMR (75) Crystalline form: Yellow powder  
 Form: Free

Using the suitable starting compounds, the compounds as listed in Table 36-10 to 36-16 are obtained in the same manner as in Reference Example 3.

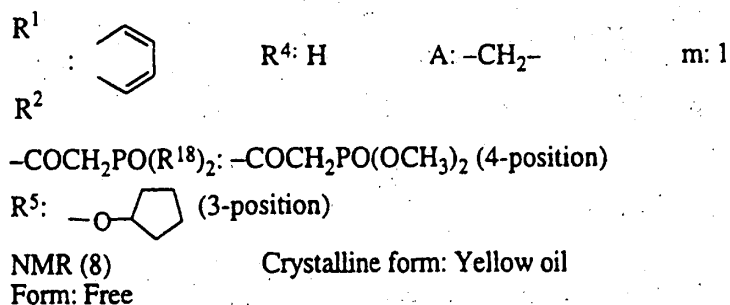
Table 36-10



## Reference Example 241



## Reference Example 242



## Reference Example 243

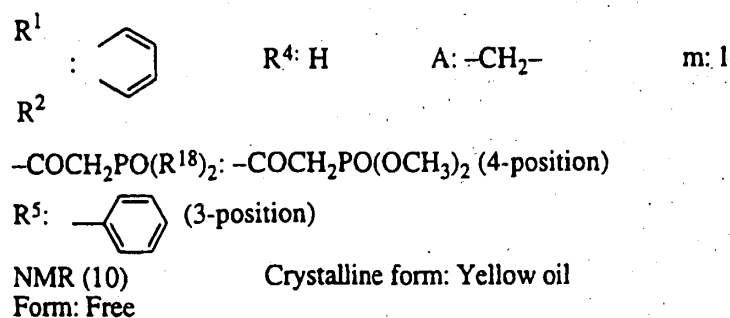
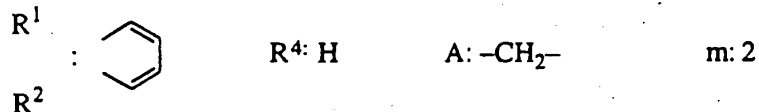


Table 36-11

## Reference Example 244



$-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{R}^{18})_2$ :  $-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{OCH}_3)_2$  (4-position)

$\text{R}^5$ :  $-(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}_3$  (2-position) &  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (3-position)

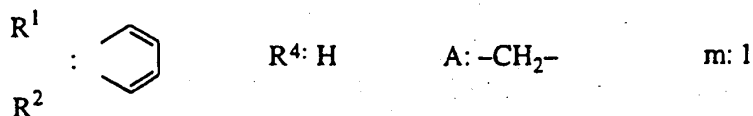
M.p. 156.5-157.4 °C

Crystalline form: White needles

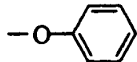
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-n-hexane

Form: Free

## Reference Example 245



$-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{R}^{18})_2$ :  $-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{OCH}_3)_2$  (4-position)

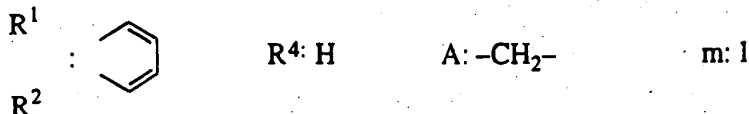
$\text{R}^5$ :  (3-position)

NMR (16)

Crystalline form: Yellow amorphous

Form: Free

## Reference Example 246



$-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{R}^{18})_2$ :  $-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{OCH}_3)_2$  (4-position)

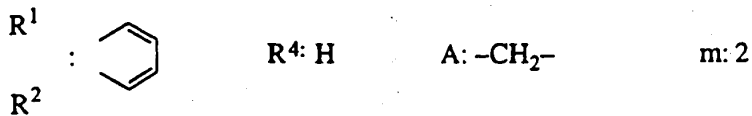
$\text{R}^5$ :  $-\text{SCH}_3$  (3-position)

NMR (23)

Crystalline form: Pale brown powder

Form: Free

## Reference Example 247



$-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{R}^{18})_2$ :  $-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{OCH}_3)_2$  (4-position)

$\text{R}^5$ :  $-(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}_3$  (2-position) &  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (3-position)

NMR (28)

Crystalline form: White powder

Form: Free

Table 36-12

## Reference Example 248



$-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{R}^{18})_2$ :  $-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{OCH}_3)_2$  (4-position)

$\text{R}^5$ :  $-\text{CH}_3$  (2-position) &  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (3-position)

NMR (37)      Crystalline form: Pale red powder

Form: Free

## Reference Example 249



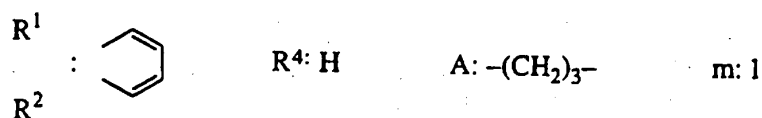
$-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{R}^{18})_2$ :  $-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{OCH}_3)_2$  (4-position)

$\text{R}^5$ :  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$  (2-position) &  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (3-position)

NMR (38)      Crystalline form: Pale red powder

Form: Free

## Reference Example 250



$-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{R}^{18})_2$ :  $-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{OCH}_3)_2$  (4-position)

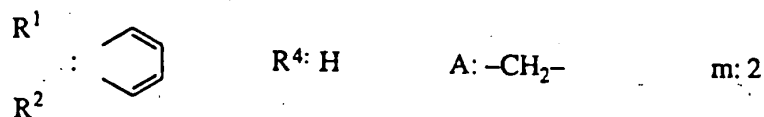
$\text{R}^5$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (3-position)

M.p. 140-142°C      Crystalline form: Colorless prisms

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol

Form: Free

## Reference Example 251



$-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{R}^{18})_2$ :  $-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{OCH}_3)_2$  (4-position)

$\text{R}^5$ :  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$  (2-position) &  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (5-position)


M.p. 125-128°C      Crystalline form: Pale brown prisms

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-n-hexane


Form: Free

Table 36-13


## Reference Example 252

$R^1$  :   $R^4$ : H      A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$       m: 2  
 $R^2$  :  
 $-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{R}^{18})_2$ :  $-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{OCH}_3)_2$  (4-position)  
 $\text{R}^5$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (2-position) &  $-\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$  (3-position)  
 NMR (47)      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder      Form: Free


## Reference Example 253

$R^1$  :   $R^4$ : H      A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$       m: 2  
 $R^2$  :  
 $-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{R}^{18})_2$ :  $-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{OCH}_3)_2$  (4-position)  
 $\text{R}^5$ :  $-\text{Br}$  (2-position) &  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (5-position)  
 M.p. 196-199°C      Crystalline form: White powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol      Form: Free

## Reference Example 254

$R^1$  :   $R^4$ : H      A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$       m: 1  
 $R^2$  :  
 $-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{R}^{18})_2$ :  $-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{OCH}_3)_2$  (4-position)  
 $\text{R}^5$ :  $-\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$  (2-position)  
 NMR (66)      Crystalline form: Yellow oil      Form: Free

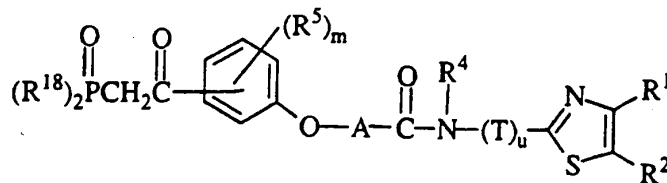
## Reference Example 254A

$R^1$  :   $R^4$ : H      A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$       m: 1  
 $R^2$  :  
 $-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{R}^{18})_2$ :  $-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{OCH}_3)_2$  (4-position)  
 $\text{R}^5$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (2-position)  
 NMR (77)      Crystalline form: White powder      Form: Free

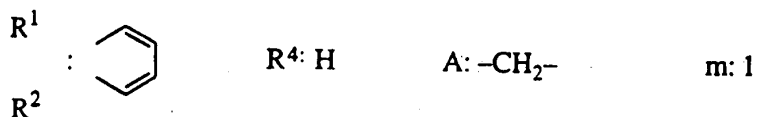


194

Table 36-14



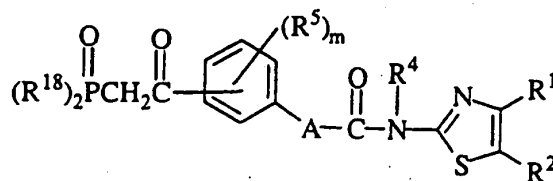
## Reference Example 255



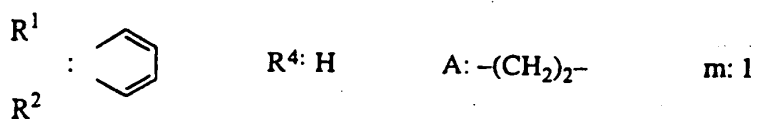
$-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{R}^{18})_2$ :  $-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{OCH}_3)_2$  (4-position)

$\text{R}^5$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (3-position)  $T$ :  $-\text{CH}_2-$   $u$ : 1  
 NMR (49) Crystalline form: Brown oil Form: Free

Table 36-15



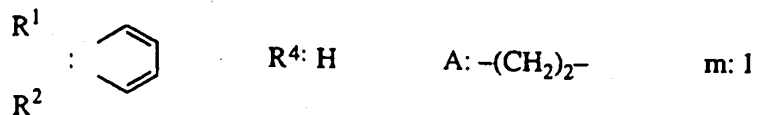
## Reference Example 256



$-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{R}^{18})_2$ :  $-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{OCH}_3)_2$  (4-position)

$\text{R}^5$ : H  
 NMR (74) Crystalline form: Pale brown oil Form: Free

## Reference Example 257

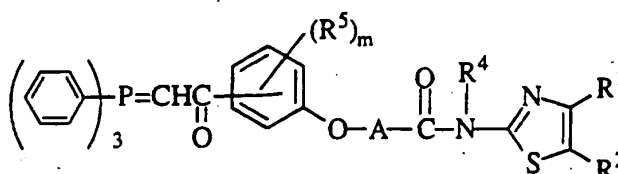


$-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{R}^{18})_2$ :  $-\text{COCH}_2\text{PO}(\text{OCH}_3)_2$  (4-position)


$\text{R}^5$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (3-position)  
 NMR (76) Crystalline form: Yellow powder Form: Free

Using the suitable starting compounds, the compounds as listed in Table 36-16 are obtained in the same manner as in Reference Example 5 or 6.


Table 36-16





## Reference Example 258

$R^1$  :   $R^4$ : H      A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$       m: 2  
 $R^2$  :  
 $R^5$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (2 & 3-positions)  
 NMR (67)      Crystalline form: Pale yellow amorphous      Form: Free


## Reference Example 259

$R^1$  :   $R^4$ : H      A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$       m: 1  
 $R^2$  :  
 $R^5$ :  $-\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Cl}$  (3-position)  
 NMR (68)      Crystalline form: Colorless amorphous      Form: Free

## Reference Example 260

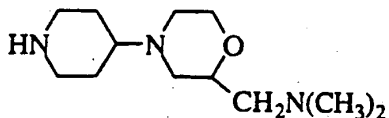
$R^1$  :   $R^4$ : H      A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$       m: 1  
 $R^2$  :  
 $R^5$ :  $-\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{N}$   O (3-position)  
 NMR (69)      Crystalline form: Pale yellow amorphous      Form: Free

## Reference Example 261

$R^1$  :   $R^4$ : H      A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$       m: 1  
 $R^2$  :  
 $R^5$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (3-position)  
 NMR (70)      Crystalline form: Dark brown amorphous      Form: Free

Using the suitable starting compounds, the compounds as listed in Table 36-17 are obtained in the same manner as in Reference Example 7, 8 or 9.

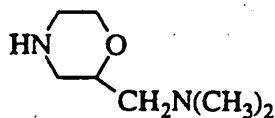
Table 36-17

Reference Example 262

Colorless oil

Form: Free

NMR (71)

Reference Example 263

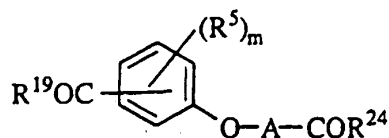
Pale yellow oil

Form: Free

NMR (72)

Using the suitable starting compounds, the compounds as listed in Tables 36-18 to 36-21 are obtained in the same manner as in Reference Example 187.


Table 36-18



## Reference Example 264

R<sup>5</sup>: -OH (3-position)      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-      m: 1  
 -COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)      R<sup>24</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub>  
 NMR (1)      Crystalline form: White solid      Form: Free


## Reference Example 265

R<sup>5</sup>: -OCH<sub>2</sub>- (3-position)      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-      m: 1  
 -COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)      R<sup>24</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub>  
 NMR (2)      Crystalline form: White solid      Form: Free


## Reference Example 266

R<sup>5</sup>: -OCH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub> (3-position)      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-      m: 1  
 -COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)      R<sup>24</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub>  
 NMR (4)      Crystalline form: Colorless oil      Form: Free

## Reference Example 267

R<sup>5</sup>:  (3-position)      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-      m: 1  
 -COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)      R<sup>24</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub>  
 NMR (6)      Crystalline form: Yellow oil      Form: Free

## Reference Example 268

R<sup>5</sup>:  (3-position)      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-      m: 1  
 -COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)      R<sup>24</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub>  
 NMR (9)      Crystalline form: Colorless oil      Form: Free

## Reference Example 269

R<sup>5</sup>: -CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub> (2-position) & -OH (3-position)  
 A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-      m: 2  
 -COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)      R<sup>24</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub>  
 M.p. 93.1-93.8°C      Crystalline form: Colorless needles  
 Solvent for recrystallization: n-Hexane-ethyl acetate      Form: Free

## Reference Example 270


R<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> (2-position) & -OH (3-position)  
 A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-      m: 2  
 -COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)      R<sup>24</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub>  
 NMR (12)      Crystalline form: White solid      Form: Free

Table 36-19

## Reference Example 271

$R^5$ :  $-(CH_2)_2CH_3$  (2-position) &  $-OCH_3$  (3-position)  
 $A$ :  $-CH_2-$  m: 2  
 $-COR^{19}$ :  $-COOCH_3$  (4-position)  $R^{24}$ :  $-OCH_3$   
 NMR (13) Crystalline form: Colorless oil Form: Free

## Reference Example 272

$R^5$ :  $-O-$  (3-position)  $A$ :  $-CH_2-$  m: 1  
 $-COR^{19}$ :  $-COOCH_3$  (4-position)  $R^{24}$ :  $-OCH_3$   
 NMR (15) Crystalline form: Colorless oil Form: Free

## Reference Example 273

$R^5$ :  $-SCH_3$  (3-position)  $A$ :  $-CH_2-$  m: 1  
 $-COR^{19}$ :  $-COOCH_3$  (4-position)  $R^{24}$ :  $-OCH_3$   
 NMR (20) Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder Form: Free

## Reference Example 274

$R^5$ :  $-(CH_2)_3CH_3$  (2-position) &  $-OH$  (3-position)  
 $A$ :  $-CH_2-$  m: 2  
 $-COR^{19}$ :  $-COOCH_3$  (4-position)  $R^{24}$ :  $-OCH_3$   
 NMR (24) Crystalline form: Pale brown powder Form: Free

## Reference Example 275

$R^5$ :  $-(CH_2)_3CH_3$  (2-position) &  $-OCH_3$  (3-position)  
 $A$ :  $-CH_2-$  m: 2  
 $-COR^{19}$ :  $-COOCH_3$  (4-position)  $R^{24}$ :  $-OCH_3$   
 NMR (25) Crystalline form: White powder Form: Free

## Reference Example 276

$R^5$ :  $-CH_2CH_3$  (2-position) &  $-OH$  (3-position)  
 $A$ :  $-CH_2-$  m: 2  
 $-COR^{19}$ :  $-COOCH_3$  (4-position)  $R^{24}$ :  $-OCH_3$   
 NMR (29) Crystalline form: White powder Form: Free

## Reference Example 277

$R^5$ :  $-CH_3$  (2-position) &  $-OH$  (3-position)  
 $A$ :  $-CH_2-$  m: 2  
 $-COR^{19}$ :  $-COOCH_3$  (4-position)  $R^{24}$ :  $-OCH_3$   
 NMR (30) Crystalline form: White powder Form: Free

Table 36-20

## Reference Example 278

R<sup>5</sup>: -CH<sub>3</sub> (2-position) & -OCH<sub>3</sub> (3-position)A: -CH<sub>2</sub>- m: 2-COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)R<sup>24</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub>

NMR (31) Crystalline form: Colorless needles Form: Free

## Reference Example 279

R<sup>5</sup>: -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> (2-position) & -OCH<sub>3</sub> (3-position)A: -CH<sub>2</sub>- m: 2-COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)R<sup>24</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub>

NMR (32) Crystalline form: Colorless oil Form: Free

## Reference Example 280

R<sup>5</sup>: -OH (3-position)A: -CH<sub>2</sub>- m: 1-COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)R<sup>24</sup>: -OC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>

NMR (40) Crystalline form: Colorless oil Form: Free

## Reference Example 281

R<sup>5</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub> (3-position)A: -CH<sub>2</sub>- m: 1-COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)R<sup>24</sup>: -OC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>

NMR (41) Crystalline form: Pale brown powder Form: Free

## Reference Example 282

R<sup>5</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub> (3-position)A: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>- m: 1-COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)R<sup>24</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub>

M.p. 48-50°C Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-n-hexane Form: Free

## Reference Example 283

R<sup>5</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub> (2-position) & -NH<sub>2</sub> (3-position)A: -CH<sub>2</sub>- m: 2-COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)R<sup>24</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub>

NMR (44) Crystalline form: Yellow oil Form: Free

## Reference Example 284

R<sup>5</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub> (2-position) & -N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub> (3-position)A: -CH<sub>2</sub>- m: 2-COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)R<sup>24</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub>

NMR (45) Crystalline form: Brown oil Form: Free

Table 36-21

## Reference Example 285

R<sup>5</sup>: -Br (2-position) & -OH (5-position)A: -CH<sub>2</sub>- m: 2-COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)R<sup>24</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub>

NMR (56) Crystalline form: White powder Form: Free

## Reference Example 286

R<sup>5</sup>: -Br (2-position) & -OCH<sub>3</sub> (5-position)A: -CH<sub>2</sub>- m: 2-COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)R<sup>24</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub>


NMR (57) Crystalline form: White powder Form: Free

## Reference Example 287

R<sup>5</sup>: -NH<sub>2</sub> (2-position) & -OCH<sub>3</sub> (5-position)A: -CH<sub>2</sub>- m: 2-COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)R<sup>24</sup>: -OC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>

NMR (59) Crystalline form: White powder Form: Free

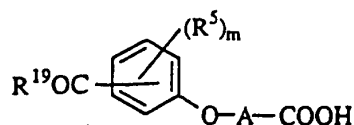
## Reference Example 288

R<sup>5</sup>: -N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub> (2-position)A: -CH<sub>2</sub>- m: 1-COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)R<sup>24</sup>: -OCH<sub>2</sub>-

NMR (63) Crystalline form: Yellow oil Form: Free

Using the suitable starting compounds, the compounds as listed in Tables 36-22 to 36-23 are obtained in the same manner as in Reference Example 1 or 194.

Table 36-22



## Reference Example 289

$\text{R}^5$ : (3-position)

$\text{A}$ :  $-\text{CH}_2-$   $m$ : 1  $-\text{COR}^{19}$ :  $-\text{COOCH}_3$  (4-position)  
 NMR (3) Crystalline form: White solid Form: Free

## Reference Example 290

$\text{R}^5$ :  $-\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$  (3-position)

$\text{A}$ :  $-\text{CH}_2-$   $m$ : 1  $-\text{COR}^{19}$ :  $-\text{COOCH}_3$  (4-position)  
 NMR (5) Crystalline form: White solid Form: Free

## Reference Example 291

$\text{R}^5$ : (3-position)

$\text{A}$ :  $-\text{CH}_2-$   $m$ : 1  $-\text{COR}^{19}$ :  $-\text{COOCH}_3$  (4-position)  
 NMR (7) Crystalline form: Pale yellow oil Form: Free

## Reference Example 292

$\text{R}^5$ : (3-position)

$\text{A}$ :  $-\text{CH}_2-$   $m$ : 1  $-\text{COR}^{19}$ :  $-\text{COOCH}_3$  (4-position)  
 M.p. 124.5-126.0°C Crystalline form: White powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate Form: Free

## Reference Example 293

$\text{R}^5$ :  $-(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}_3$  (2-position) &  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (3-position)

$\text{A}$ :  $-\text{CH}_2-$   $m$ : 2  $-\text{COR}^{19}$ :  $-\text{COOCH}_3$  (4-position)  
 NMR (14) Crystalline form: White solid Form: Free

## Reference Example 294

$\text{R}^5$ : (3-position)

$\text{A}$ :  $-\text{CH}_2-$   $m$ : 1  $-\text{COR}^{19}$ :  $-\text{COOCH}_3$  (4-position)  
 M.p. 131.5-132.0°C Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate Form: Free

## Reference Example 295

$\text{R}^5$ :  $-\text{SCH}_3$  (3-position)  $\text{A}$ :  $-\text{CH}_2-$   $m$ : 1

$-\text{COR}^{19}$ :  $-\text{COOCH}_3$  (4-position) NMR (21)  
 Crystalline form: White powder Form: Free



Table 36-23

---

Reference Example 296R<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> (2-position) & -OCH<sub>3</sub> (3-position)A: -CH<sub>2</sub>- m: 2 -COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)NMR (26) Crystalline form: White powder Form: Free

---

## Reference Example 297

R<sup>5</sup>: -CH<sub>3</sub> (2-position) & -OCH<sub>3</sub> (3-position)A: -CH<sub>2</sub>- m: 2 -COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)NMR (33) Crystalline form: White powder

---

## Reference Example 298

R<sup>5</sup>: -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> (2-position) & -OCH<sub>3</sub> (3-position)A: -CH<sub>2</sub>- m: 2 -COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)NMR (34) Crystalline form: White powder

---

## Reference Example 299

R<sup>5</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub> (3-position)A: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>- m: 1 -COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)

M.p. 89-90°C Crystalline form: Colorless needles

Solvent for recrystallization: Water-ethanol Form: Free

---

## Reference Example 300

R<sup>5</sup>: -CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub> (2-position) & -OCH<sub>3</sub> (5-position)A: -CH<sub>2</sub>- m: 2 -COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)NMR (43) Crystalline form: White powder Form: Free

---

## Reference Example 301

R<sup>5</sup>: -Br (2-position) & -OCH<sub>3</sub> (5-position)A: -CH<sub>2</sub>- m: 2 -COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)NMR (58) Crystalline form: White powder Form: Free

---

## Reference Example 302

R<sup>5</sup>: -N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub> (2-position)A: -CH<sub>2</sub>- m: 1 -COR<sup>19</sup>: -COOCH<sub>3</sub> (4-position)NMR (64) Crystalline form: White amorphous Form: Free

---

Reference Example 303

Using the suitable starting compounds, the following compounds are obtained in the same manner as in Reference Example 6.

Methyl α-(2,3-dihydroxy-4-acetylphenoxy)acetate:

White powder

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{DMSO-d}_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 2.56 (3H, s), 3.69 (3H, s), 4.91 (2H, s), 6.49 (1H, d,  $J=9.1\text{Hz}$ ), 7.35 (1H, d,  $J=9.1\text{Hz}$ ), 8.79 (1H, s), 12.31 (1H, s)

Methyl  $\alpha$ -(2,3-dimethoxy-4-acetylphenoxy)acetate:

White solid

5  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 2.60 (3H, s), 3.81 (3H, s), 3.93 (3H, s), 3.99 (3H, s), 4.75 (2H, s), 6.57 (1H, d,  $J=8.9\text{Hz}$ ), 7.48 (1H, d,  $J=8.9\text{Hz}$ )

Methyl  $\alpha$ -[2,3-dimethoxy-4-(2-bromoacetyl)phenoxy]acetate:

Colorless oil

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 3.81 (3H, s), 3.93 (3H, s), 4.07 (3H, s), 4.57 (2H, s), 10 4.76 (2H, s), 6.58 (1H, d,  $J=8.9\text{Hz}$ ), 7.54 (1H, d,  $J=8.9\text{Hz}$ )

(2,3-Dimethoxy-4-methoxycarbonylmethoxybenzoyl)methylenetriphenylphosphorane:

Colorless amorphous

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 3.77 (3H, s), 3.94 (6H, s), 4.61 (1H, brd,  $J=27.8\text{Hz}$ ), 15 4.70 (2H, s), 6.56 (1H, d,  $J=8.8\text{Hz}$ ), 7.38-7.80 (16H, m)

Ethyl  $\alpha$ -[3-(3-chloropropoxy)-4-acetylphenoxy]acetate:

Yellow oil

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.31 (3H, t,  $J=7\text{Hz}$ ), 2.2-2.5 (2H, m), 2.57 (3H, s), 3.77 (2H, t,  $J=6.5\text{Hz}$ ), 4.30 (2H, t,  $J=7\text{Hz}$ ), 4.66 (2H, s), 6.47 (1H, dd,  $J=2\text{H}$ , 20  $J=8.5\text{Hz}$ ), 6.57 (1H, d,  $J=2\text{Hz}$ ), 7.81 (1H, d,  $J=8.5\text{Hz}$ )

Ethyl  $\alpha$ -[3-(3-chloropropoxy)-4-(2-bromoacetyl)phenoxy]acetate:

Colorless oil

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.31 (3H, t,  $J=7\text{Hz}$ ), 2.25-2.55 (2H, m), 3.55-3.85

(2H, m), 4.15-4.4 (4H, m), 4.50 (2H, s), 4.68 (2H, s), 6.51 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, J=9Hz), 6.59 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 7.89 (1H, d, J=9Hz)

[2-(3-Chloropropoxy)-4-ethoxycarbonylmethoxybenzoyl]methylenetriphenylphosphorane:

5 Pale brown amorphous

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.31 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 2.2-2.7 (2H, m), 3.67 (2H, d, J=5.5Hz), 4.27 (2H, q, J=7Hz), 4.2-4.4 (2H, m), 4.66 (2H, s), 6.20 (1H, br), 6.47 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, J=9Hz), 6.57 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 7.4-8.0 (16H, m)

(2,3-Dimethoxy-4-carboxymethoxybenzoyl)methyltriphenylphosphonium

10 chloride:

Colorless prisms (recrystallized from diluted hydrochloric acid)

M.p. 137-151°C (decomposed)

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{DMSO-d}_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 3.78 (3H, s), 3.81 (3H, s), 4.69 (2H, s), 6.63 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.28 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.50-7.80 (15H, m)

15 [2-(3-Chloropropoxy)-4-carboxymethoxybenzoyl]methyltriphenylphosphonium chloride:

Pale yellow amorphous

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 2.1-2.45 (2H, m), 3.63 (2H, t, J=6.5Hz), 4.04 (2H, t, J=5Hz), 4.49 (2H, s), 6.35 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, J=7Hz), 6.48 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 7.35-7.9 (16H, m)

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  spectrum (NMR (1) to NMR (77)) as described in Tables 36-1 to 36-23 are as follows:

NMR (1) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 3.81 (3H, s), 3.91 (3H, s), 4.65 (2H, s), 6.39 (1H, d,

J=2.6Hz), 6.45 (1H, dd, J=2.6Hz, J=8.8Hz), 7.73 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 10.97 (1H, s)

NMR (2) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 3.80 (3H, s), 3.87 (3H, s), 4.64 (2H, s), 5.16 (2H, s),  
6.42 (1H, dd, J=2.4Hz, J=8.7Hz), 6.60 (1H, d, J=2.4Hz), 7.30-7.43 (3H, m), 7.49-  
7.52 (2H, m), 7.85 (1H, d, J=8.7Hz)

5 NMR (3) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 3.76 (3H, s), 4.76 (2H, s), 5.19 (2H, s), 6.54 (1H,  
dd, J=2.3Hz, J=8.7Hz), 6.76 (1H, d, J=2.3Hz), 7.27-7.44 (3H, m), 7.49-7.53 (2H, m),  
7.69 (1H, d, J=8.7Hz), 13.07 (1H, brs)

NMR (4) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 3.82 (3H, s), 3.86 (3H, s), 4.58-4.62 (2H, m), 4.66  
(2H, s), 5.28-5.58 (2H, m), 5.98-6.19 (1H, m), 6.41 (1H, dd, J=2.4Hz, J=8.7Hz), 6.54  
10 (1H, d, J=2.4Hz), 7.83 (1H, d, J=8.7Hz)

NMR (5) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 3.74 (3H, s), 4.59-4.63 (2H, m), 4.75 (2H, s),  
5.21-5.29 (2H, m), 5.93-6.09 (1H, m), 6.52 (1H, dd, J=2.3Hz, J=8.7Hz), 6.64 (1H, d,  
J=2.3Hz), 7.67 (1H, d, J=8.7Hz), 13.05 (1H, brs)

NMR (6) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.52-2.00 (8H, m), 3.82 (3H, s), 3.84 (3H, s), 4.66  
15 (2H, s), 4.73-4.84 (1H, m), 6.37 (1H, dd, J=2.4Hz, J=8.7Hz), 6.53 (1H, d, J=2.4Hz),  
7.79 (1H, d, J=8.7Hz)

NMR (7) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.52-2.03 (8H, m), 3.84 (3H, s), 4.71 (2H, s), 4.30-  
5.20 (2H, m), 6.40 (1H, dd, J=2.4Hz, J=8.7Hz), 6.54 (1H, d, J=2.4Hz), 7.80 (1H, d,  
J=8.7Hz)

20 NMR (8) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.65-2.12 (8H, m), 3.74 (3H, s), 3.78 (3H, s), 3.70-  
3.88 (2H, m), 4.79 (2H, s), 4.83-4.94 (1H, m), 6.40-6.62 (2H, m), 7.32-7.42 (1H, m),  
7.44-7.52 (1H, m), 7.79-7.90 (3H, m), 8.31-10.20 (1H, brs)

NMR (9) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 3.61 (3H, s), 3.81 (3H, s), 4.70 (2H, s), 6.83-6.97

(2H, m), 7.22-7.33 (2H, m), 7.33-7.45 (3H, m), 7.85 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz)

NMR (10) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 3.50-3.70 (8H, m), 4.79 (2H, s), 6.77-6.97 (2H, m),  
7.09-7.49 (8H, m), 7.58-7.89 (2H, m), 9.97-10.81 (1H, brs)

NMR (11) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 0.88 (3H, t, J=7.2Hz), 1.26-1.47 (2H, m), 1.47-

5 1.66 (2H, m), 2.56 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 3.78 (3H, s), 4.66 (2H, s), 6.33 (1H, d, J=2.4Hz),  
6.46 (1H, dd, J=2.4Hz, J=8.3Hz), 7.05 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz)

NMR (12) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 0.92 (3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.48-1.70 (2H, m), 2.65-  
2.78 (2H, m), 3.79 (3H, s), 3.90 (3H, s), 4.70 (2H, s), 6.25 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.65 (1H,  
d, J=8.9Hz), 11.08 (1H, s)

10 NMR (13) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 0.94 (3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.49-1.71 (2H, m), 2.63-  
2.77 (2H, m), 3.80 (3H, s), 3.83 (3H, s), 3.89 (3H, s), 4.70 (2H, s), 6.48 (1H, d,  
J=8.8Hz), 7.70 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz)

NMR (14) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 0.93 (3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.47-1.70 (2H, m), 2.62-  
2.76 (2H, m), 3.83 (3H, s), 3.90 (3H, s), 4.74 (2H, s), 6.51 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 7.20 (1H,  
15 brs), 7.72 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz)

NMR (15) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 3.77 (3H, s), 3.79 (3H, s), 4.59 (2H, s), 6.45 (1H, d,  
J=2.5Hz), 6.65 (1H, dd, J=2.5Hz, J=8.8Hz), 6.92-7.03 (2H, m), 7.03-7.17 (1H, m),  
7.26-7.40 (2H, m), 7.91 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz)

NMR (16) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 3.72 (3H, s), 3.77 (3H, s), 3.81 (2H, d, J=21.6Hz),  
20 4.68 (2H, s), 6.34 (1H, d, J=2.4Hz), 6.62 (1H, dd, J=2.4Hz, J=8.8Hz), 7.04-7.15 (2H,  
m), 7.15-7.47 (5H, m), 7.68-7.83 (2H, m), 7.86 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 10.65 (1H, brs)

NMR (17) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 2.02 (3H, s), 3.75 (3H, s), 4.64 (2H, s), 6.47  
(1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 6.60 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.07 (1H, t, J=8.3Hz), 12.93 (1H, brs)

NMR (18) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 0.86 (3H, t,  $J=7.2$ Hz), 1.13-1.51 (4H, m), 2.59 (2H, t,  $J=7.6$ Hz), 3.74 (3H, s), 4.63 (2H, s), 6.46 (1H, d,  $J=8.3$ Hz), 6.59 (1H, d,  $J=8.3$ Hz), 7.06 (1H, t,  $J=8.3$ Hz), 12.89 (1H, brs)

NMR (19) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 0.97 (3H, t,  $J=7.1$ Hz), 1.31-1.68 (4H, m), 2.77 (2H, t,  $J=7.0$ Hz), 3.84 (3H, s), 4.75 (2H, s), 6.51 (1H, d,  $J=8.2$ Hz), 6.64 (1H, d,  $J=8.2$ Hz), 7.14 (1H, t,  $J=8.2$ Hz), 7.26-7.39 (1H, m), 7.39-7.52 (1H, m), 7.73-7.90 (2H, m), 9.70 (1H, brs)

NMR (20) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 2.43 (3H, s), 3.82 (3H, s), 3.88 (3H, s), 4.70 (2H, s), 6.59 (1H, dd,  $J=8.8$ Hz,  $J=2.4$ Hz), 6.81 (1H, d,  $J=2.4$ Hz), 8.00 (1H, d,  $J=8.8$ Hz)

10 NMR (21) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 2.39 (3H, s), 3.77 (3H, s), 4.81 (2H, s), 6.62-6.83 (2H, m), 7.89 (1H, d,  $J=9.1$ Hz), 13.14 (1H, brs)

NMR (22) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 2.48 (3H, s), 3.90 (3H, s), 4.82 (2H, s), 6.69 (1H, dd,  $J=8.7$ Hz,  $J=2.4$ Hz), 6.86 (1H, d,  $J=2.4$ Hz), 7.36 (1H, dt,  $J=1.2$ Hz,  $J=7.7$ Hz), 7.48 (1H, dt,  $J=1.2$ Hz,  $J=7.7$ Hz), 7.84 (2H, t,  $J=7.7$ Hz), 8.05 (1H, d,  $J=8.7$ Hz), 9.91 (1H, brs)

15 NMR (23) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 2.41 (3H, s), 3.63 (2H, d,  $J=22.6$ Hz), 3.80 (6H, d,  $J=11.2$ Hz), 4.82 (2H, s), 6.71 (1H, dd,  $J=8.8$ Hz,  $J=2.4$ Hz), 6.85 (1H, d,  $J=2.4$ Hz), 7.34 (1H, dt,  $J=1.3$ Hz,  $J=9.2$ Hz), 7.47 (1H, dt,  $J=1.3$ Hz,  $J=9.2$ Hz), 7.82 (2H, t,  $J=9.2$ Hz), 8.01 (1H, d,  $J=8.8$ Hz)

20 NMR (24) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 0.93 (3H, t,  $J=7.0$ Hz), 1.19-1.62 (4H, m), 2.73 (2H, t,  $J=7.0$ Hz), 3.79 (3H, s), 3.91 (3H, s), 4.70 (2H, s), 6.27 (1H, d,  $J=9.0$ Hz), 7.67 (1H, d,  $J=9.0$ Hz), 11.07 (1H, s)

NMR (25) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 0.94 (3H, t,  $J=7.2$ Hz), 1.29-1.63 (4H, m), 2.72

(2H, t, J=7.1Hz), 3.80 (3H, s), 3.83 (3H, s), 3.89 (3H, s), 4.70 (2H, s), 6.50 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 7.72 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz)

NMR (26) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 0.88 (3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.19-1.61 (4H, m), 2.60 (2H, t, J=6.7Hz), 3.70 (3H, s), 3.78 (3H, s), 4.77 (2H, s), 6.71 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 7.60 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 13.05 (1H, brs)

NMR (27) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 0.99 (3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.37-1.71 (4H, m), 2.80 (2H, t, J=6.9Hz), 3.87 (3H, s), 3.91 (3H, s), 4.82 (2H, s), 6.66 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 7.34 (1H, dt, J=1.3Hz, J=7.7Hz), 7.46 (1H, dt, J=1.3Hz, J=7.7Hz), 7.69-7.90 (3H, m), 9.62 (1H, brs)

10 NMR (28) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.00 (3H, t, J=7.0Hz), 1.39-1.73 (4H, m), 2.78 (2H, t, J=8.0Hz), 3.76 (6H, d, J=11.4Hz), 3.79 (3H, s), 3.81 (2H, d, J=22.1Hz), 4.82 (2H, s), 6.69 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 7.34 (1H, t, J=8.6Hz), 7.46 (1H, t, J=8.6Hz), 7.57 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 7.82 (2H, t, J=8.6Hz), 9.87 (1H, brs)

NMR (29) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.14 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 2.75 (2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 3.80 (3H, s), 3.91 (3H, s), 4.71 (2H, s), 6.28 (1H, d, J=9.0Hz), 7.67 (1H, d, J=9.0Hz), 11.08 (1H, s)

NMR (30) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 2.18 (3H, s), 3.80 (3H, s), 3.91 (3H, s), 4.71 (2H, s), 6.28 (1H, d, J=9.0Hz), 7.67 (1H, d, J=9.0Hz), 11.11 (1H, s)

NMR (31) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 2.34 (3H, s), 3.81 (3H, s), 3.82 (3H, s), 3.89 (3H, s), 4.70 (2H, s), 6.51 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 7.71 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz)

20 NMR (32) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.18 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 2.76 (2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 3.80 (3H, s), 3.84 (3H, s), 3.89 (3H, s), 4.71 (2H, s), 6.51 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 7.73 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz)

NMR (33) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.10 (3H, s), 3.70 (3H, s), 3.78 (3H, s), 4.78

(2H, s), 6.72 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.59 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 13.11 (1H, brs)

NMR (34) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.08 (3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 2.62 (2H, q, J=7.4Hz), 3.72 (3H, s), 3.78 (3H, s), 4.79 (2H, s), 6.72 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.60 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 13.09 (1H, brs)

5 NMR (35) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 2.31 (3H, s), 3.85 (3H, s), 3.90 (3H, s), 4.82 (2H, s), 6.65 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 7.34 (1H, dt, J=1.2Hz, J=7.6Hz), 7.46 (1H, dt, J=1.2Hz, J=7.6Hz), 7.69-7.89 (3H, m), 9.79 (1H, brs)

NMR (36) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.27 (3H, t, J=7.6Hz), 2.83 (2H, q, J=7.6Hz), 3.87 (3H, s), 3.91 (3H, s), 4.83 (2H, s), 6.66 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 7.30 (1H, dt, J=1.3Hz, J=7.3Hz), 7.46 (1H, dt, J=1.3Hz, J=7.3Hz), 7.70-7.90 (3H, m), 9.72 (1H, brs)

10

NMR (37) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 2.33 (3H, s), 3.77 (6H, d, J=11.1Hz), 3.80 (3H, s), 3.81 (2H, d, J=22.0Hz), 4.82 (2H, s), 6.69 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 7.35 (1H, dt, J=1.3Hz, J=7.9Hz), 7.47 (1H, dt, J=1.3Hz, J=7.9Hz), 7.61 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 7.82 (2H, t, J=7.9Hz), 9.87 (1H, brs)

15 NMR (38) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.29 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 2.83 (2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 3.76 (6H, d, J=11.2Hz), 3.80 (2H, d, J=22.1Hz), 3.81 (3H, s), 4.83 (2H, s), 6.70 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 7.38 (1H, dt, J=1.4Hz, J=8.6Hz), 7.47 (1H, dt, J=1.4Hz, J=8.6Hz), 7.59 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 7.83 (2H, t, J=8.6Hz), 9.73 (1H, brs)

NMR (39) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 2.24 (3H, s), 3.85 (3H, s), 4.75 (2H, s), 6.51 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 6.63 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.14 (1H, t, J=8.3Hz), 7.29-7.40 (1H, m), 7.40-7.52 (1H, m), 7.74-7.91 (2H, m)

20

NMR (40) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.30 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 3.91 (3H, s), 4.27 (2H, q, J=7Hz), 4.63 (2H, s), 6.41 (1H, d, J=2.5Hz), 6.48 (1H, dd, J=2.5Hz, J=9Hz), 7.75 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 10.96 (1H, s)



NMR (41) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.30 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 3.86 (3H, s), 3.89 (3H, s), 4.28 (2H, q, J=7Hz), 6.43 (1H, dd, J=2.5Hz, J=8.5Hz), 6.58 (1H, d, J=2.5Hz), 7.84 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz)

NMR (42) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.69 (3H, d, J=7Hz), 3.80 (3H, s), 4.95 (1H, q, J=7Hz), 6.45-6.7 (3H, m), 7.15-7.5 (3H, m), 7.7-7.9 (2H, m), 9.77 (1H, br)

NMR (43) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 3.38 (2H, d, J=6.5Hz), 3.84 (3H, s), 3.86 (3H, s), 4.74 (2H, s), 4.95-5.15 (2H, m), 5.85-6.1 (1H, m), 6.34 (1H, s), 7.69 (1H, s), 9.28 (1H, br)

NMR (44) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 3.80 (3H, s), 3.84 (3H, s), 3.88 (3H, s), 4.73 (2H, s), 5.98 (2H, br), 6.12 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 7.59 (1H, d, J=9.1Hz)

NMR (45) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 2.88 (6H, s), 3.80 (3H, s), 3.83 (3H, s), 3.87 (3H, s), 4.71 (2H, s), 6.48 (1H, d, J=8.7Hz), 7.29 (1H, d, J=8.7Hz)

NMR (46) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 2.91 (6H, s), 3.88 (3H, s), 3.89 (3H, s), 4.80 (2H, s), 6.64 (1H, d, J=8.7Hz), 7.30-7.38 (2H, m), 7.42-7.51 (1H, m), 7.80-7.89 (2H, m), 10.24 (1H, br)

NMR (47) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 2.90 (6H, s), 3.69 (3H, s), 3.74 (2H, d, J=21.7Hz), 3.75 (3H, s), 3.90 (3H, s), 4.83 (2H, s), 6.74 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.26 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.34 (1H, t, J=9.1Hz), 7.43 (1H, t, J=9.1Hz), 7.80-7.90 (2H, m), 10.10 (1H, br)

NMR (48) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 3.86 (3H, s), 3.89 (3H, s), 4.65 (2H, s), 4.97 (1H, d, J=5.9Hz), 6.49-6.55 (2H, m), 7.34-7.54 (3H, m), 7.84-7.89 (1H, m), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7.3Hz)

NMR (49) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 3.72 (3H, s), 3.78 (3H, s), 3.79 (2H, d, J=21.7Hz), 3.92 (3H, s), 4.66 (2H, s), 4.97 (2H, d, J=5.9Hz), 6.53-6.61 (2H, m), 7.39-7.54 (3H,

211

m), 7.82-7.90 (2H, m), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz)

NMR (50) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.13 (6H, d, J=7.0Hz), 3.08-3.35 (1H, m), 3.69 (3H, s), 4.66 (2H, s), 6.38 (1H, d, J=2.4Hz), 6.48 (1H, d, J=2.4Hz, J=8.4Hz), 7.07 (1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 12.93 (1H, s)

5 NMR (51) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 0.69-1.00 (3H, m), 1.08-1.62 (8H, m), 2.32-2.63 (2H, m), 3.68 (3H, s), 4.65 (2H, s), 6.30-6.53 (2H, m), 7.00 (1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 12.92 (1H, s)

NMR (52) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 2.31 (3H, s), 3.78 (3H, s), 4.74 (2H, s), 6.42 (1H, d, J=2.4Hz), 6.52 (1H, dd, J=2.4Hz, J=8.8Hz), 7.12 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 7.25-7.53 (2H, m), 7.72-7.94 (2H, m), 9.71 (1H, s)

10

NMR (53) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.30 (6H, d, J=6.9Hz), 3.19-3.46 (1H, m), 3.79 (3H, s), 4.75 (2H, s), 6.44 (1H, d, J=2.4Hz), 6.60 (1H, dd, J=2.4Hz, J=8.5Hz), 7.20 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.24-7.53 (2H, m), 7.72-7.94 (2H, m), 9.51-9.82 (1H, brs)

NMR (54) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 0.78-0.99 (3H, m), 1.18-1.77 (8H, m), 2.67 (2H, t, J=7.9Hz), 3.78 (3H, s), 4.74 (2H, s), 6.43 (1H, d, J=2.4Hz), 6.55 (1H, dd, J=2.4Hz, J=8.3Hz), 7.12 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.23-7.52 (2H, m), 7.75-7.92 (2H, m), 9.56-9.80 (1H, brs)

15

NMR (55) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.09 (3H, s), 3.68 (3H, s), 4.66 (2H, s), 6.32-6.52 (2H, m), 7.02 (1H, d, J=8.1Hz), 12.95 (1H, s)

20 NMR (56) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 3.82 (3H, s), 3.93 (3H, s), 4.73 (2H, s), 6.34 (1H, s), 8.02 (1H, s), 10.93 (1H, s)

NMR (57) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 3.82, 3.86, 3.88 (each 3H, each s), 4.77 (2H, s), 6.40 (1H, s), 8.07 (1H, d, J=3.1Hz)

212

NMR (58) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 3.74, 3.82 (each 3H, each s), 4.97 (2H, s),  
6.74 (1H, s), 7.85 (1H, d,  $J=3.6$ Hz), 12.82-13.44 (1H, br)

NMR (59) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 3.73, 3.74 (each 3H, each s), 4.63 (2H, s),  
6.76 (1H, s), 7.30 (1H, s), 10.66 (1H, brs)

5 NMR (60) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 3.66 (3H, s), 3.70 (3H, s), 4.64, 4.73 (total 1H,  
each s), 6.34-6.52 (2H, m), 6.79-6.96 (1H, m), 12.88-13.03 (1H, m)

NMR (61) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 3.77 (3H, s), 3.97 (3H, s), 4.78 (2H, s), 6.51-6.72  
(2H, m), 6.89 (1H, d,  $J=8.8$ Hz), 7.21-7.56 (2H, m), 7.73-7.92 (2H, m)

NMR (62) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.27 (3H, t,  $J=7.0$ Hz), 3.65 (3H, s), 3.92 (2H,  
10 q,  $J=7.0$ Hz), 4.65 (2H, s), 6.32-6.52 (2H, m), 6.78-6.93 (1H, m), 12.81-13.01 (1H,  
brs)

NMR (63) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 2.84 (6H, s), 3.89 (3H, s), 4.81 (2H, s), 5.23 (2H,  
s), 6.70 (1H, d,  $J=9.0$ Hz), 7.26-7.40 (5H, m), 7.60-7.64 (2H, m)

NMR (64) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 2.91 (6H, s), 3.93 (3H, s), 4.73 (2H, s), 7.14 (1H, d,  
15  $J=7.8$ Hz), 7.90-7.94 (2H, m), 9.72 (1H, br)

NMR (65) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 3.03 (6H, s), 3.91 (3H, s), 4.92 (2H, s), 7.12 (1H, d,  
 $J=8.3$ Hz), 7.29 (1H, dt,  $J=1.2$ Hz,  $J=7.8$ Hz), 7.43 (1H, dt,  $J=1.2$ Hz,  $J=7.8$ Hz), 7.78-  
7.86 (4H, m), 13.22 (1H, br)

NMR (66) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 3.03 (6H, s), 3.61 (2H, d,  $J=22.7$ Hz), 3.77 (3H, s),  
20 3.81 (3H, s), 4.94 (2H, s), 7.15 (1H, d,  $J=8.4$ Hz), 7.30 (1H, t,  $J=7.8$ Hz), 7.43 (1H, t,  
 $J=7.8$ Hz), 7.76-7.86 (4H, m)

NMR (67) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 3.96 (3H, s), 4.03 (3H, s), 4.55 (1H, brd,  
 $J=27.4$ Hz), 4.76 (2H, s), 6.71 (1H, d,  $J=8.7$ Hz), 7.25-7.38 (1H, m), 7.39-7.88 (19H,

m), 10.50 (1H, brs)

NMR (68) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 2.10-2.30 (2H, m), 3.58 (2H, t, J=6.6Hz), 4.04-4.19 (2H, m), 4.38-4.72 (1H, m), 4.65 (2H, s), 6.39 (1H, dd, J=2.3Hz, J=8.6Hz), 6.52 (1H, d, J=2.3Hz), 7.28-7.95 (20H, m), 10.58 (1H, brs)

5 NMR (69) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.82-2.11 (2H, m), 2.11-2.38 (4H, m), 2.3-2.62 (2H, m), 3.49-3.75 (4H, m), 4.04 (2H, t, J=5.9Hz), 4.50-4.93 (1H, m), 4.68 (2H, s), 6.40 (1H, dd, J=2.2Hz, J=8.6Hz), 6.54 (1H, d, J=2.2Hz), 7.23-7.37 (1H, m), 7.37-7.62 (10H, m), 7.62-7.96 (9H, m), 10.37 (1H, brs)

10 NMR (70) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 3.00 (6H, s), 3.89 (3H, s), 4.70 (2H, s), 6.49 (1H, dd, J=2.5Hz, J=8.5Hz), 6.57 (1H, d, J=2.5Hz), 6.93 (1H, dd, J=2.5Hz, J=9Hz), 7.08 (1H, d, J=2.5Hz), 7.20-8.05 (16H, m), 8.55-8.65 (1H, m), 9.90 (1H, br)

NMR (71) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.21-1.56 (2H, m), 1.67 (1H, br), 1.75-1.94 (2H, m), 2.01 (1H, t, J=10.6Hz), 2.01-2.89 (14H, m), 3.02-3.28 (2H, m), 3.55-3.78 (2H, m), 3.85-4.02 (1H, m)

15 NMR (72) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.83 (1H, br), 2.15 (1H, dd, J=4.1Hz, J=12.8Hz), 2.26 (6H, s), 2.43 (1H, dd, J=7.8Hz, J=12.8Hz), 2.53 (1H, dd, J=10.2Hz, J=12.1Hz), 2.68-2.98 (3H, m), 3.50-3.72 (2H, m), 3.78-3.99 (1H, m)

20 NMR (73) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 2.78 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 3.09 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 3.90 (3H, s), 7.15 (2H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.25-7.45 (2H, m), 7.68 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.8-7.95 (1H, m), 7.90 (2H, d, J=8.5Hz)

NMR (74) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 2.77 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 3.06 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 3.66 (2H, d, J=22.6Hz), 3.75 (3H, s), 3.81 (3H, s), 7.10-7.22 (2H, m), 7.26-7.49 (2H, m), 7.63-7.68 (1H, m), 7.81-7.90 (3H, m)

NMR (75) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 2.79 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 3.06 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 3.76

214

(3H, s), 3.86 (3H, s), 6.65 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 6.72 (1H, s), 7.25-7.5 (2H, m), 7.6-7.75 (2H, m), 7.85 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 11.40 (1H, br)

NMR (76) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 2.80 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 3.05 (2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 3.73 (3H, s), 3.78 (3H, s), 3.79 (3H, s), 3.82 (2H, d, J=21.5Hz), 6.65-6.8 (2H, m), 7.25-7.45 (2H, m), 7.60 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.64 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.82 (1H, dd, J=1Hz, J=7.5Hz), 11.49 (1H, br)

NMR (77) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 3.62 (2H, d, J=22.5Hz), 3.77, 3.82 (6H, each s), 4.04 (3H, s), 4.85 (2H, s), 7.02 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.3-7.55 (2H, m), 7.6-7.7 (2H, m), 7.8-7.9 (2H, m), 10.31 (1H, br)

#### 10 Example 1

A solution of 2-(2-isopropylphenoxyethylcarbonylamino)benzothiazole (6.5 g), anhydrous maleic acid (3.9 g) and aluminum chloride (8.0 g) in 1,2-dichloroethane (50 ml) is stirred at room temperature for 7 hours. To the mixture is added water in order to decompose the aluminum chloride, and thereto is added ethyl acetate, and the mixture is stirred. The precipitated crystals are collected by filtration, washed with ethyl acetate, and dried to give a mixture (7.3 g) of a trans-compound and a cis-compound. The mixture thus obtained is dissolved in dimethylformamide (50 ml), and thereto is added conc. hydrochloric acid (1 ml), and the mixture is stirred at 60°C for 30 minutes. To the mixture is added water (about 100 ml), and the precipitated crystals are collected by filtration, washed with methanol, and dried to give 2-[2-isopropyl-4-(trans-3-carboxyacryloyl)phenoxyethylcarbonylamino]benzothiazole (6.2 g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.25 (6H, d, J=7Hz), 3.40 (1H, sept, J=7Hz), 5.12 (2H, s), 6.64 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 7.03 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.25-7.5 (2H, m), 7.77

215

(1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.85-8.05 (4H, m), 12.70 (1H, br), 13.10 (1H, br)

### Example 2

To a solution of 2-[2-isopropyl-4-(3-carboxyacryloyl)phenoxy-methyl-carbonylamino]benzothiazole (1.0 g) and triethylamine (0.4 ml) in dichloro-  
methane (20 ml) is added dropwise isobutyl chloroformate (0.32 ml) under ice-  
cooling. To the mixture is added N-methylpiperazine (0.27 ml) at the same  
temperature, and the mixture is stirred for 2.5 hours. The reaction solution is  
washed with water, dried and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue  
is purified by silica gel column chromatography (solvent; dichloromethane →  
dichloromethane:methanol = 30:1), and recrystallized from ethanol to give 2-{2-  
isopropyl-4-[3-(4-methyl-1-piperazinylcarbonyl)acryloyl]phenoxy-  
methylcarbonylamino}benzothiazole (0.80 g).

Pale brown powder

M.p. 190-192°C

### 15 Example 3

A solution of 2-[4-(3-carboxyacryloyl)phenoxy-methylcarbonylamino]-  
benzothiazole (1.0 g), thionyl chloride (0.23 ml) and a drop of dimethylformamide  
(20 ml) in dichloromethane (20 ml) is stirred at room temperature for 10 hours.  
The solution is added dropwise into a solution of 4-(4-methyl-1-  
piperazinyl)piperidine (0.5 g) and pyridine (1 ml) in dichloromethane (20 ml)  
under ice-cooling. To the reaction solution is added water, and the mixture is  
basified with 5 % aqueous sodium hydroxide solution. The mixture is extracted  
with dichloromethane, and the extract is washed, dried, and concentrated under  
reduced pressure. The residue is purified by silica gel column chromatography  
(solvent; dichloromethane:methanol = 50:1 → 10:1). The compound thus

obtained is converted into a hydrochloride thereof by a conventional method and recrystallized from ethanol-diethyl ether to give 2-[4-{3-[4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinylcarbonyl]acryloyl}phenoxyethylcarbonylamino]-benzothiazole dihydrochloride (0.14 g).

5           White powder

M.p. 202.5-225°C (decomposed)

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.35-1.8 (2H, m), 2.0-2.3 (2H, m), 2.6-3.9 (11H, m), 2.81 (3H, s), 4.1-4.3 (1H, m), 4.5-4.7 (1H, m), 5.08 (2H, s), 7.15 (2H, d, J=9Hz), 7.3-7.55 (3H, m), 7.76 (1H, d, J=14Hz), 7.77 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=8Hz),  
10   8.05 (2H, d, J=9Hz), 12.67 (1H, br)

#### Example 4

To a solution of 2-[2-isopropyl-4-(3-carboxyacryloyl)phenoxyethylcarbonylamino]benzothiazole (0.97 g) in dimethylformamide (10 ml) are added dropwise 4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)piperidine (0.65 g) and diethyl cyano-  
15   phosphate (0.6 ml) at room temperature. To the mixture is added triethylamine (0.5 ml), and the mixture is stirred at room temperature for 10 minutes. To the mixture is added water, and the mixture is extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract is washed with water, dried, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue is purified by silica gel column chromatography (solvent; dichloro-  
20   methane:methanol = 100:1 → 10:1). The compound thus obtained is converted into a hydrochloride thereof in ethanol by a conventional method, and recrystallized from ethanol-diethyl ether to give 2-{2-isopropyl-4-[3-[4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinylcarbonyl]acryloyl]phenoxyethylcarbonylamino}-benzothiazole dihydrochloride (0.45 g).

217

Yellow powder

M.p. 186-190°C (decomposed)

Example 5

To a solution of dibutyl tartrate (4.0 g) in methanol (100 ml) is added a  
5 solution of sodium periodate (3.0 g) in water (30 ml), and the mixture is stirred for  
10 minutes, and extracted with ethyl acetate. Separately, to a suspension of  
dimethyl {[3-methoxy-4-(2-benzothiazolylaminocarbonylmethoxy)benzoyl]-  
methyl}phosphonate (5.7 g) in tetrahydrofuran (100 ml) is added a 5 % aqueous  
sodium hydroxide solution under ice-cooling until the reaction solution becomes  
10 uniform, and then thereto is added dropwise a solution of glyoxalate, which is  
previously prepared from dibutyl tartrate, in tetrahydrofuran (30 ml) under ice-  
cooling. The mixture is stirred for 30 minutes, and acidified with 5 % hydrochloric  
acid, and concentrated under reduced pressure to remove the tetrahydrofuran.  
The precipitated crystals are collected by filtration, and washed with dichloro-  
15 methane. The dichloromethane layer is concentrated under reduced pressure, and  
the residue is purified by silica gel column chromatography (solvent; dichloro-  
methane:methanol = 200:1) to give 2-[2-methoxy-4-(3-butoxycarbonylacryloyl)-  
phenoxymethylcarbonylamino]benzothiazole (2.85 g), which is further stirred in  
tetrahydrofuran-5 % aqueous sodium hydroxide solution at room temperature for  
20 30 minutes to give 2-[2-methoxy-4-(3-carboxyacryloyl)phenoxymethylcarbonyl-  
amino]benzothiazole (2.9 g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 3.89 (3H, s), 5.09 (2H, s), 6.67 (1H, d,  
J=15.5Hz), 7.08 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.25-7.55 (2H, m), 7.57 (1H, m), 7.7-8.1 (4H, m),  
11.68 (1H, br)



Example 6

To a solution of ethyl propiolate (17.7 ml) in tetrahydrofuran (450 ml) is added dropwise a 1.71M solution of n-butyl lithium in n-hexane (102 ml) at -78°C, and the mixture is stirred for 10 minutes. To the solution is added dropwise a solution of 2-(2-methoxy-4-formylphenoxy-methyl-carbonylamino)-benzothiazole (20 g) in tetrahydrofuran (400 ml) and N,N-dimethylpropylene urea (40 ml) at the same temperature over a period of 15 minutes. The mixture is further stirred for 10 minutes, and the reaction vessel is taken out from an iced bath, and further stirred for 20 minutes. To the mixture is added acetic acid (11 ml), and the mixture is diluted with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate layer is washed with a saturated aqueous sodium carbonate solution, dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated. The residue is purified by silica gel column chromatography (solvent; dichloromethane : methanol = 100:1 → 50:1) to give 2-[2-methoxy-4-(3-methoxycarbonyl-1-hydroxypropargyl)phenoxy-methyl-carbonylamino]benzothiazole (33.7 g) as a dark brown oil.

To a solution of 2-[2-methoxy-4-(3-methoxycarbonyl-1-hydroxy-propargyl)phenoxy-methyl-carbonylamino]benzothiazole (33.7 g) in dimethyl-formamide (150 ml) is added tri-n-butylamine (14.3 ml), and the mixture is stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hour. The mixture is diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with 0.15N hydrochloric acid, and dried over sodium sulfate. The mixture is concentrated under reduced pressure to remove the solvent, and the precipitated crystals are collected by filtration to give 2-[2-methoxy-4-(trans-3-methoxycarbonylacryloyl)phenoxy-methyl-carbonylamino]benzothiazole (Compound A, 5.5 g) as pale yellow powder. On the other hand, the filtrate is concentrated under reduced pressure, and crystallized from ethanol-diethyl ether

to give 2-[2-methoxy-4-(cis-3-methoxycarbonylacryloyl)phenoxy-methylcarbonylamino]benzothiazole (Compound B, 6.0 g) as pale yellow powder.

Compound A:

5         $^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{DMSO-d}_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.26 (3H, t,  $J=7.1\text{Hz}$ ), 3.92 (3H, s), 4.21 (2H, q,  $J=7.1\text{Hz}$ ), 5.11 (2H, s), 6.71 (1H, d,  $J=15.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.08 (1H, d,  $J=8.6\text{Hz}$ ), 7.31-7.37 (1H, m), 7.44-7.50 (1H, m), 7.59 (1H, d,  $J=2.0\text{Hz}$ ), 7.75-7.81 (2H, m), 7.98 (1H, d,  $J=15.5\text{Hz}$ ), 8.00-8.02 (1H, m), 12.67 (1H, brs)

Compound B:

10         $^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{DMSO-d}_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.05 (3H, t,  $J=7.1\text{Hz}$ ), 3.89 (3H, s), 3.97 (2H, q,  $J=7.1\text{Hz}$ ), 5.11 (2H, s), 6.35 (1H, d,  $J=12.3\text{Hz}$ ), 7.05 (1H, d,  $J=8.8\text{Hz}$ ), 7.21 (1H, d,  $J=12.3\text{Hz}$ ), 7.31-7.37 (1H, m), 7.44-7.50 (3H, m), 7.78-7.81 (1H, m), 7.99-8.02 (1H, m), 12.62 (1H, brs)

#### Example 7

15        A solution of 2-{2-isopropyl-4-[trans-3-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-carbonylacryloyl]phenoxy-methylcarbonylamino}benzothiazole (100 mg) in dimethylformamide (10 ml) is allowed to stand for 6.5 hours by a window in order to be exposed to direct sunlight. To the mixture is added water, the precipitated crystals are collected by filtration, and recrystallized from ethanol to give 2-{2-isopropyl-4-[cis-3-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)carbonylacryloyl]phenoxy-methylcarbonylamino}benzothiazole (45 mg).

20

Pale yellow powder

M.p. 114-115°C

#### Example 8

220

To a solution of dimethyl {[3-methoxy-4-(2-benzothiazolylaminocarbonyl-methoxy)benzoyl]methyl}phosphonate (1.7 g) and pyridine-4-aldehyde (0.5 g) in tetrahydrofuran (30 ml) is added a 5% aqueous sodium hydroxide solution (6 ml) under ice-cooling, and the mixture is stirred for 5 hours. The mixture is  
5 neutralized with acetic acid, and the precipitated crystals are collected by filtration, and then recrystallized from dichloromethane-ethanol-diethyl ether to give 2-{2-methoxy-4-[3-(4-pyridyl)acryloyl]phenoxy-methylcarbonylamino}-benzothiazole (1.3 g).

Pale yellow powder

10 M.p. 206-207°C

#### Example 9

To a solution of 2-[2-methoxy-4-(3-t-butoxycarbonyl-1-hydroxypropargyl)-phenoxy-methylcarbonylamino]benzothiazole (1 g) in chloroform (50 ml) is added active manganese dioxide (1 g), and the mixture is refluxed for two hours. To the  
15 mixture is further added active manganese dioxide (1 g), and the mixture is refluxed for 1.5 hour. The mixture is filtered through a cerite pad, and the filtrate is concentrated. The residue is recrystallized from ethanol to give 2-[2-methoxy-4-(3-t-butoxycarbonylpropiolyl)phenoxy-methylcarbonylamino]benzothiazole (0.5 g).

#### 20 Example 10

To a solution of 2-[2-methoxy-4-(3-t-butoxycarbonylpropiolyl)phenoxy-methylcarbonylamino]benzothiazole (0.5 g) in methylene chloride (30 ml) is added trifluoroacetic acid (10 ml), and the mixture is stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. The mixture is concentrated, and to the residue is added methylene  
25 chloride. The mixture is stirred, and the precipitated crystals are collected by

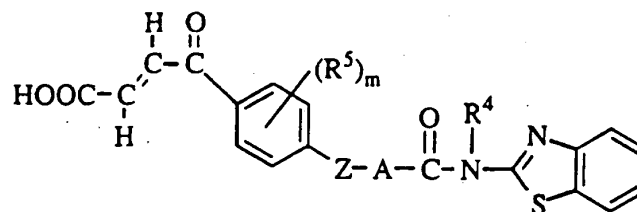
filtration, and recrystallized from dichloromethane-trifluoroacetic acid to give 2-[2-methoxy-4-(3-carboxypropionyl)phenoxy methyl carbonylamino]-benzothiazole (0.26 g) as brown powder.

M.p. 174-176°C

- 5        Using the suitable starting compounds, the following compounds are obtained in the same manner as in Example 1 or 5.

222

Table 38



---

Example 11R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

Z: O

R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub> (2-position)

m: 1

M.p. 261-262°C

Crystalline form: Beige powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-methanol

Form: Free

---

## Example 12

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

Z: O

R<sup>5</sup>: C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub> (2-position)

m: 1

M.p. 245-246°C

Crystalline form: Beige powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-methanol

Form: Free

---

## Example 13

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

Z: O

R<sup>5</sup>: n-Propyl (2-position)

m: 1

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Form: Free

NMR (1)

---

Table 39

---

Example 14

R<sup>4</sup>: H                      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-                      Z: O  
R<sup>5</sup>: Isopropyl (2-position)                      m: 1  
M.p. 225-240°C (decomp.)    Crystalline form: Yellow powder    NMR (2)  
Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-methanol  
Form: Free

---

## Example 15

R<sup>4</sup>: H                      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-                      Z: O  
R<sup>5</sup>: n-Butyl (2-position)                      m: 1  
M.p. 187.5-190°C                      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder  
Solvent for recrystallization: Chloroform-dimethylformamide  
Form: Free

---

## Example 16

R<sup>4</sup>: H                      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-                      Z: O  
R<sup>5</sup>: H                      m: 1  
M.p. 250-275°C (decomp.)    Crystalline form: White powder    NMR (3)  
Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-methanol  
Form: Free

---

## Example 17

R<sup>4</sup>: H                      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-                      Z: O  
R<sup>5</sup>: n-Pentyl (2-position)                      m: 1  
M.p. 139-163°C                      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder    NMR (4)  
Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-dichloromethane  
Form: Free

---

224

Table 40

---

**Example 18**

$R^4$ : H                      A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$                       Z: O  
 $R^5$ : F (2-position)                      m: 1  
 M.p. 233-234°C                      Crystalline form: Pale brown powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-methanol  
 Form: Free.

---

**Example 19**

$R^4$ : H                      A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$                       Z: O  
 $R^5$ : Cl (2-position)                      m: 1  
 Crystalline form: Yellow powder  
 Form: Free                      NMR (5)

---

**Example 20**

$R^4$ : H                      A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$                       Z: O  
 $R^5$ :  $-(\text{CH}_2)_4$  (combined at 2- and 3-positions)                      m: 2  
 Crystalline form: Yellow powder                      NMR (6)  
 Form: Free

---

**Example 21**

$R^4$ : H                      A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$                       Z: O  
 $R^5$ :  $\text{CH}_3$  (2-and 3-positions)                      m: 2  
 Crystalline form: Yellow powder                      NMR (7)  
 Form: Free

---

225

Table 41

---

Example 22

R<sup>4</sup>: H                      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-                      Z: O  
R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub> (2- and 6-positions)                      m: 2  
Crystalline form: Beige powder                      NMR (8)  
Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-methanol  
Form: Free

---

## Example 23

R<sup>4</sup>: H                      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-                      Z: O  
R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub> (3- and 5-positions)                      m: 2  
Crystalline form: Yellow powder                      Form: Free  
NMR (9)

---

## Example 24

R<sup>4</sup>: H                      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-                      Z: O  
R<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub> (2-position)                      m: 1  
M.p. 199.6-203.8°C                      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder  
Solvent for recrystallization: Chloroform-dimethylformamide  
Form: Free

---

## Example 25

R<sup>4</sup>: H                      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-                      Z: O  
R<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>OCOCH<sub>3</sub> (2-position)                      m: 1  
M.p. 176-177.5°C                      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder  
Solvent for recrystallization: Chloroform                      Form: Free

---



226

Table 42

---

Example 26

R <sup>4</sup> : H	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	Z: O
R <sup>5</sup> : C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> O (2-position)		m: 1
Crystalline form: Yellow powder		NMR (10)
Form: Free		

---

Example 27

R <sup>4</sup> : H	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	Z: O
R <sup>5</sup> : CH <sub>3</sub> (3-position)		m: 1
M.p. 290°C (decomp.)	Crystalline form: White needles	NMR (11)
Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide		Form: Free

---

Example 28

R <sup>4</sup> : H	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	Z: O
R <sup>5</sup> : C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> (3-position)		m: 1
Crystalline form: Yellow powder		NMR (12)
Form: Free		

---

Example 29

R <sup>4</sup> : H	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	Z: O
R <sup>5</sup> : n-Propyl (3-position)		m: 1
M.p. 282°C (decomp.)	Crystalline form: Pale brown needles	
Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-dichloromethane		
Form: Free		

---

227

Table 43

---

Example 31

R <sup>4</sup> : H	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	Z: O
R <sup>5</sup> : n-Butyl (3-position)		m: 1
M.p. 267-279°C (decomp.)		Crystalline form: Pink powder
Form: Free		NMR (14)

---

## Example 32

R <sup>4</sup> : H	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	Z: O
R <sup>5</sup> : Isopropyl (3-position)		m: 1
M.p. 262.5-265.5°C		Crystalline form: Yellow powder
Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-dichloromethane		
Form: Free		

---

## Example 33

R <sup>4</sup> : H	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	Z: O
R <sup>5</sup> : Cl (3-position)		m: 1
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder		NMR (15)
Form: Free		

---

Table 44

## Example 34

R <sup>4</sup> : H	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	Z: O
R <sup>5</sup> : F (3-position)		m: 1
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder		NMR (16)
Form: Free		

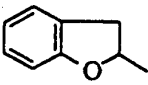
## Example 35

R <sup>4</sup> : H	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	Z: O
R <sup>5</sup> : CH <sub>3</sub> O (3-position)		m: 1
Crystalline form: Yellow powder		NMR (17)
Form: Free		

## Example 36

R <sup>4</sup> : H	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	Z: O
R <sup>5</sup> : C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> O (3-position)		m: 1
Crystalline form: Yellow powder		NMR (18)
Form: Free		

## Example 37

R <sup>4</sup> : H	m: 1	Z: O
R <sup>5</sup> and A combine to form:		
		
M.p. 294-295°C (decomp.)	Crystalline form: White powder	
Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide	Form: Free	

229

Table 45

---

Example 38

R <sup>4</sup> : H	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	Z: O
R <sup>5</sup> : CH <sub>3</sub> O (2-position)		m: 1
Crystalline form: Yellow powder		NMR (19)
Form: Free		

---

## Example 39

R <sup>4</sup> : H	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	Z: O
R <sup>5</sup> : (CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CHO- (3-position)		m: 1
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder		NMR (20)
Form: Free		

---

## Example 40

R <sup>4</sup> : H	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	Z: O
R <sup>5</sup> : CF <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> O- (3-position)		m: 1
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder		NMR (21)
Form: Free		

---

## Example 41

R <sup>4</sup> : H	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	Z: O
R <sup>5</sup> : CF <sub>3</sub> (2-position)		m: 1
Crystalline form: Colorless powder		NMR (22)
Form: Free		

---

Table 46

---

Example 42

R <sup>4</sup> : H	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	Z: O
R <sup>5</sup> : -OCH <sub>2</sub> CON(C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> (2-position)		m: 1
Crystalline form: Yellow powder		NMR (23)
Form: Free		

---

Example 43

R <sup>4</sup> : H	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	Z: O
R <sup>5</sup> : -COOCH <sub>3</sub> (2-position)		m: 1
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder		NMR (24)
Form: Free		

---

Example 44

R <sup>4</sup> : H	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	Z: O
R <sup>5</sup> : -(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -CONH- (combined at 2- and 3-positions)		m: 2
Crystalline form: Yellow powder		NMR (25)
Form: Free		

---

Example 45

R <sup>4</sup> : H	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	Z: O
R <sup>5</sup> : (CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> C- (2-position)		m: 1
M.p. 263-266°C (decomp.)	Crystalline form: Yellow powder	
Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-dichloromethane		
Form: Free		

---

Table 47

---

Example 46

R <sup>4</sup> : H	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	Z: O
R <sup>5</sup> : -(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> COOCH <sub>3</sub> (2-position)		m: 1
Crystalline form: Yellow powder		NMR (26)
Form: Free		

---

## Example 47

R <sup>4</sup> : H	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	Z: O
R <sup>5</sup> : -(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CON(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> (2-position)		m: 1
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder		NMR (27)
Form: Free		

---

## Example 48

R <sup>4</sup> : H	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	Z: O
R <sup>5</sup> : -(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CON(C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> (2-position)		m: 1
Crystalline form: Yellow amorphous		NMR (28)
Form: Free		

---

## Example 49

R <sup>4</sup> : H	A: -CH <sub>2</sub> -	Z: O
R <sup>5</sup> : Cl (2-position)		m: 1
M.p. 235.5-237°C		Crystalline form: Yellow powder
Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-water		
Form: Free		

---

232

Table 48

---

Example 50R<sup>4</sup>: H                      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-                      Z: OR<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>COOC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub> (2-position)                      m: 1

M.p. 199.6-203.8°C                      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Chloroform-dimethylformamide

Form: Free                      NMR (29)

---

Example 51R<sup>4</sup>: H                      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-                      Z: OR<sup>5</sup>: n-Butyl (2-position)                      m: 1

M.p. 187.5-190°C                      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Chloroform-dimethylformamide

Form: Free

---

Example 52R<sup>4</sup>: H                      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-                      Z: OR<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>OCOCH<sub>3</sub> (2-position)                      m: 1

M.p. 176-177.5°C                      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Chloroform                      Form: Free

233

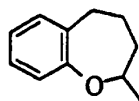
Table 49

---

Example 53 $R^4$ : H

m: 1

Z: O

 $R^5$  and A combine to form:

M.p. 285-287°C (decomp.)

Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-water

Form: Free

---

## Example 54

 $R^4$ : HA:  $-\text{CH}_2-$ 

Z: O

 $R^5$ : n-Heptyl (2-position)

m: 1

M.p. 187-188.5°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-dimethylformamide

Form: Free

---

## Example 55

 $R^4$ : HA:  $-\text{CH}_2-$ 

Z: S

 $R^5$ :  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}$  (2-position)

m: 1

M.p. 241-244°C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Form: Free

---



<sup>1</sup>H-NMR spectrum (NMR (1) to NMR (29)) as described in Tables 38-49 are as follows:

NMR (1) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 0.92 (3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.58-1.69 (2H, m), 2.69 (2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 5.12 (2H, s), 6.65 (1H, d, J=15.4Hz), 7.03 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.31 (1H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.44 (1H, t, J=7.7Hz), 7.76 (1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 7.87-7.99 (4H, m)

NMR (2) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.25 (6H, d, J=7Hz), 3.40 (1H, sept, J=7Hz), 5.12 (2H, s), 6.64 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 7.03 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.25-7.5 (2H, m), 7.77 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.85-8.05 (4H, m), 12.70 (1H, br), 13.10 (1H, br)

NMR (3) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 5.07 (2H, s), 6.65 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 7.15 (2H, d, J=9Hz), 7.1-7.5 (2H, m), 7.76 (1H, d, J=7Hz), 7.89 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 7.99 (1H, d, J=7Hz), 8.05 (2H, d, J=9Hz), 12.70 (1H, br), 13.04 (1H, br)

NMR (4) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 0.89 (3H, t, J=6.4Hz), 1.21-1.50 (4H, m), 1.53-1.79 (2H, m), 2.69 (2H, t, J=8.0Hz), 5.14 (2H, s), 6.64 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 7.04 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.30-7.38 (1H, m), 7.43-7.51 (1H, m), 7.78-7.82 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.85-8.10 (4H, m)

NMR (5) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 5.22 (2H, s), 6.67 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 7.24-7.49 (3H, m), 7.77 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.89 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 7.96-8.12 (3H, m), 12.83 (1H, br)

NMR (6) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.6-1.9 (4H, m), 2.65-3.0 (4H, m), 5.06 (2H, s), 6.45 (1H, d, J=16Hz), 6.82 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.25-7.65 (4H, m), 7.75 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.97 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 12.85 (1H, br)

NMR (7) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.22 (3H, s), 2.31 (3H, s), 5.05 (2H, s), 6.44 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 6.85 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.25-7.6 (4H, m), 7.76 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.98

235

(1H, d, J=8Hz), 12.83 (1H, br)

NMR (8) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.36 (6H, s), 4.75 (2H, s), 6.67 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 7.30-7.53 (2H, m), 7.77 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.79 (2H, s), 7.91 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 8.00 (1H, d, J=7.00Hz), 12.09-13.2 (2H, br)

5 NMR (9) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.10 (6H, s), 4.95 (2H, s), 6.22 (1H, d, J=16Hz), 6.78 (2H, s), 7.02 (1H, d, J=16Hz), 7.25-7.5 (2H, m), 7.76 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 12.9 (2H, br)

NMR (10) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.37 (3H, d, J=7.0Hz), 4.14 (2H, q, J=7.0Hz), 5.09 (2H, s), 6.65 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 7.06 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.31 (1H, d, J=7.4Hz), 7.44 (1H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.55 (1H, s), 7.67-7.78 (2H, m), 7.90 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7.4Hz), 12.74 (2H, br)

10

NMR (11) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.45 (3H, s), 5.03 (2H, s), 6.45 (1H, d, J=15.6Hz), 6.90-7.06 (2H, m), 7.28-7.35 (1H, m), 7.41-7.48 (1H, m), 7.56 (1H, d, J=15.6Hz), 7.75 (2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.97-8.00 (1H, m), 12.80 (2H, brs)

15 NMR (12) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.13 (3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 2.80 (2H, q, J=7.4Hz), 5.03 (2H, s), 6.47 (1H, d, J=15.6Hz), 6.94 (1H, dd, J=2.5Hz, J=8.6Hz), 7.01 (1H, d, J=2.5Hz), 7.27-7.50 (2H, m), 7.53 (1H, t, J=15.6Hz), 7.68-7.81 (2H, m), 7.92-8.03 (1H, m), 12.86 (2H, br)

NMR (14) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 0.82 (3H, t, J=7.2Hz), 1.17-1.40 (2H, m), 1.40-1.61 (2H, m), 2.72-2.90 (2H, m), 5.06 (2H, s), 6.46 (1H, d, J=15.7Hz), 6.91-7.07 (2H, m), 7.30-7.41 (1H, m), 7.41-7.54 (1H, m), 7.51 (1H, d, J=15.7Hz), 7.74-7.82 (2H, m), 8.00-8.04 (1H, m)

20

NMR (15) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 5.08 (2H, s), 6.50 (1H, d, J=15.7Hz), 7.13 (1H, dd, J=2.5Hz, J=8.7Hz), 7.27-7.49 (4H, m), 7.71 (1H, d, J=8.7Hz), 7.76 (1H, d,

J=7.0Hz), 7.99 (1H, d, J=7.0Hz), 12.85 (1H, br)

NMR (16) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 5.09 (2H, s), 6.61 (1H, d, J=15.6Hz), 6.98-7.13 (2H, m), 7.30 (1H, t, J=7.1Hz), 7.44 (1H, t, J=7.1Hz), 7.63 (1H, dd, J=3.4Hz, J=15.6Hz), 7.74-7.90 (2H, m), 7.97 (1H, d, J=7.1Hz), 12.88 (1H, br)

5 NMR (17) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 3.89 (3H, s), 5.06 (2H, s), 6.51 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 6.71 (1H, d, J=2.2Hz, J=8.7Hz), 6.82 (1H, d, J=2.2Hz), 7.25-7.50 (2H, m), 7.66 (1H, d, J=8.7Hz), 7.70 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 7.74-7.81 (1H, m), 7.94-8.03 (1H, m), 12.80 (2H, br)

NMR (18) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.34 (3H, t, J=6.9Hz), 4.15 (2H, q, J=6.9Hz),  
10 5.05 (2H, s), 6.45 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 6.68 (1H, dd, J=2.0Hz, J=8.7Hz), 6.77 (1H, d, J=2.0Hz), 7.26-7.50 (2H, m), 7.66 (1H, d, J=8.7Hz), 7.72-7.81 (1H, m), 7.79 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 7.91-8.05 (1H, m), 12.77 (2H, br)

NMR (19) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 3.89 (3H, s), 5.09 (2H, s), 6.67 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 7.08 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.25-7.55 (2H, m), 7.57 (1H, m), 7.7-8.1 (4H, m),  
15 11.68 (1H, br)

NMR (20) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.29 (6H, d, J=6.0Hz), 4.82 (1H, sept, J=6.0Hz), 5.05 (2H, s), 6.43 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 6.89 (1H, dd, J=2.3Hz, J=8.7Hz), 6.78 (1H, d, J=2.3Hz), 7.31 (1H, t, J=7.0Hz), 7.45 (1H, t, J=7.0Hz), 7.66 (1H, d, J=8.7Hz), 7.78 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 7.80 (1H, d, J=7.0Hz), 7.99 (1H, d, J=7.0Hz),  
20 12.76 (1H, br)

NMR (21) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 4.92 (2H, q, J=8.7Hz), 5.07 (2H, s), 6.48 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 6.81 (1H, dd, J=2.3Hz, J=8.8Hz), 6.93 (1H, d, J=2.3Hz), 7.32 (1H, t, J=7.0Hz), 7.45 (1H, t, J=7.0Hz), 7.62-7.79 (3H, m), 7.99 (1H, d, J=7.0Hz), 12.78 (1H, br)

NMR (22) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 5.28 (2H, s), 6.69 (1H, d,  $J=15.5$ Hz), 7.25-7.55 (3H, m), 7.77 (1H, d,  $J=8$ Hz), 7.92 (1H, d,  $J=15.5$ Hz), 7.98 (1H, d,  $J=7.5$ Hz), 8.15-8.45 (2H, m), 12.88 (1H, br)

5 NMR (23) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.03 (3H, t,  $J=7$ Hz), 1.18 (3H, t,  $J=7$ Hz), 3.1-3.5 (4H, m), 4.96 (2H, s), 5.10 (2H, s), 6.63 (1H, d,  $J=15.5$ Hz), 7.10 (1H, d,  $J=8.5$ Hz), 7.25-7.55 (3H, m), 7.7-7.85 (2H, m), 7.86 (1H, d,  $J=15.5$ Hz), 7.98 (1H, d,  $J=7.5$ Hz), 12.66 (1H, br)

10 NMR (24) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 3.90 (3H, s), 5.18 (2H, s), 6.67 (1H, d,  $J=15.5$ Hz), 7.28-7.36 (2H, m), 7.46 (1H, t,  $J=7.6$ Hz), 7.78 (1H, d,  $J=7.6$ Hz), 7.89 (1H, d,  $J=15.5$ Hz), 7.99 (1H, t,  $J=7.6$ Hz), 8.25 (1H, dd,  $J=2.3$ Hz,  $J=8.9$ Hz) 8.38 (1H, d,  $J=2.3$ Hz)

15 NMR (25) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 2.48 (2H, t,  $J=7.5$ Hz), 3.12 (2H, t,  $J=7.5$ Hz), 5.04 (2H, s), 6.52 (1H, d,  $J=15.7$ Hz), 7.13 (1H, d,  $J=8.7$ Hz), 7.34 (1H, t,  $J=7.2$ Hz), 7.42-7.63 (3H, m), 7.80 (1H, d,  $J=7.6$ Hz), 8.02 (1H, d,  $J=7.2$ Hz), 10.33 (1H, br), 12.98 (1H, br)

NMR (26) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 2.71 (2H, t,  $J=7.6$ Hz), 2.98 (2H, t,  $J=7.6$ Hz), 3.59 (3H, s), 5.13 (2H, s), 6.60-6.75 (1H, m), 7.04-7.08 (1H, m), 7.27-7.38 (1H, m), 7.38-7.51 (1H, m), 7.55-7.78 (1H, m), 7.84-7.99 (4H, m), 9.40 (2H, brs)

20 NMR (27) (DMSO- $d_6$  +  $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 2.66 (2H, t,  $J=8.8$ Hz), 2.84 (3H, s), 2.89-3.06 (5H, m), 5.01 (2H, s), 6.57-6.75 (1H, m), 6.90-7.10 (1H, m), 7.18-7.30 (1H, m), 7.30-7.41 (1H, m), 7.63-7.72 (1H, m), 7.72-7.90 (3H, m), 7.96 (1H, s), 11.50-13.00 (2H, brs)

NMR (28) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.00 (3H, t,  $J=7.0$ Hz), 1.07 (3H, t,  $J=7.0$ Hz), 2.68 (2H, t,  $J=7.4$ Hz), 3.01 (2H, t,  $J=7.4$ Hz), 3.15-3.46 (4H, m), 5.06 (2H, s), 6.78

238

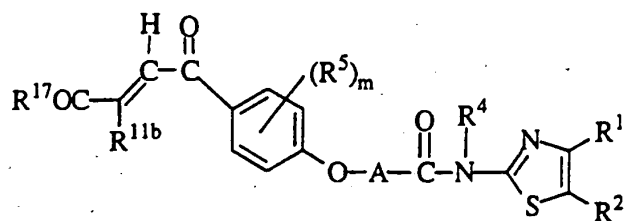
(2H, d, J=15.4Hz), 6.95-6.99 (1H, m), 7.25-7.30 (1H, m), 7.38-7.43 (1H, m), 7.72-7.85 (5H, m)

NMR (29) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.12 (3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.69 (2H, t, J=7.8Hz),  
2.98 (2H, t, J=7.8Hz), 4.00 (2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 5.13 (2H, s), 6.61 (1H, d, J=15.4Hz),  
5 7.04 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 7.30-7.40 (1H, m), 7.55 (1H, m), 7.75 (1H, d, J=7.3Hz), 7.86  
(1H, d, J=15.4Hz), 7.91-8.10 (3H, m), 12.40-13.30 (2H, m)

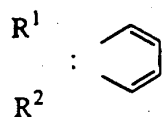
Using the suitable starting compounds, the compounds as listed in Tables  
50-125 are obtained in the same manner as in Example 3 or 4.

239

Table 50



## Example 56

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>: R<sup>5</sup>: H

M.p. 175-185°C

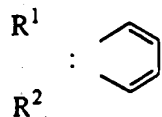
Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol

Form: Free

NMR (1)

## Example 57

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>: R<sup>5</sup>: Isopropyl (2-position)

M.p. 190-192°C

Crystalline form: Pale brown powder

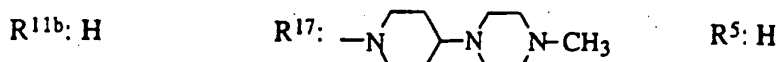
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol

Form: Free

Trans-form

Table 51

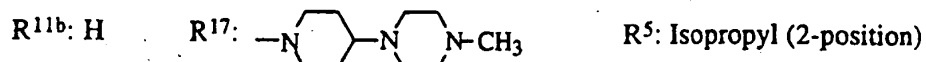
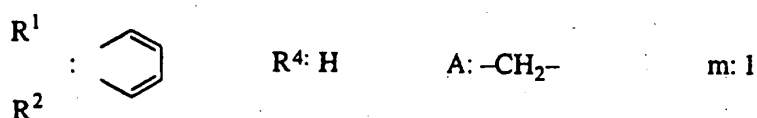
## Example 58



M.p. 202.5-225°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: White powder NMR (2)

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether Form: 2HCl

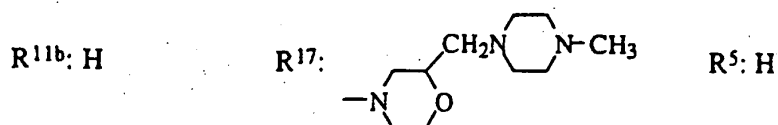
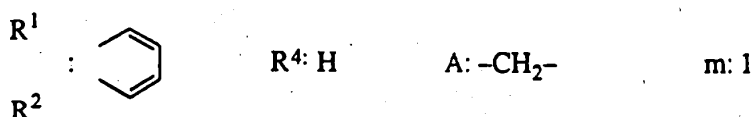
## Example 59



M.p. 186-190°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether Form: 2HCl

## Example 60



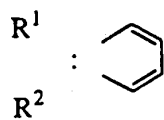
M.p. 202-206°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Yellow powder Form: 2HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether

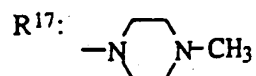
241

Table 52

## Example 61

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: Isopropyl (2-position)

M.p. 114-115°C

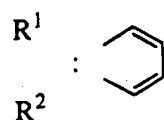
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Cis-form

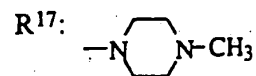
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: Free

## Example 62

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: Cl (2-position)

M.p. 206.5-209°C

Crystalline form: White powder

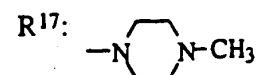
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: Free

## Example 63

R<sup>1</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>2</sup>: HR<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: H

M.p. 138.5-141.5°C

Crystalline form: White powder

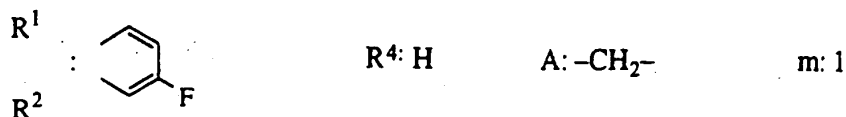
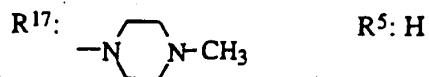
Form: Free



242

Table 53

## Example 64

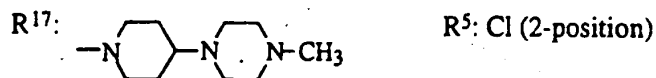
 $R^{11b}$ : H

M.p. 221-222.5°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: Free

## Example 65

 $R^{11b}$ : H

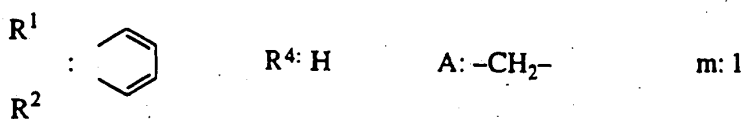
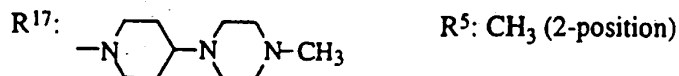
M.p. 181-183°C

Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether

Form: Free

## Example 66

 $R^{11b}$ : H

M.p. 261-262°C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

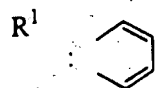
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol

Form: 2HCl

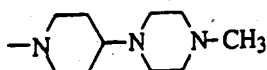
243

Table 54

## Example 67

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub> (2-position)

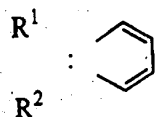
M.p. 227-229°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

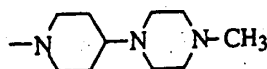
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol

Form: 2HCl

## Example 68

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: F (2-position)

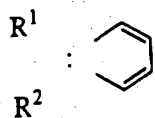
M.p. 226-227°C

Crystalline form: Brown powder

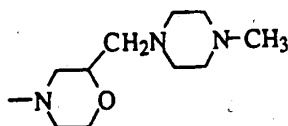
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol

Form: 2HCl

## Example 69

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub> (2-position)

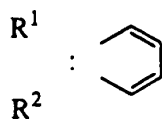
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: 3HCl

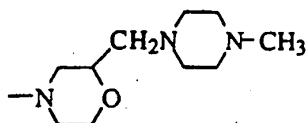
NMR (3)

Table 55

## Example 70

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub> (2-position)

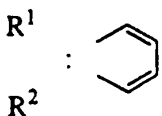
M.p. 157-160°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

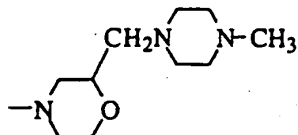
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol

Form: 3HCl

## Example 71

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: F (2-position)

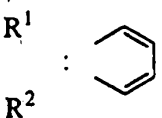
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol

Crystalline form: Brown powder

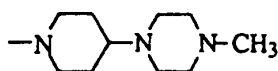
Form: 3HCl

NMR (4)

## Example 72

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: n-Propyl (2-position)

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

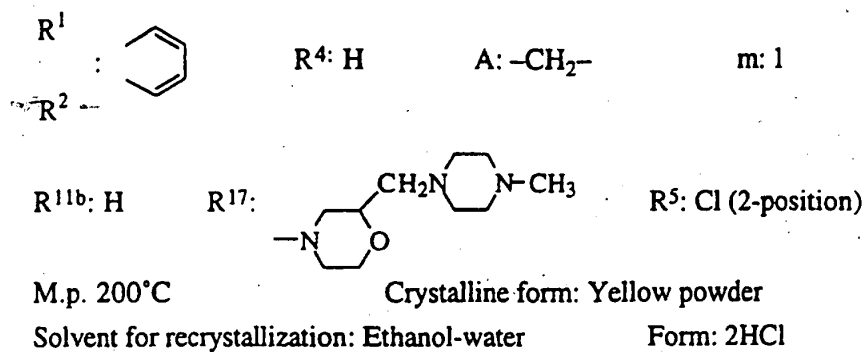
Form: 3HCl

NMR (5)

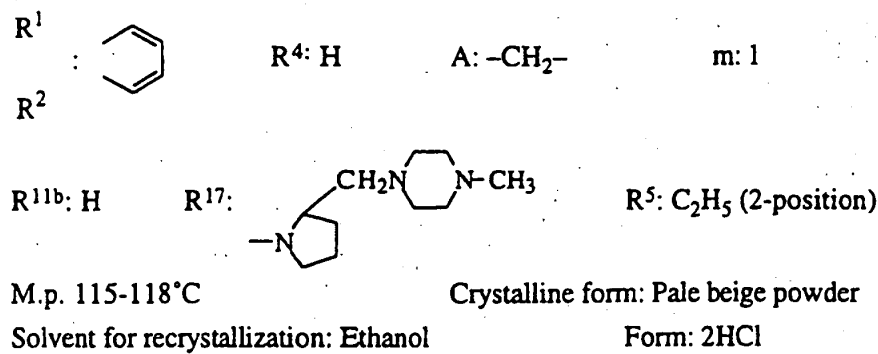
245

Table 56

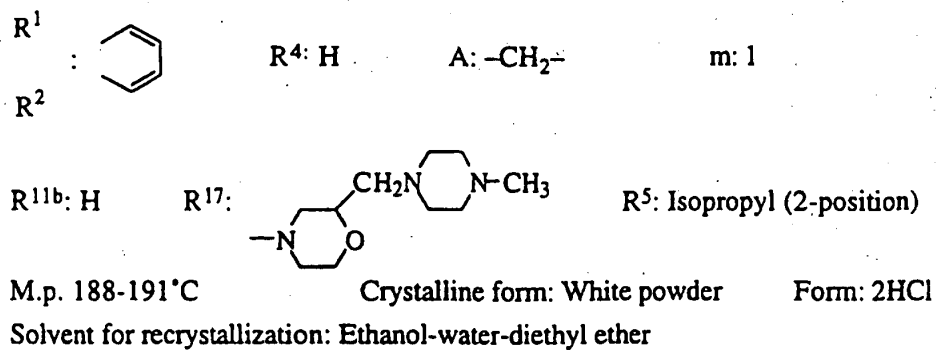
## Example 73



## Example 74



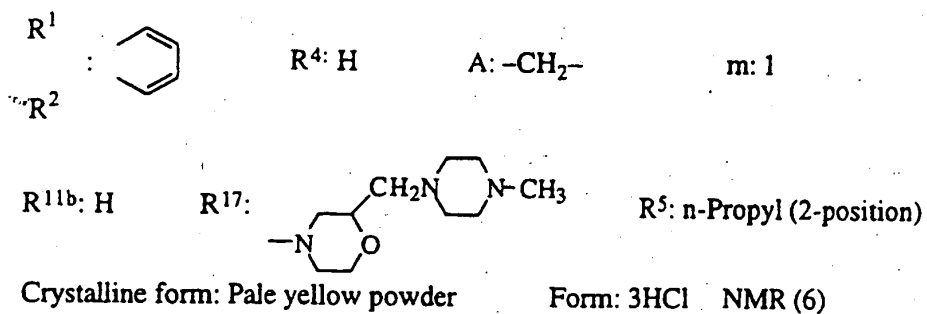
## Example 75



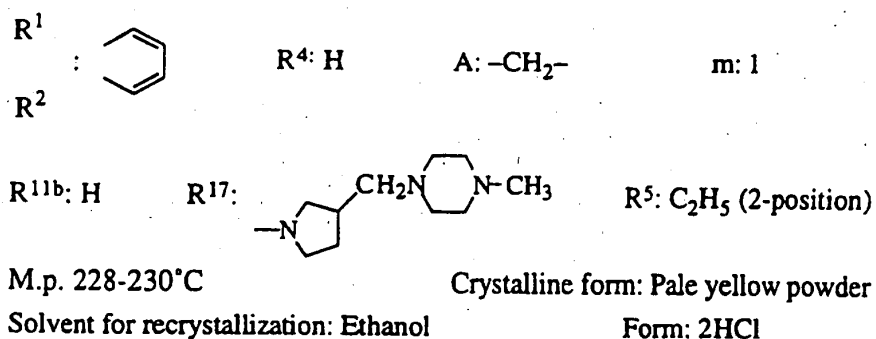
246

Table 57

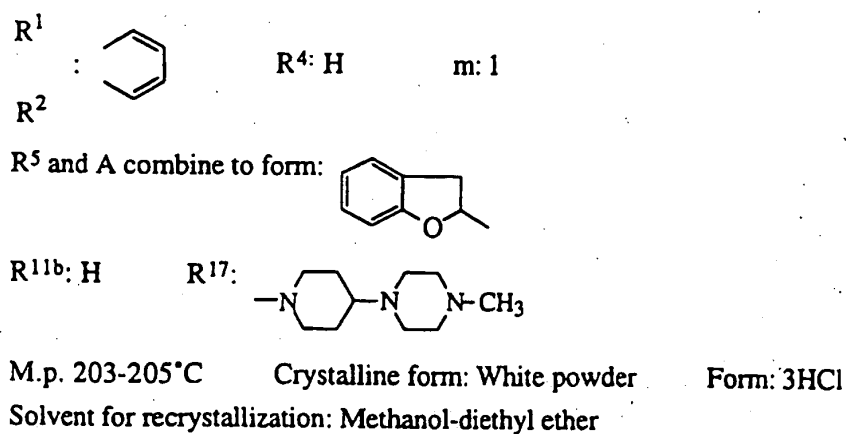
## Example 76



## Example 77



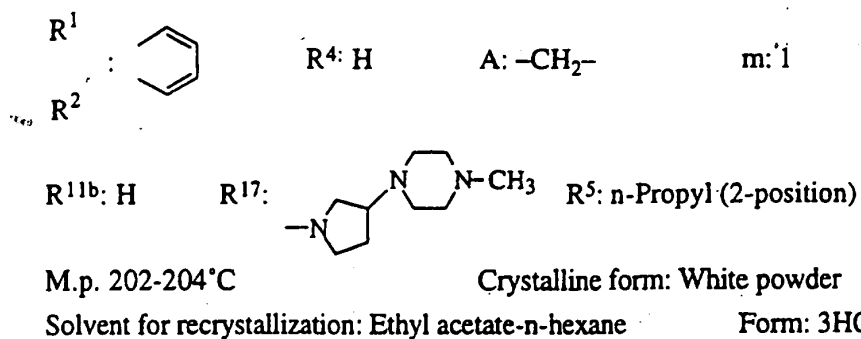
## Example 78



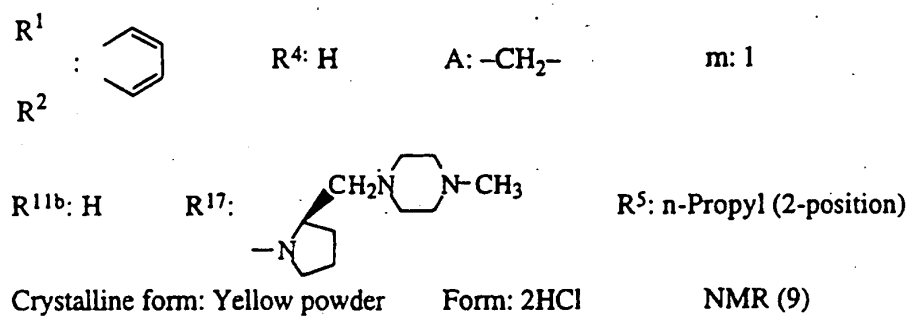
247

Table 58

## Example 79



## Example 80



## Example 81

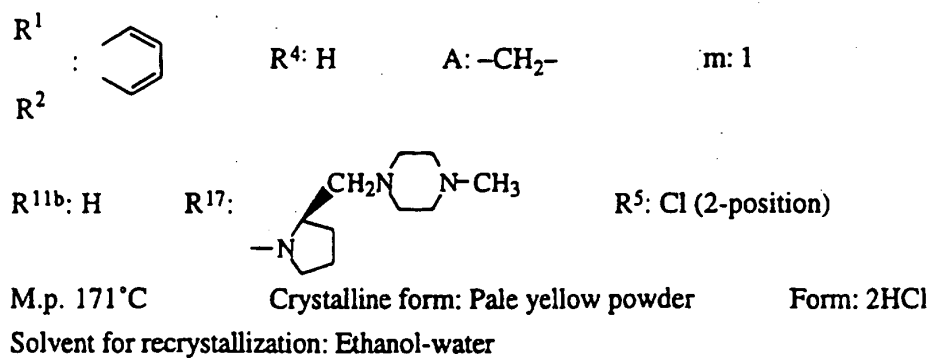
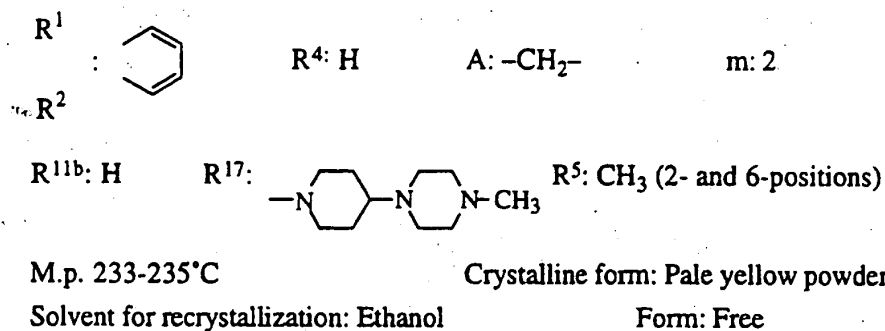
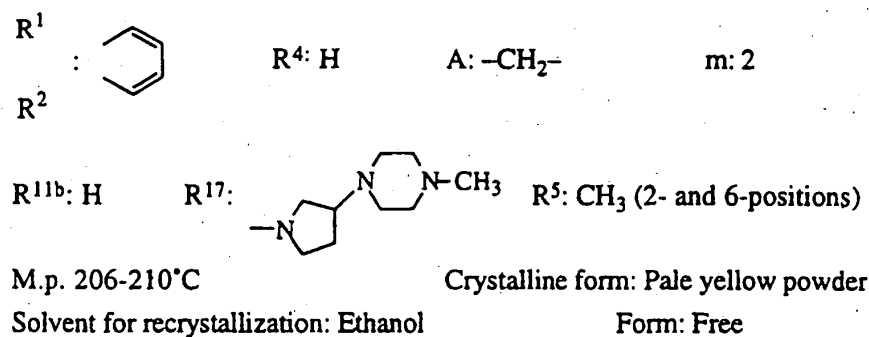


Table 59

## Example 82



## Example 83



## Example 84

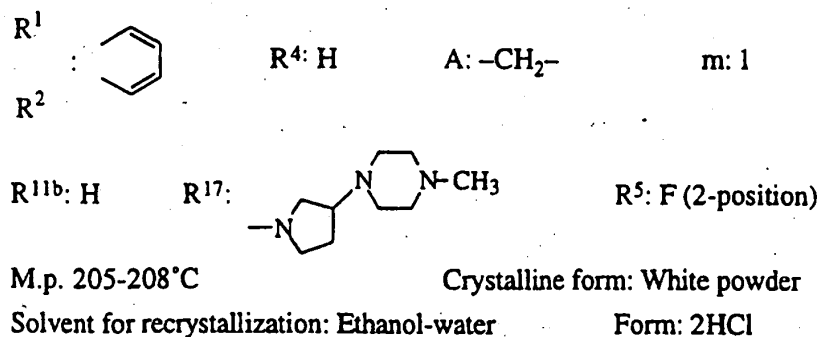
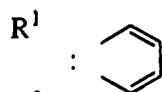
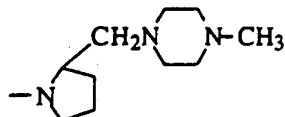


Table 60

## Example 85

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

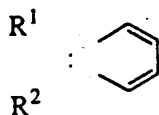
R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: F (2-position)

M.p. 173-175°C

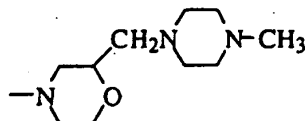
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether      Form: 2HCl

## Example 86

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

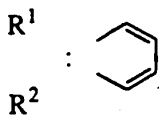
R<sup>5</sup>: C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>OOC(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>- (2-position)R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:

M.p. 152.4-156.3°C

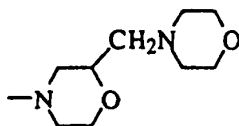
Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether      Form: 3HCl

## Example 87

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: F (2-position)

M.p. 150-153°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

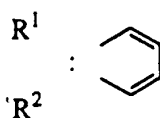
Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-diethyl ether      Form: Free



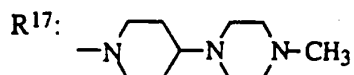
250

Table 61

## Example 88

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

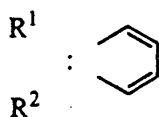
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: 2HCl

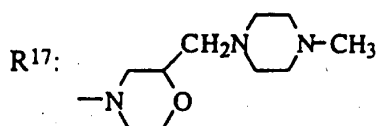
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

NMR (11)

## Example 89

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

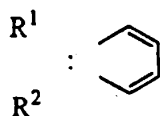
M.p. 203-206°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

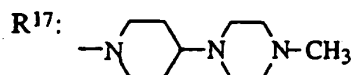
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

Form: 2HCl

## Example 90

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: n-Butyl (2-position)

M.p. 161.7-165°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

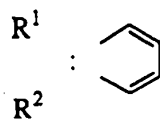
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

Form: 3HCl

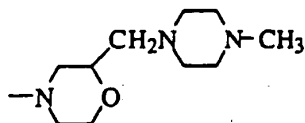
251

Table 62

## Example 91

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

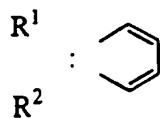
R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: n-Butyl (2-position)

M.p. 153-155.5°C

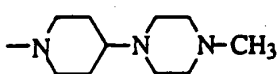
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether      Form: 3HCl

## Example 92

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

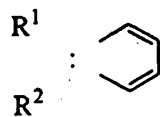
R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CF<sub>3</sub> (2-position)

M.p. 185-187°C

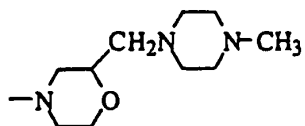
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Isopropyl alcohol-water      Form: 2HCl

## Example 93

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CF<sub>3</sub> (2-position)

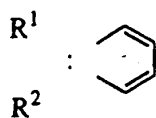
M.p. 175-178°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

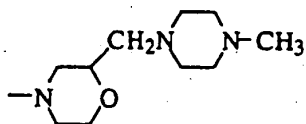
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water      Form: 2HCl

Table 63

## Example 94

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

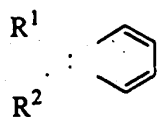
R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>COO(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>- (2-position)R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:

M.p. 151-154°C

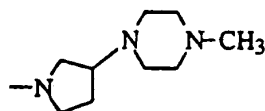
Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether      Form: 3HCl

## Example 95

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: n-Butyl (2-position)

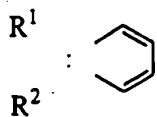
M.p. 167-168°C

Crystalline form: White powder

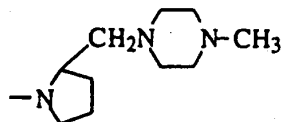
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: 3HCl

## Example 96

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: n-Butyl (2-position)

M.p. 135-137°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

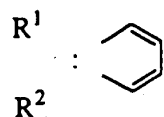
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

Form: 3HCl

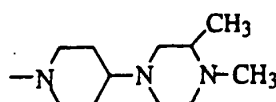
253

Table 64

## Example 97

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

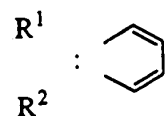
M.p. 183.5-186°C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

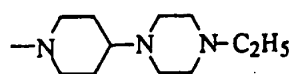
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: 2HCl

## Example 98

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

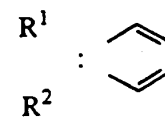
M.p. 174-176°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

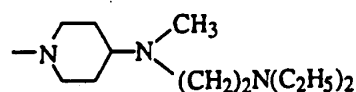
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: 2HCl

## Example 99

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

M.p. 153-154°C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

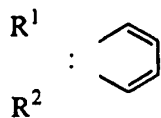
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: 2HCl

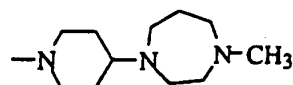
254

Table 65

## Example 100

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

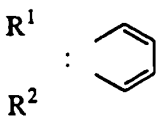
M.p. 177.5-179.5°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

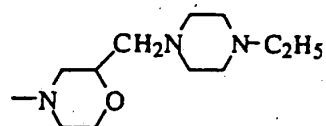
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: 3HCl

## Example 101

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

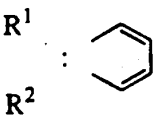
M.p. 165-168°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

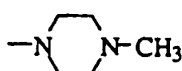
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

Form: 3HCl

## Example 102

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

M.p. 161.5-164°C

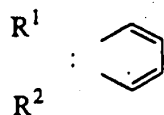
Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

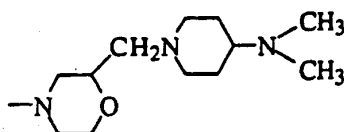
Form: HCl

Table 66

## Example 103

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

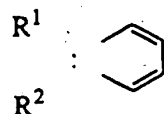
M.p. 181-183°C

Crystalline form: White powder

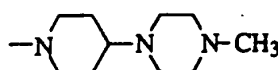
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: 2HCl

## Example 104

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>O- (2-position)

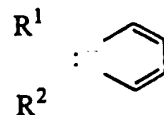
M.p. 174-177°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

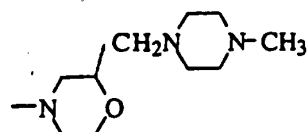
Form: 2HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-isopropyl alcohol-diethyl ether

## Example 105

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>O- (2-position)

M.p. 194-196°C

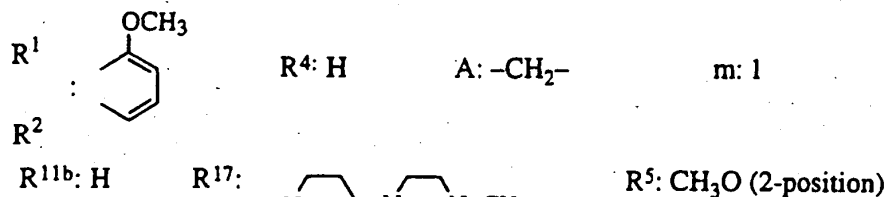
Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Form: 2HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-isopropyl alcohol-diethyl ether

Table 67

## Example 106

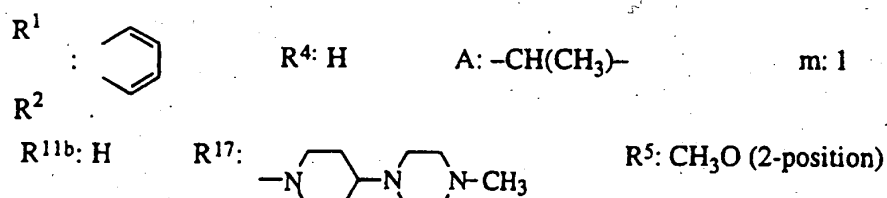


M.p. 200-203°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: 2HCl

## Example 107

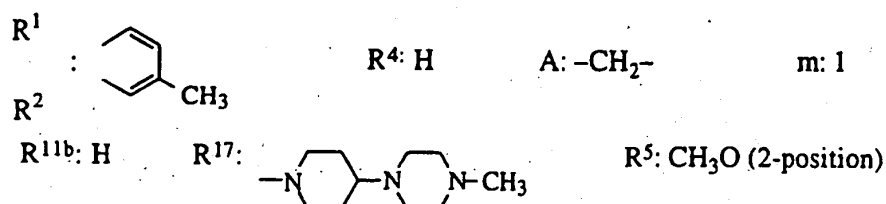


M.p. 169-170°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol

Form: 2HCl

## Example 108



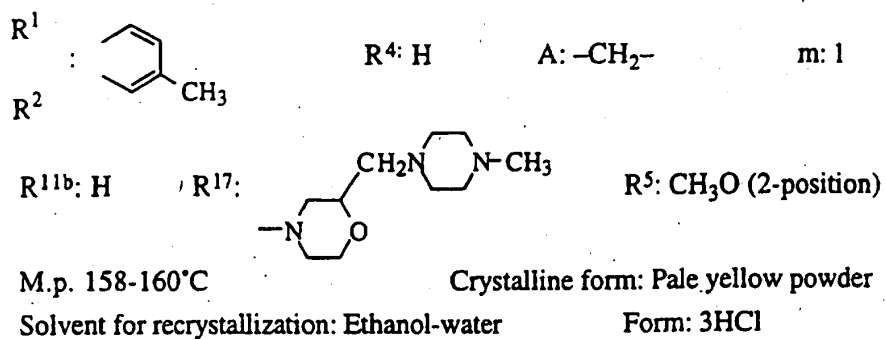
M.p. 181-189°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water      Form: 3HCl      NMR (12)

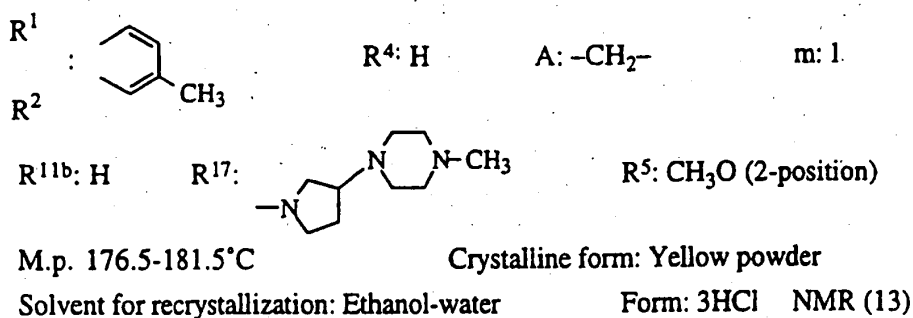
257

Table 68

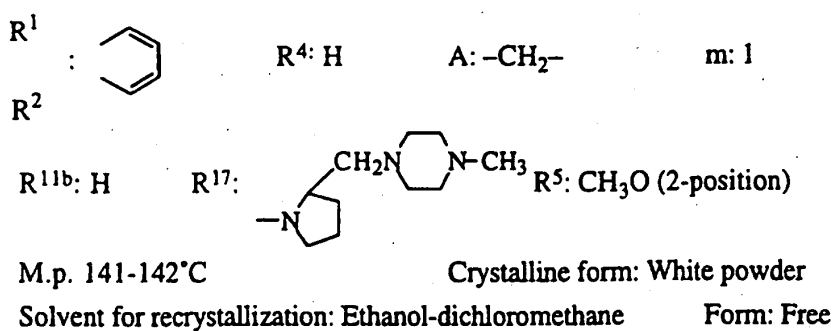
## Example 109



## Example 110



## Example 111

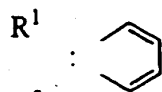




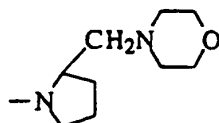
258

Table 69

## Example 112

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

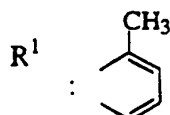
M.p. 131.5-133°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

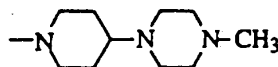
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane

Form: Free

## Example 113

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

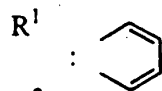
R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

Crystalline form: Pale yellow amorphous

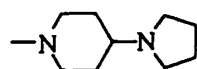
Form: Free

NMR (14)

## Example 114

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

M.p. 140-142°C

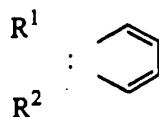
Form: Methanesulfonate

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diisopropyl ether

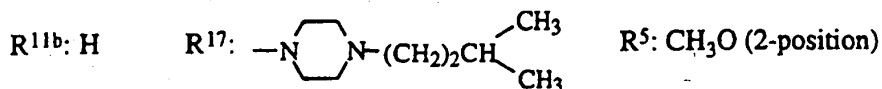
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Table 70

## Example 115

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1



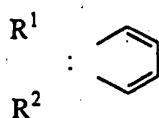
M.p. 168.5-169°C

Crystalline form: White powder

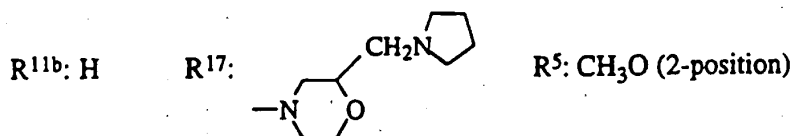
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane

Form: Free

## Example 116

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1



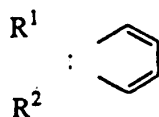
M.p. 128.2-131.5°C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

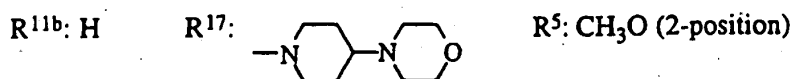
Form: Free

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether-dichloromethane

## Example 117

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1



M.p. 144-146°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

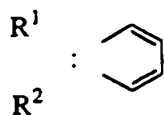
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol

Form: Methanesulfonate

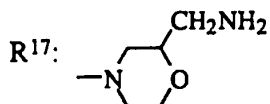
260

Table 71

## Example 118

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>O- (2-position)

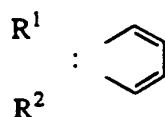
M.p. 190-192°C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

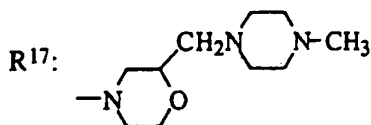
Form: Methanesulfonate

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-isopropyl alcohol-diethyl ether-water

## Example 119

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>OOC(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>- (2-position)R<sup>11b</sup>: H

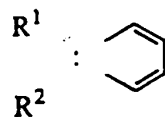
M.p. 110-111°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

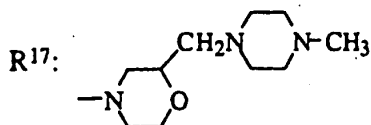
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol

Form: Free

## Example 120

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>5</sup>: (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NOC(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>- (2-position)R<sup>11b</sup>: H

M.p. 162.5-164°C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

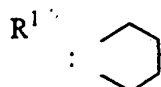
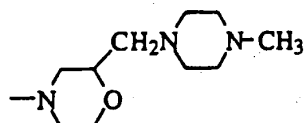
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: HCl

261

Table 72

## Example 121

 $R^4: H$  $A: -CH_2-$  $m: 1$  $R^{11b}: H$  $R^{17}:$  $R^5: CH_3O$  (2-position)

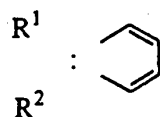
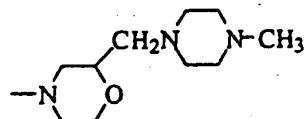
M.p. 205-207.5°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: 2HCl

## Example 122

 $R^4: H$  $A: -CH_2-$  $m: 1$  $R^5: (C_2H_5)_2NOCCH_2O-$  (2-position) $R^{11b}: H$  $R^{17}:$ 

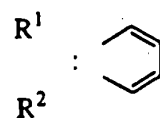
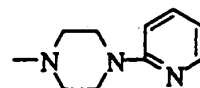
M.p. 167-169°C

Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: 2HCl

## Example 123

 $R^4: H$  $A: -CH_2-$  $m: 1$  $R^{11b}: H$  $R^{17}:$  $R^5: CH_3O-$  (2-position)

M.p. 190.5-192.5°C Crystalline form: Yellow powder Form: Free

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-diethyl ether

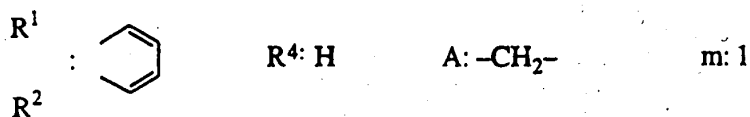
Table 73

## Example 124



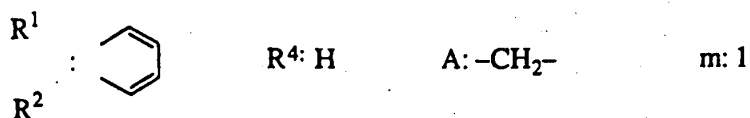
M.p. 148.2-149°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder      Form: Free  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-diethyl ether

## Example 125



M.p. 211-211.5°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane      Form: Free

## Example 126

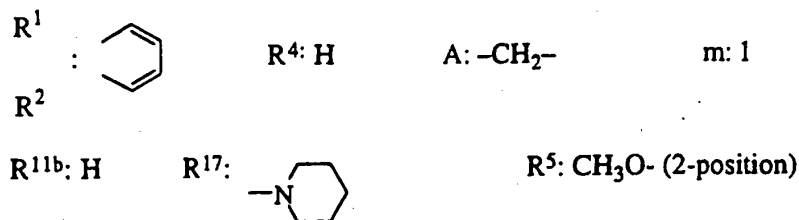


M.p. 204-206°C      Crystalline form: White needles  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane      Form: Free

263

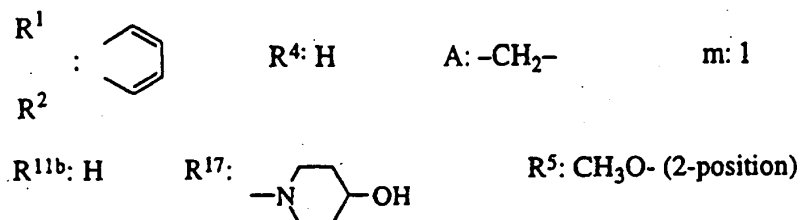
Table 74

## Example 127



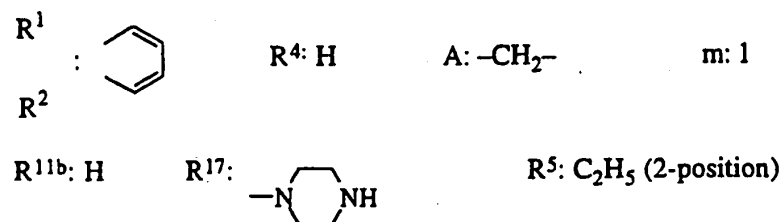
M.p. 168-170.4°C      Crystalline form: White needles      Form: Free  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-diethyl ether

## Example 128



M.p. 175.8-177.2°C      Crystalline form: White powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane      Form: Free

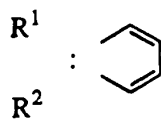
## Example 129



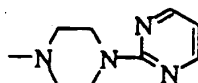
M.p. 130-132.5°C      Form: Dimethanesulfonate  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether  
 Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Table 75

## Example 130

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>O- (2-position)

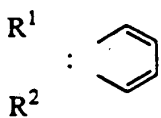
M.p. 225-226°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

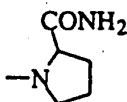
Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-ethanol

Form: Free

## Example 131

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

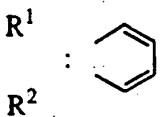
M.p. 222-223°C

Crystalline form: White powder

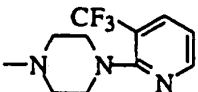
Solvent for recrystallization: Methanol-dichloromethane

Form: Free

## Example 132

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>O- (2-position)

M.p. 122.5-125°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

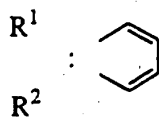
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane

Form: Free

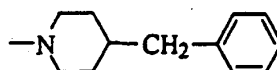
265

Table 76

## Example 133

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

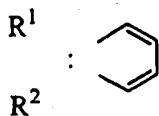
M.p. 162-163°C

Crystalline form: White powder

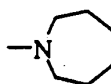
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane

Form: Free

## Example 134

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

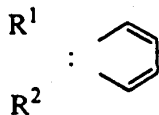
M.p. 177.2-178°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

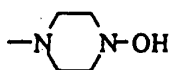
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane

Form: Free

## Example 135

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub> (2-position)

M.p. 140-155°C (decomp.)

Crystalline form: White powder

NMR (27)

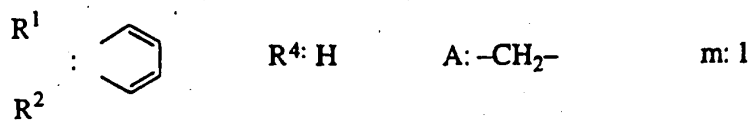
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-diethyl ether

Form: Free



Table 77

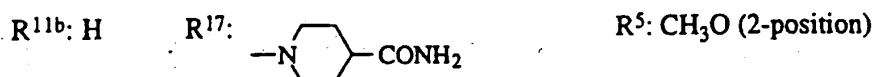
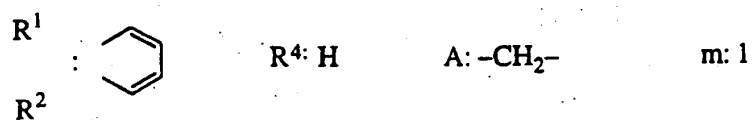
## Example 136



M.p. 171-172.2°C Crystalline form: White needles Form: Free

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-diethyl ether

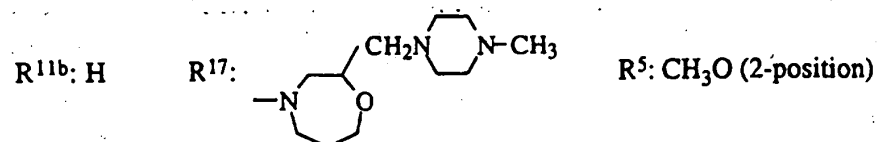
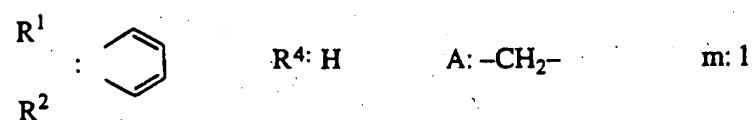
## Example 137



M.p. 232.5-233°C Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-ethanol Form: Free

## Example 138



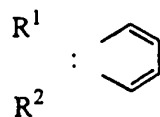
Crystalline form: Pale yellow amorphous

NMR (28)

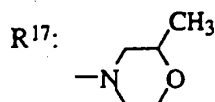
Form: 3HCl

Table 78

## Example 139

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

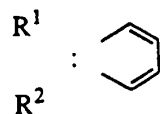
M.p. 192-194°C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

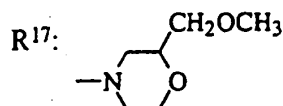
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane

Form: Free

## Example 140

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

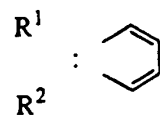
M.p. 201-204 °C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

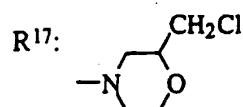
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane

Form: Free

## Example 141

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

M.p. 172-175°C

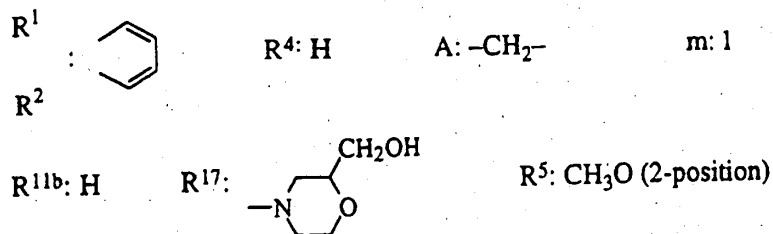
Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane

Form: Free

Table 79

## Example 142



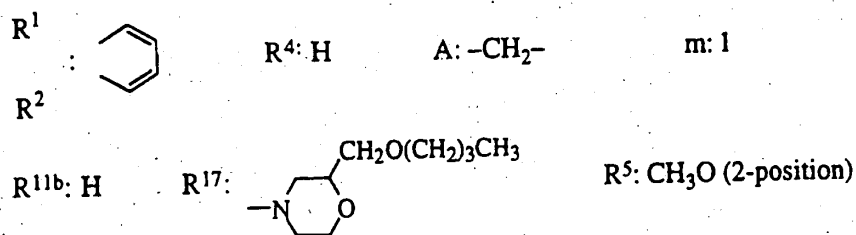
M.p. 146.5-148°C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane

Form: Free

## Example 143



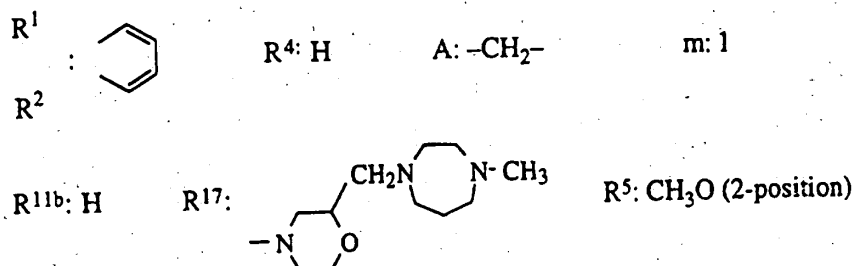
M.p. 114-117°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane

Form: Free

## Example 144



M.p. 176-181°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: 2HCl

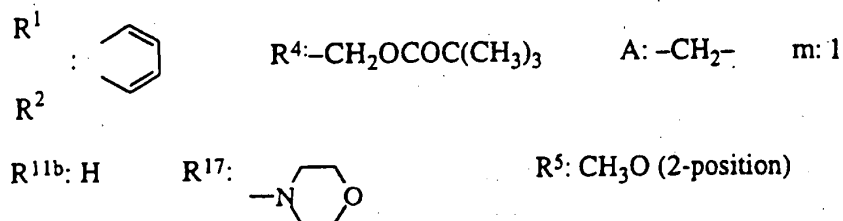
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

NMR (29)

269

Table 80

## Example 145



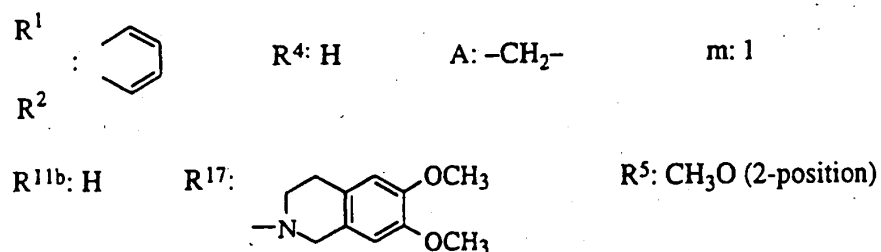
M.p. 106.5-108.2°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether-n-hexane

Form: Free

## Example 146



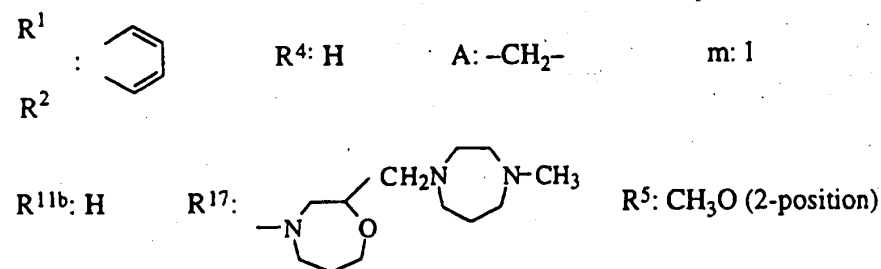
M.p. 189-190°C

Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane

Form: Free

## Example 147



M.p. 151-153°C

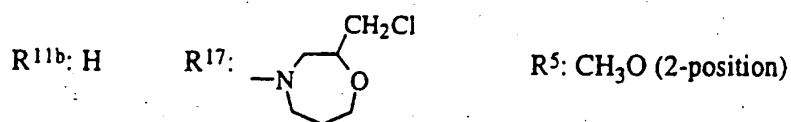
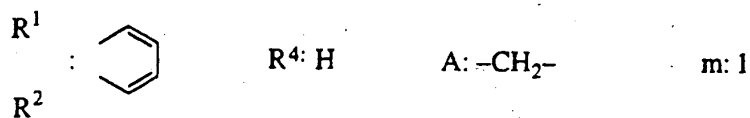
Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-diethyl ether

Form: Free

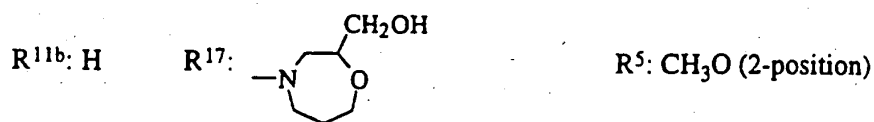
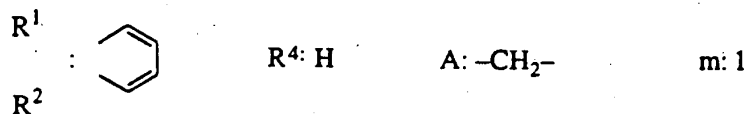
Table 81

## Example 148



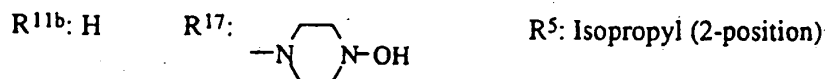
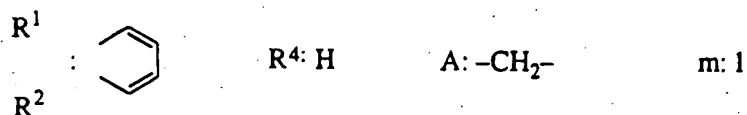
M.p. 145-147°C      Crystalline form: White powder      Form: Free  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-chloroform

## Example 149



M.p. 189-190.5°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-chloroform      Form: Free

## Example 150

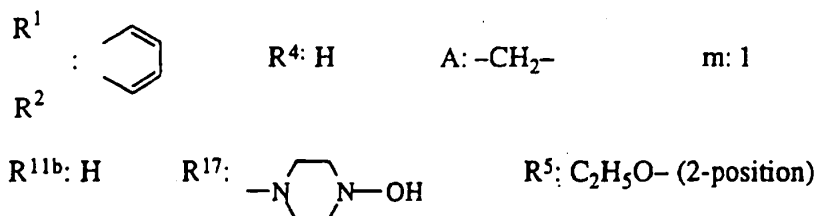


M.p. 196-199°C (decomp.)      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane      Form: Free

271

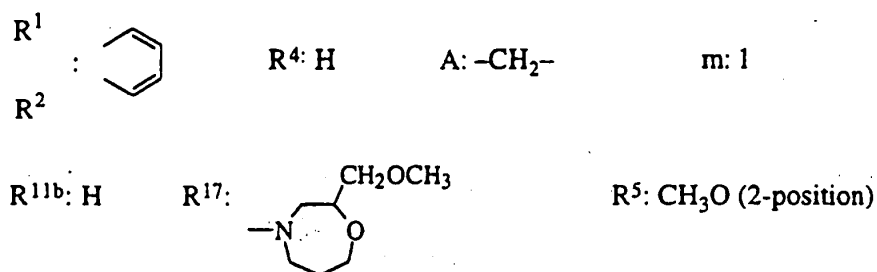
Table 82

## Example 151



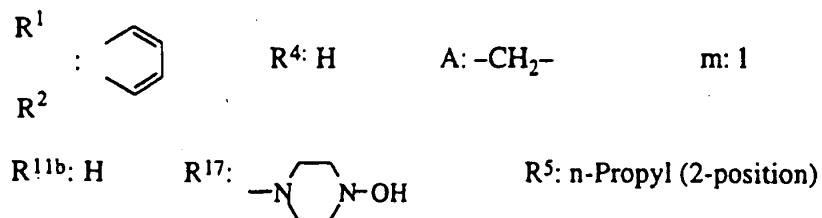
M.p. 155-158°C (decomp.)    Crystalline form: Yellow powder    Form: Free  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-diethyl ether

## Example 152



M.p. 162-164°C    Crystalline form: White powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-diethyl ether    Form: Free

## Example 153

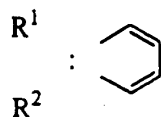


M.p. 137-139°C (decomp.)    Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane    Form: Free

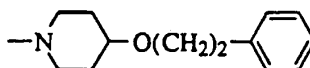
272

Table 83

## Example 154

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

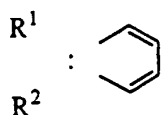
M.p. 158-159°C

Crystalline form: White powder

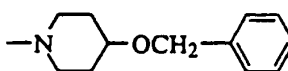
Form: Free

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-diethyl ether

## Example 155

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

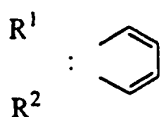
M.p. 154-154.5°C

Crystalline form: White powder

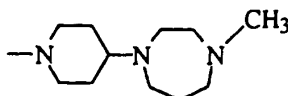
Form: Free

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-diethyl ether

## Example 156

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: -CH<sub>3</sub>R<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

M.p. 180-181.5°C

Crystalline form: Dark yellow powder

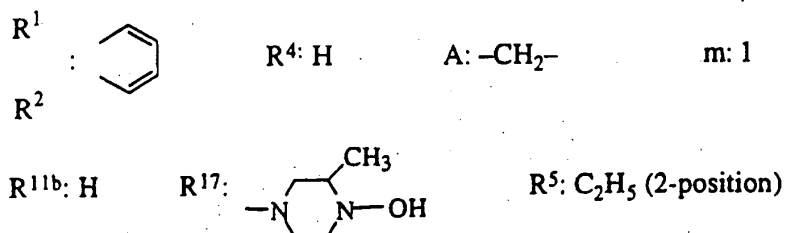
Form: HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-diethyl ether

273

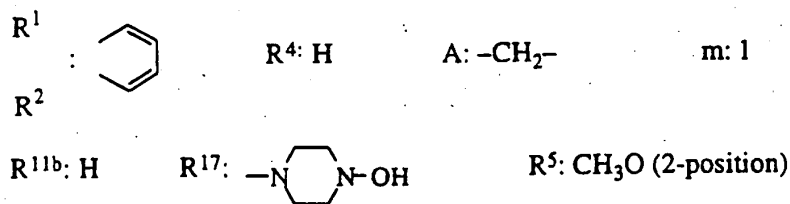
Table 84

## Example 157



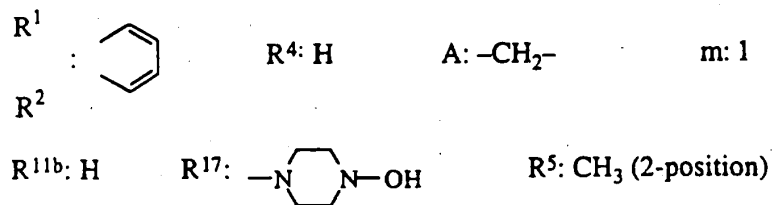
M.p. 165-175°C (decomp.)    Crystalline form: Yellow powder    NMR (30)  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-ethanol-diethyl ether    Form: Free

## Example 158



M.p. 125-128°C    Crystalline form: Yellow powder    Form: Free  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane

## Example 159



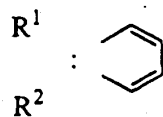
M.p. 195-195.5°C    Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder    Form: Free  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane



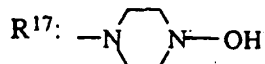
274

Table 85

## Example 160

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: CF<sub>3</sub> (2-position)

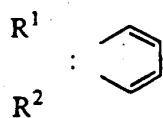
M.p. 188-190°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

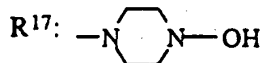
Form: Free

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane

## Example 161

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: F (2-position)

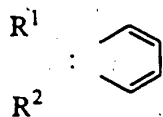
M.p. 197-200°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

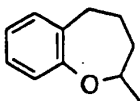
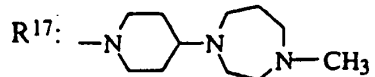
Form: Free

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane

## Example 162

R<sup>4</sup>: H

m: 1

R<sup>5</sup> and A combine to form:R<sup>11b</sup>: H

M.p. 138-141°C

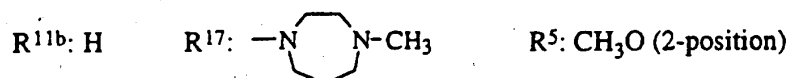
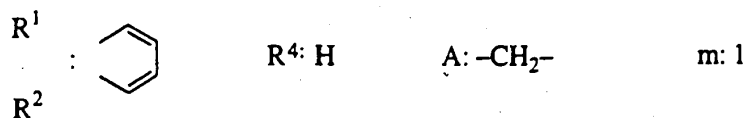
Crystalline form: White powder

Form: Free

275

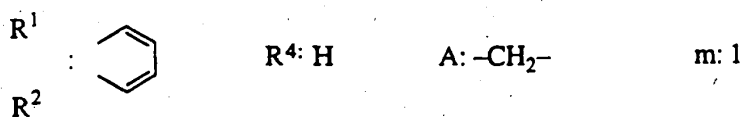
Table 86

## Example 163



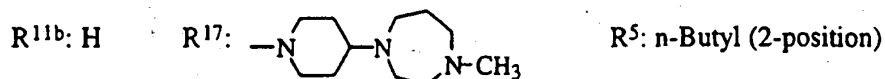
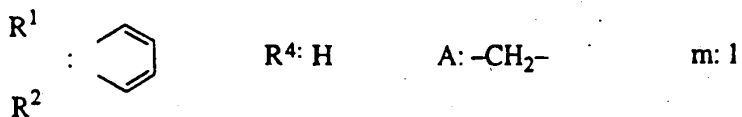
M.p. 155.5-158°C      Crystalline form: Pale brown powder      Form: Free  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane

## Example 164



M.p. 163-166°C      Crystalline form: Brown powder      Form: Free  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-ethanol-diethyl ether

## Example 165

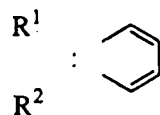


M.p. 161-163.4°C      Crystalline form: Yellow powder      Form: 2HCl  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-water

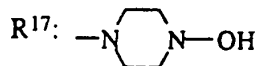
276

Table 87

## Example 166

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: n-Butyl (2-position)

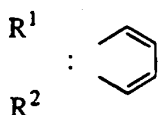
M.p. 137-139°C

Crystalline form: Pale brown powder

Form: Free

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-water

## Example 167

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub> (2-position)

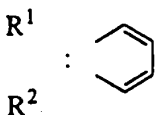
M.p. 215-217°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

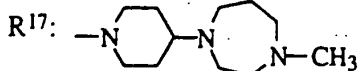
Form: Free

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane

## Example 168

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: n-Heptyl (2-position)

M.p. 146.5-149°C

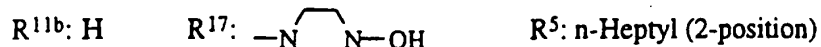
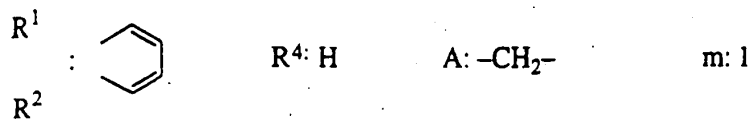
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-water

Form: 2HCl

Table 88

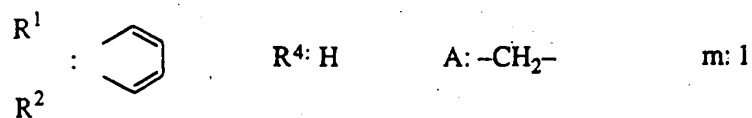
## Example 169



M.p. 152-153.5°C      Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-water      Form: Free

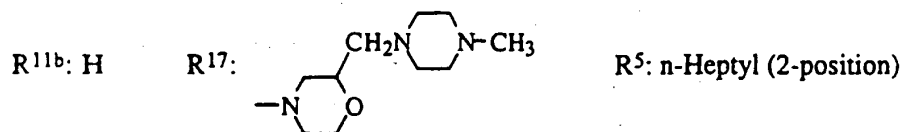
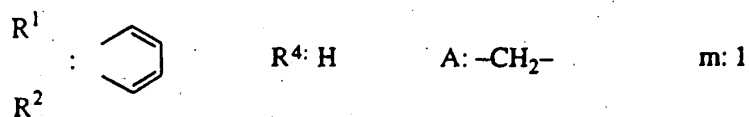
## Example 170



M.p. 166.5-169.3°C      Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane      Form: Free

## Example 171



M.p. 155-165°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-water      Form: 2HCl NMR (31)

278

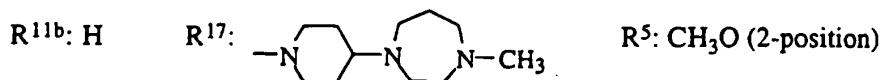
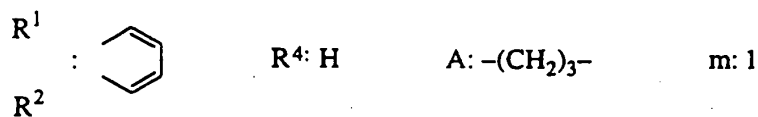
Table 89

## Example 172



M.p. 219-220°C      Crystalline form: Dark yellow powder      Form: Free  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane

## Example 173

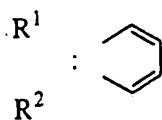


M.p. 177-185°C      Crystalline form: Dark yellow powder      Form: 3HCl  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-water      NMR (32)

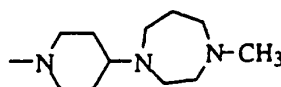
279

Table 90

## Example 175

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>O (2-position)

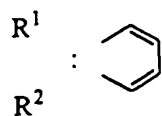
M.p. 182-184°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

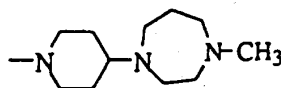
Form: 2HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

## Example 176

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub> (2-position)

M.p. 265-270°C

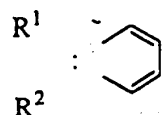
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: 2HCl

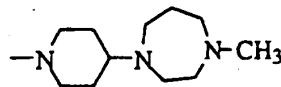
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

NMR (33)

## Example 177

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: Isopropyl (2-position)

M.p. 203-207°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

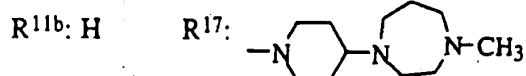
Form: 2HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

280

Table 91

## Example 178

 $R^5$ :  $\text{CH}_3$  (2- and 6-positions)

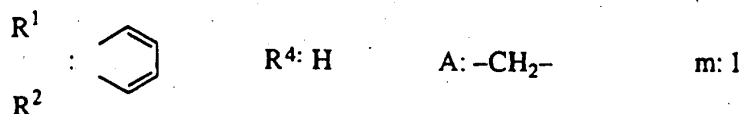
M.p. 234-238°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: 2HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

## Example 179



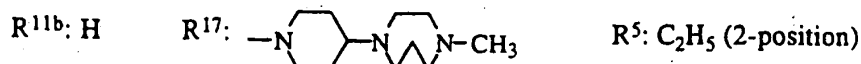
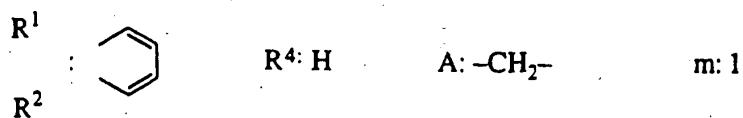
M.p. 214-217°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: 2HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

## Example 180



M.p. 188-190°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

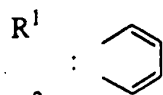
Form: 2HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

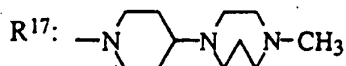
281

Table 92

## Example 181

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: n-Propyl (2-position)

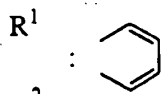
M.p. 164-167°C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

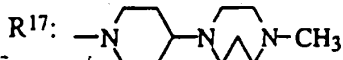
Form: 2HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

## Example 182

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)

M.p. 165-168°C

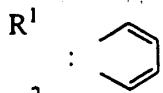
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: 2HCl

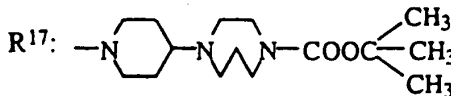
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

NMR (56)

## Example 183

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)R<sup>11b</sup>: H

M.p. 143-145°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

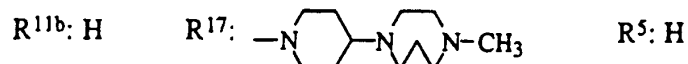
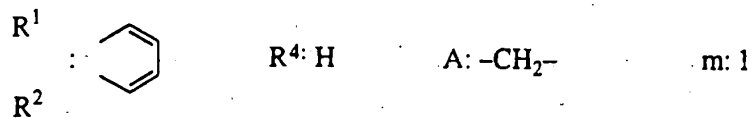
Form: Free

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane



Table 93

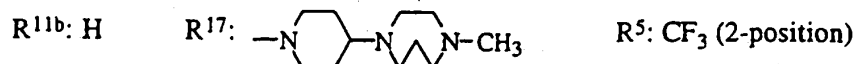
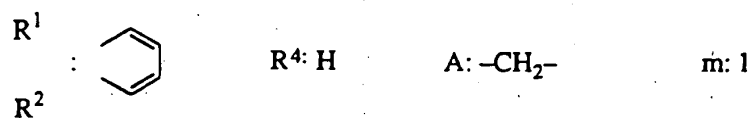
## Example 184



M.p. 215-218.5°C (decomp.)      Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether      Form: 2HCl

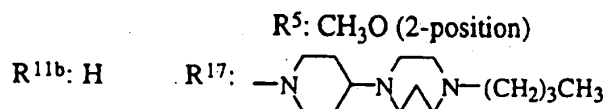
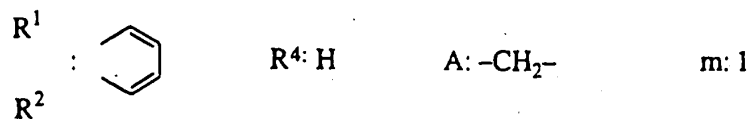
## Example 185



M.p. 101-106°C      Crystalline form: White powder      Form: 2HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Diethyl ether-ethanol-water      NMR (34)

## Example 186



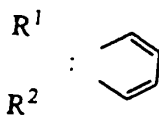
M.p. 179-183°C      Crystalline form: White powder      Form: 2HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

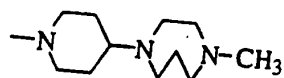
283

Table 94

## Example 187

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>5</sup>: C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)- (2-position)R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:

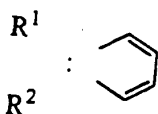
M.p. 129-131°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

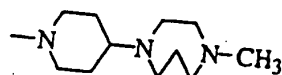
Solvent for recrystallization: Isopropyl alcohol-water

Form: Dioxalate

## Example 188

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub> (3-position)

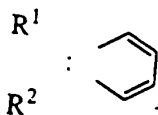
M.p. 163-165°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

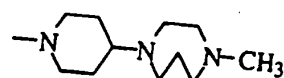
Solvent for recrystallization: Water-ethanol-dichloromethane

Form: 2HCl

## Example 189

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>- (2-position)

M.p. 161-162°C

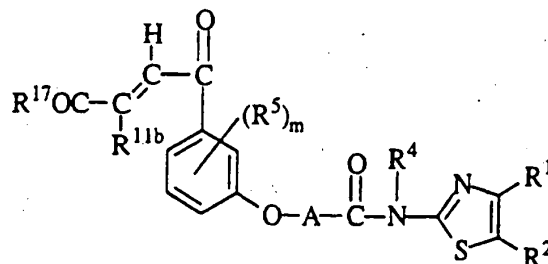
Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Isopropyl alcohol-water

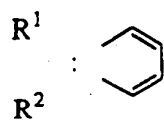
Form: 2HCl

284

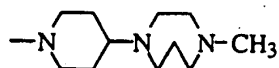
Table 95



## Example 190

 $R^4$ : HA:  $-\text{CH}_2-$ 

m: 1

 $R^{11b}$ : H $R^{17}$ : $R^5$ :  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}$  (4-position)

M.p. 166-168°C

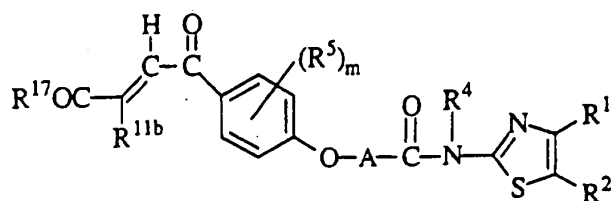
Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Form: 2HCl

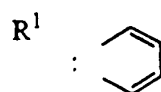
Solvent for recrystallization: Water-ethanol-dichloromethane

285

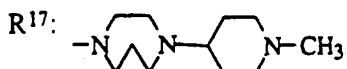
Table 96



## Example 191

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

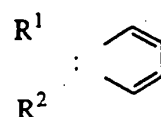
M.p. 175-177°C

Crystalline form: White powder

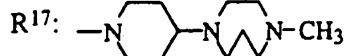
Form: 2HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

## Example 192

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 2

R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub> (2- and 3-positions)R<sup>11b</sup>: H

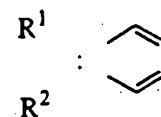
M.p. 158-162°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

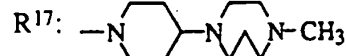
Form: Succinate

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diisopropyl ether

## Example 193

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 2

R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub> (2- and 3-positions)R<sup>11b</sup>: H

M.p. 126-128.5°C

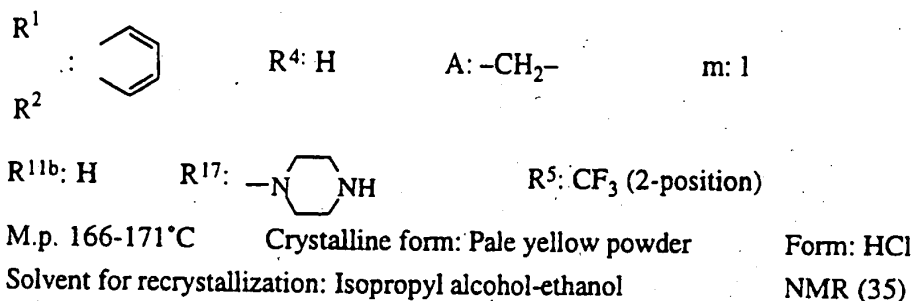
Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Form: Succinate

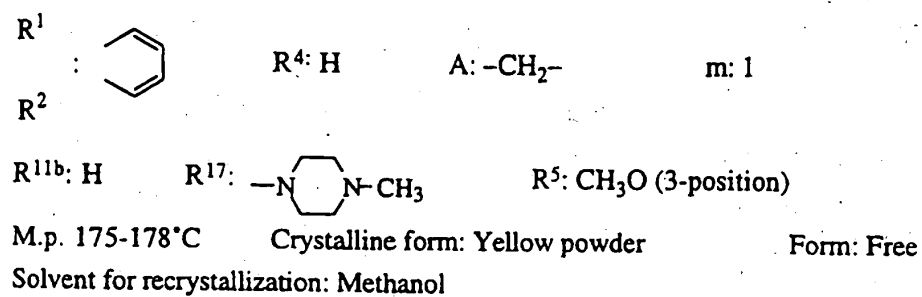
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether

Table 97

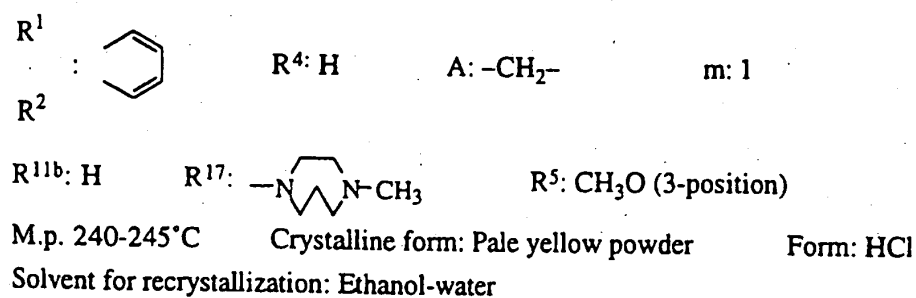
## Example 194



## Example 195



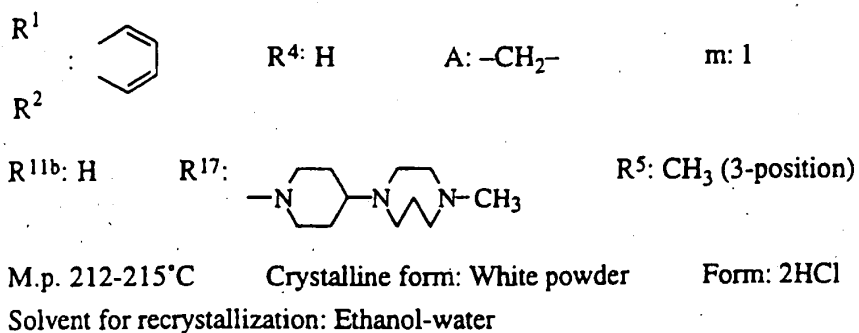
## Example 196



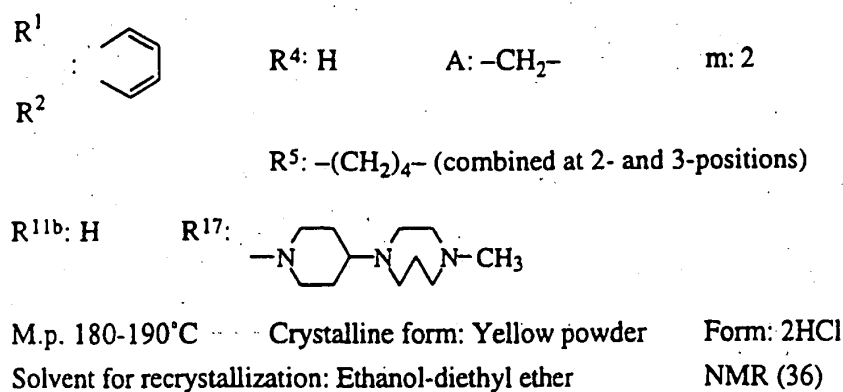
287

Table 98

## Example 197



## Example 198



## Example 199

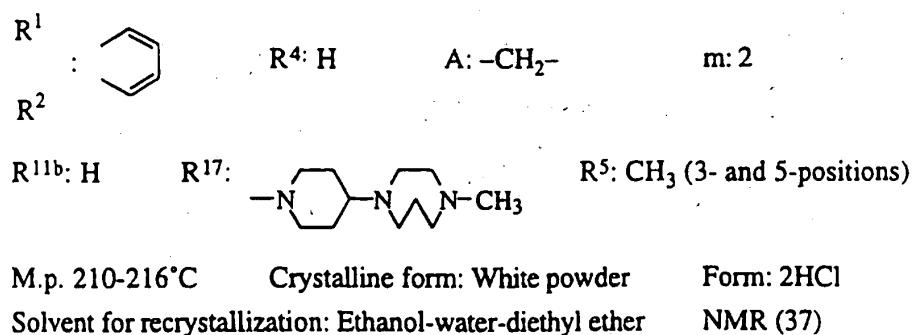
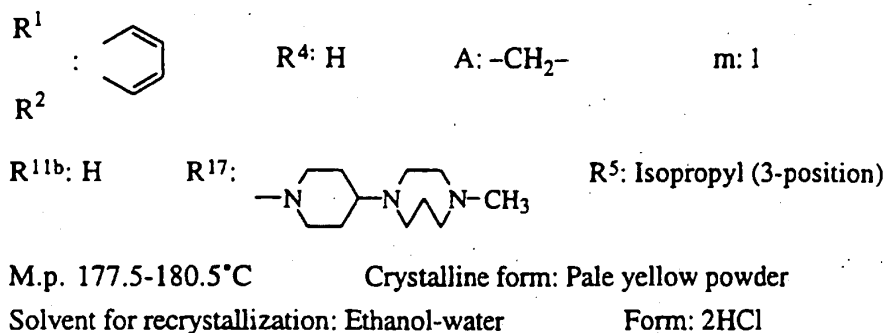
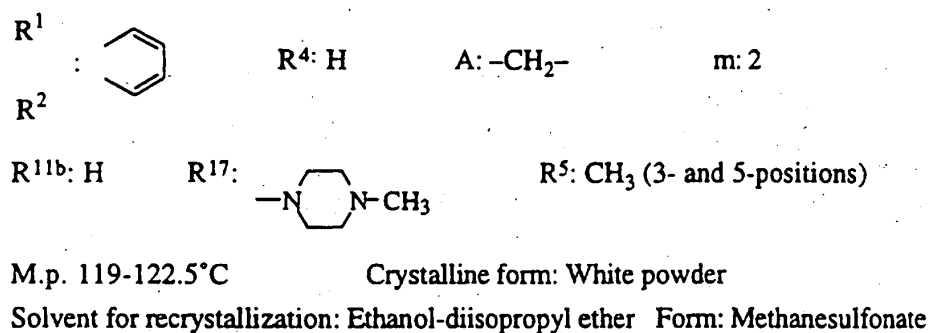


Table 99

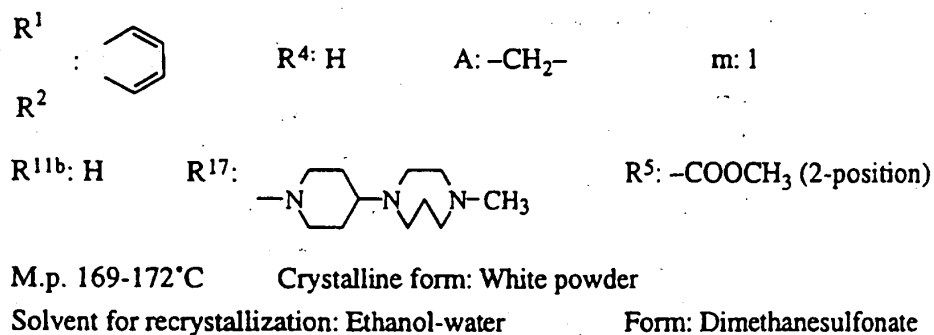
## Example 200



## Example 201



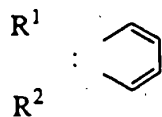
## Example 202



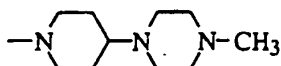
289

Table 100

## Example 203

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)

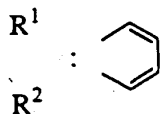
M.p. 214-220°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

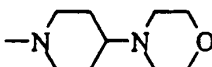
Form: Free

Solvent for recrystallization: Methanol

## Example 204

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)

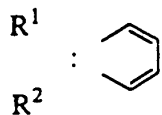
M.p. 195-197°C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

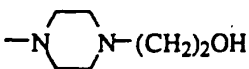
Form: Free

Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-methanol

## Example 205

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 2

R<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>- (combined at 2- and 3-positions)R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:

M.p. 151-153°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Water

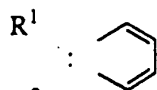
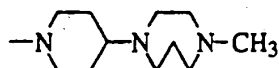
Form: Free



290

Table 101

## Example 206

 $R^4: \text{H}$  $A: -\text{CH}_2-$  $m: 1$  $R^{11b}: \text{H}$  $R^{17}: -$  $R^5: n\text{-Butyl (3-position)}$ 

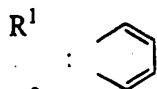
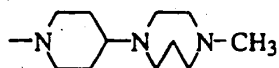
M.p. 148-150.4°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: 2HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Isopropyl alcohol-water-diethyl ether

## Example 207

 $R^4: \text{H}$  $A: -\text{CH}_2-$  $m: 1$  $R^{11b}: \text{H}$  $R^{17}: -$  $R^5: (\text{CH}_3)_3\text{C- (2-position)}$ 

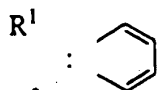
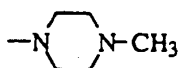
M.p. 142-144.5°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: Oxalate

Solvent for recrystallization: Isopropyl alcohol-water

## Example 208

 $R^4: \text{H}$  $A: -\text{CH}_2-$  $m: 1$  $R^{11b}: \text{H}$  $R^{17}: -$  $R^5: \text{CH}_3 \text{ (3-position)}$ 

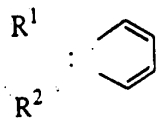
M.p. 139.2-140.8°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

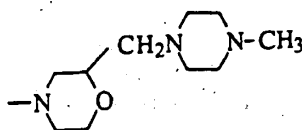
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water Form: Methanesulfonate

Table 102

## Example 209

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O- (3-position)

M.p. 158-163°C

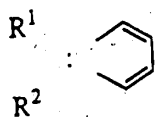
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: 2HCl

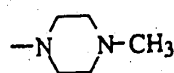
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

NMR (38)

## Example 210

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

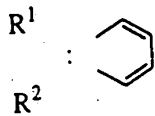
R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: n-Butyl (3-position)

M.p. 84-86°C

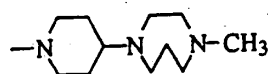
Crystalline form: Yellow amorphous

Form: Free

## Example 211

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: n-Propyl (3-position)

M.p. 121-124°C

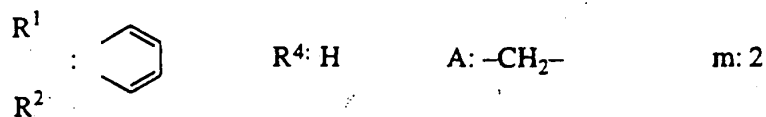
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: Dioxalate

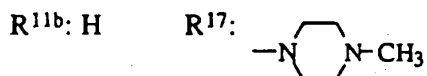
Solvent for recrystallization: Isopropyl alcohol-water

Table 103

## Example 212



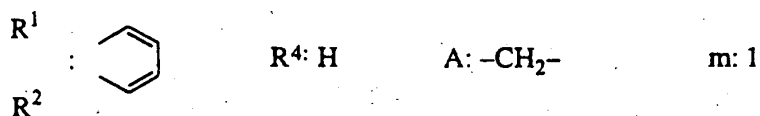
$R^5$ :  $\text{CH}_3$  (2- and 3-positions)



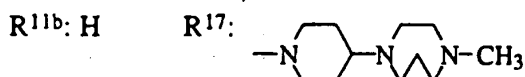
M.p. 140-150°C      Crystalline form: Yellow powder      NMR (39)

Solvent for recrystallization: Acetone-water      Form: Methanesulfonate

## Example 213



$R^5$ :  $-(\text{CH}_2)_2-\text{CONH}-$  (combined at 2- and 3-positions)



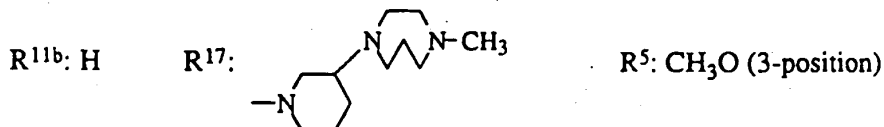
M.p. 173-175°C

Form: Dimethanesulfonate

Solvent for recrystallization: Diethyl ether-ethanol-water

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

## Example 214



M.p. 168-172°C (decomp.)      Crystalline form: Yellow powder

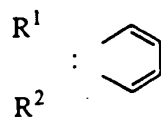
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether

Form: 2HCl

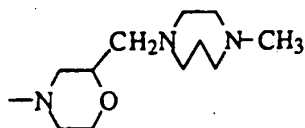
293

Table 104

## Example 215

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

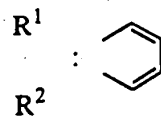
R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)

M.p. 155-160°C NMR (40)

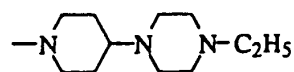
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder Form: 2HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-isopropyl alcohol-diethyl ether

## Example 216

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:

M.p. 163-165°C

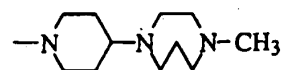
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water Form: 2HCl

## Example 217

R<sup>1</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

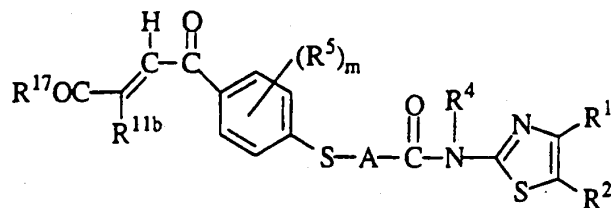
R<sup>2</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:

M.p. 190-193°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Yellow powder

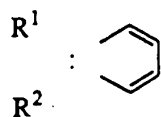
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water Form: 2HCl

294

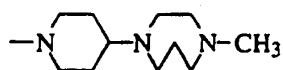
Table 105



## Example 218

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

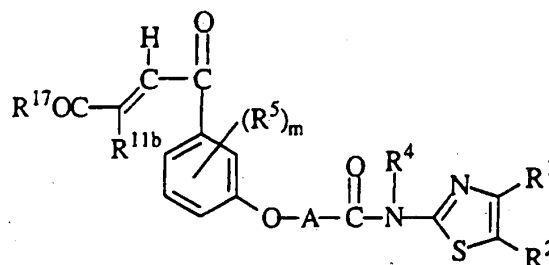
R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

M.p. 174.4-176.5°C Crystalline form: Yellow powder

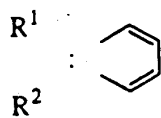
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether Form: 2HCl

295

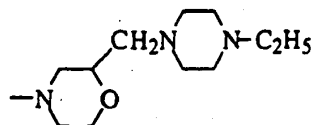
Table 106



## Example 219

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O- (3-position)

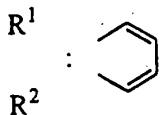
M.p. 162-165°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

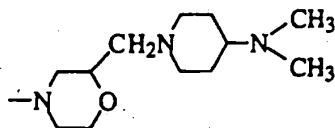
Solvent for recrystallization: Diethyl ether-water-ethanol

Form: 2HCl

## Example 220

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O- (3-position)

M.p. 206-211°C

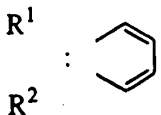
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: 2HCl

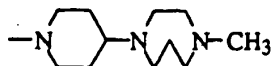
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether-isopropyl alcohol

NMR (41)

## Example 221

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CHO- (3-position)

M.p. 168-172°C

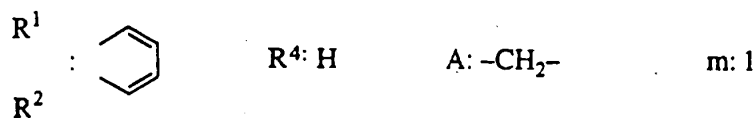
Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Form: 2HCl

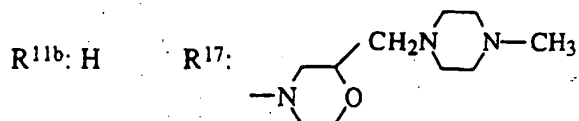
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-isopropyl alcohol-diethyl ether

Table 107

## Example 222

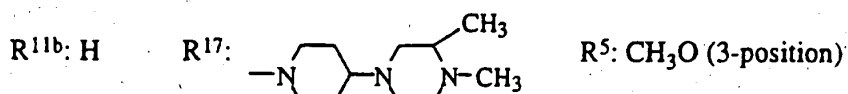
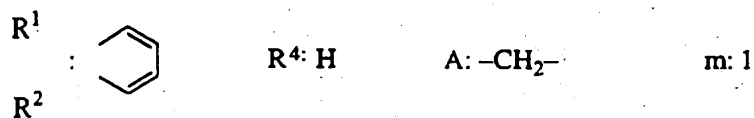


$R^5$ :  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHO}-$  (3-position)



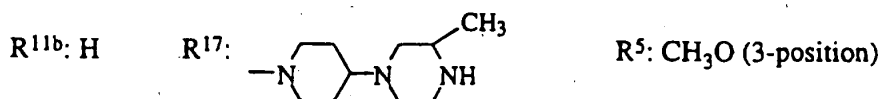
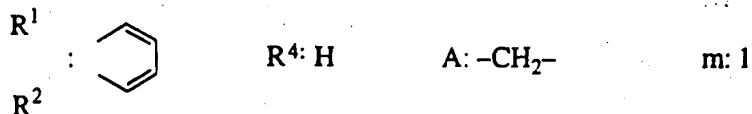
M.p. 203-208°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder      Form: 2HCl  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-isopropyl alcohol-diethyl ether  
 NMR (42)

## Example 223



M.p. 180-185°C      Crystalline form: White powder      Form: 2HCl  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water      NMR (43)

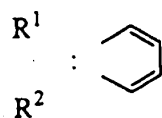
## Example 224



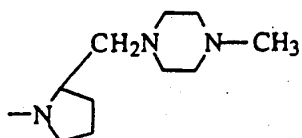
M.p. 180-190°C      Crystalline form: Yellow powder      Form: 2HCl  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol      NMR (44)

Table 108

## Example 225

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:

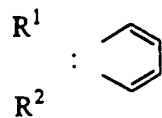
M.p. 157-160°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

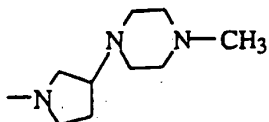
Form: 2HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

## Example 226

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)

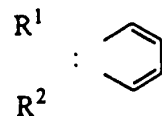
M.p. 171-174°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

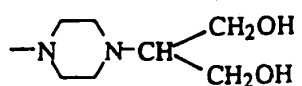
Form: 2HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

## Example 227

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)

M.p. 236-238°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

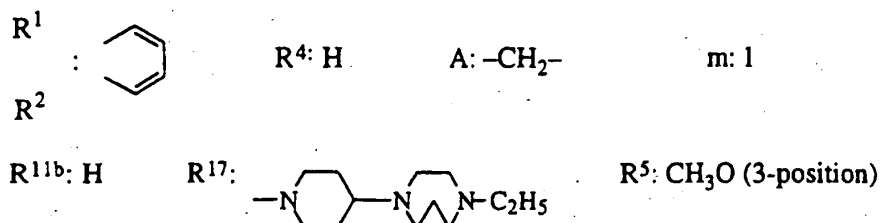
Form: HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water



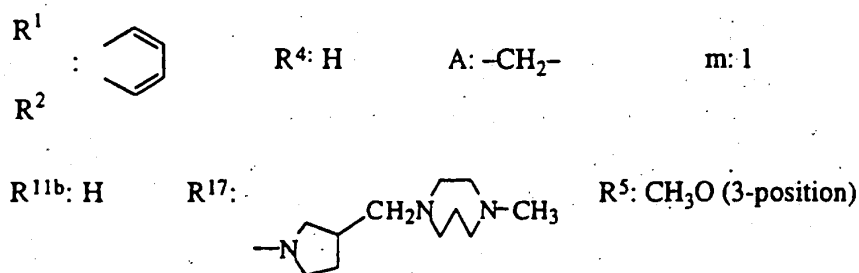
Table 109

## Example 228



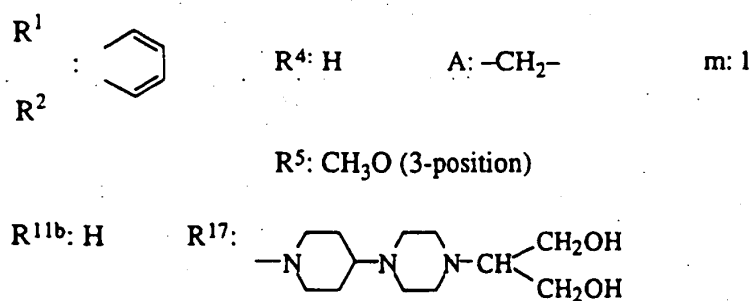
M.p. 161-165°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder      Form: 2HCl  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether-isopropyl alcohol

## Example 229



M.p. 191-194°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder      Form: 2HCl  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

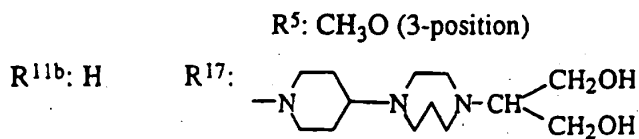
## Example 230



M.p. 200-210°C (decomp.)      Crystalline form: Yellow powder      NMR (45)  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether      Form: 2HCl

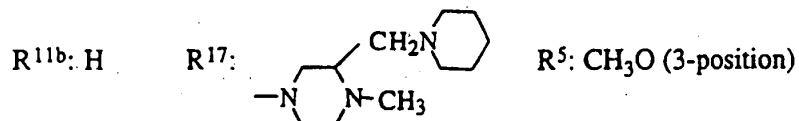
Table 110

## Example 231



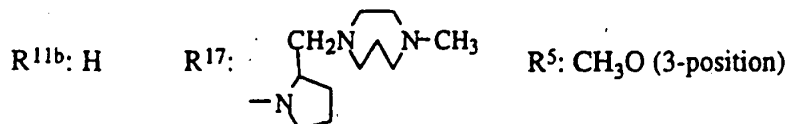
M.p. 165-170°C    Crystalline form: Yellow powder    Form: 2HCl  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Diethyl ether-ethanol-isopropyl alcohol-water  
 NMR (46)

## Example 232



M.p. 150-170°C    Crystalline form: Yellow powder    NMR (47)  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Isopropyl alcohol    Form: Dimethanesulfonate

## Example 233

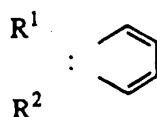


M.p. 166-169°C    Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water    Form: 2HCl

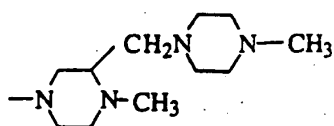
300

Table 111

## Example 234

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)

M.p. 186-200°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Form: 3HCl

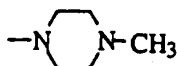
Solvent for recrystallization: Isopropyl alcohol

NMR (48)

## Example 235

R<sup>1</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>2</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:

M.p. 204-210°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Form: HCl

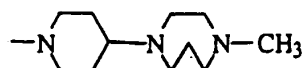
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

NMR (49)

## Example 236

R<sup>1</sup>: HR<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>2</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:

M.p. 157-160°C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

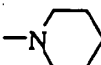
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: 2HCl



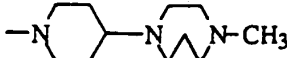
301

Table 112

## Example 237

R<sup>1</sup>: H R<sup>4</sup>: H A: -CH<sub>2</sub>- m: 1R<sup>2</sup>: H R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)R<sup>11b</sup>: H R<sup>17</sup>: M.p. 83.1-85.5°C Crystalline form: Yellow powder Form: Free  
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether-n-hexane

## Example 238

R<sup>1</sup>:  R<sup>4</sup>: H A: -CH<sub>2</sub>- m: 1R<sup>2</sup>:  R<sup>11b</sup>: H R<sup>17</sup>:  R<sup>5</sup>: F (3-position)M.p. 215-220°C Crystalline form: White powder Form: 2HCl  
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-isopropyl alcohol-diethyl ether-water  
NMR (50)

## Example 239



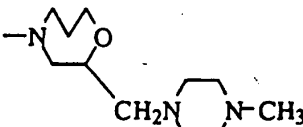
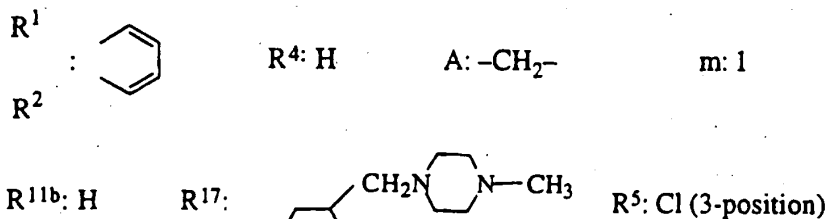
R<sup>1</sup>:  R<sup>4</sup>: H A: -CH<sub>2</sub>- m: 1R<sup>2</sup>:  R<sup>11b</sup>: H R<sup>17</sup>:  R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)M.p. 149-154°C Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder Form: 2HCl  
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-isopropyl alcohol-diethyl ether  
NMR (51)

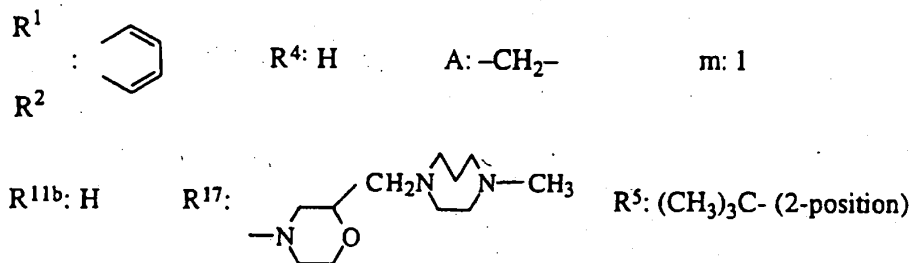
Table 113

## Example 240



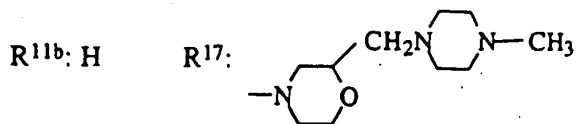
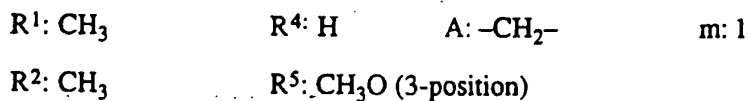
M.p. 126-129°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder      Form: Free  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-isopropyl alcohol

## Example 241



M.p. 181-183.8°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder      Form: 2HCl  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

## Example 242

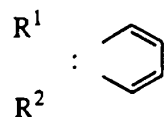


M.p. 192-197°C (decomp.)      Crystalline form: Yellow powder      Form: 2HCl  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water      NMR (52)

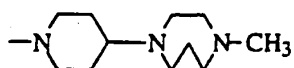
303

Table 1:14

## Example 243

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>O (3-position)

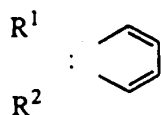
M.p. 166-170°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

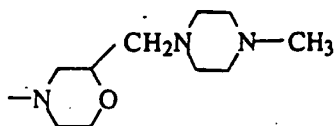
Form: 2HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

## Example 244

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

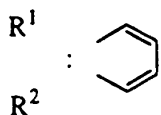
m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CF<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O (3-position)

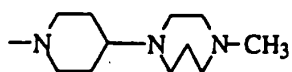
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder Form: Dimethanesulfonate NMR (53)

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether-isopropyl alcohol

## Example 245

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CF<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O (3-position)

M.p. 179-183°C

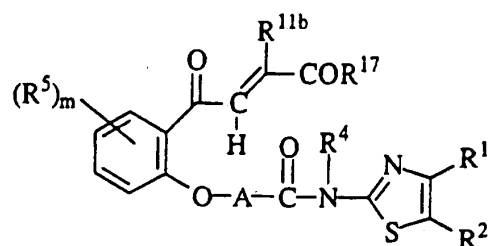
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: 2HCl

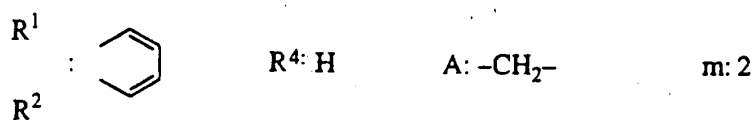
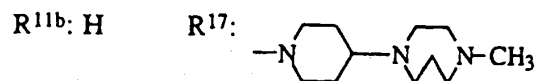
Solvent for recrystallization: Isopropyl alcohol-ethanol-water-diethyl ether

304

Table 115



## Example 246

 $R^5$ :  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}$  (3- and 5-positions)

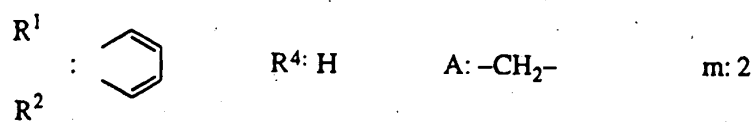
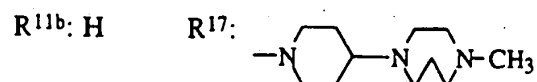
M.p. 182-185°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: 2HCl, trans-form

## Example 247

 $R^5$ :  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}$  (3- and 5-positions)

M.p. 177-183°C

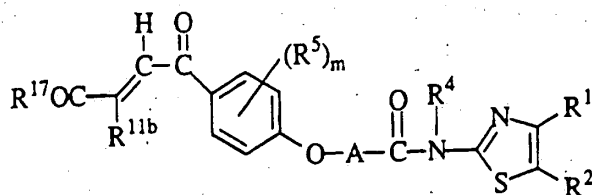
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

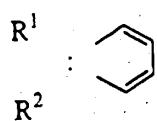
Form: 2HCl, cis-form

305

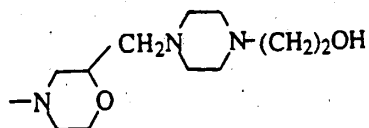
Table 116



## Example 248

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)

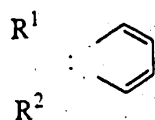
M.p. 158-162°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

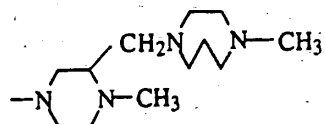
Form: 2HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

## Example 249

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)

M.p. 167-171°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Yellow powder

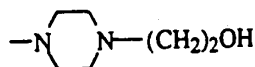
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: 3HCl

## Example 250

R<sup>1</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>2</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:

M.p. 137-140°C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water Form: Methanesulfonate

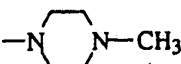


Table 117

## Example 251

$R^1$ :  $(CH_3)_3C-$  (3-position)     $R^4$ : H    A:  $-CH_2-$     m: 1

$R^2$ : H     $R^5$ :  $CH_3O$  (3-position)


$R^{11b}$ : H     $R^{17}$ : 


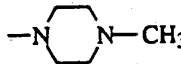
M.p. 129-131°C    Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether-isopropyl alcohol

Form: Dimethanesulfonate

## Example 252


$R^1$ :      $R^4$ : H    A:  $-CH_2-$     m: 1


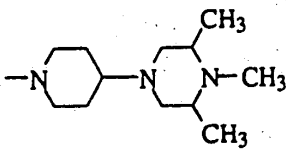
$R^2$ :      $R^{11b}$ : H     $R^{17}$ :      $R^5$ :  $CH_3O$  (3-position)

M.p. 230-231°C    Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water    Form: Dimethanesulfonate

## Example 253

$R^1$ :      $R^4$ : H    A:  $-CH_2-$     m: 1

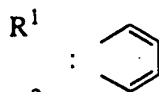
$R^2$ :      $R^{11b}$ : H     $R^{17}$ :      $R^5$ :  $CH_3O$  (3-position)

M.p. 159-164°C (decomp.)    Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

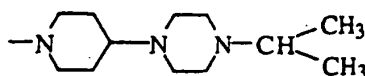
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water    Form: 2HCl    NMR (54)

Table 118

## Example 254

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

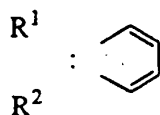
R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)

M.p. 202-205°C (decomp.)

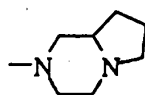
Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water Form: 2HCl

## Example 255

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)

M.p. 115-120°C

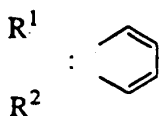
Crystalline form: Pale brown powder

NMR (55)

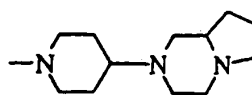
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-isopropyl alcohol-diethyl ether

Form: Methanesulfonate

## Example 256

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)

M.p. 168.5-171.5°C

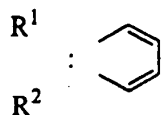
Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water Form: 2HCl

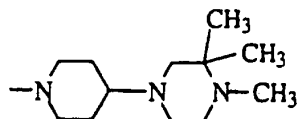
308

Table 119

## Example 257

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

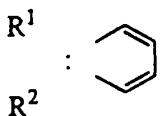
R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)

M.p. 163-166°C

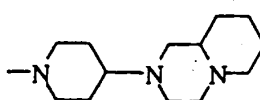
Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water Form: 2HCl

## Example 258

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)

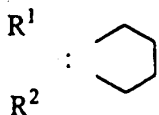
M.p. 177.5-179°C

Crystalline form: White powder

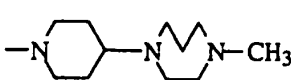
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: 2HCl

## Example 259

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)

M.p. 165-168.5°C

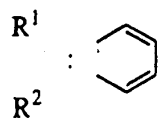
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: 2HCl

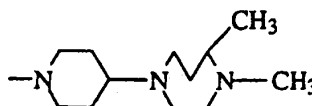
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

Table 120

## Example 260

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)

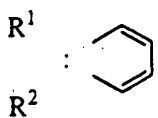
M.p. 159-160°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

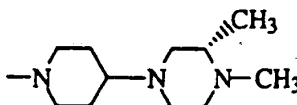
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: 2HCl

## Example 261

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)

M.p. 177-178.2°C

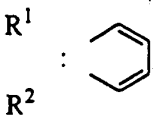
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

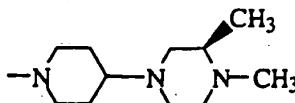
Form: 2HCl

S-(-)-compound: [α]<sub>D</sub><sup>22</sup>: -5.75° (c=2, water)

## Example 262

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)

M.p. 173-175°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

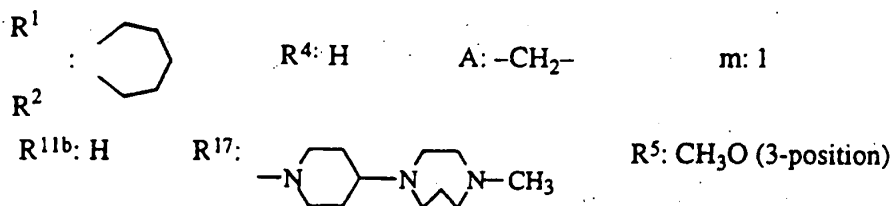
Form: 2HCl

R-(+)-compound: [α]<sub>D</sub><sup>22</sup>: +4.35° (c=2, water)

310

Table 121

## Example 263



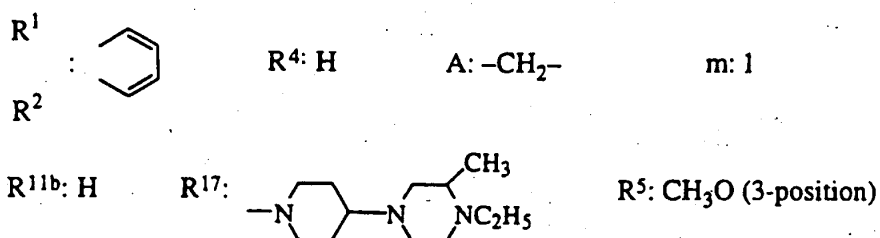
M.p. 168-170.5°C

Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: 2HCl

## Example 264



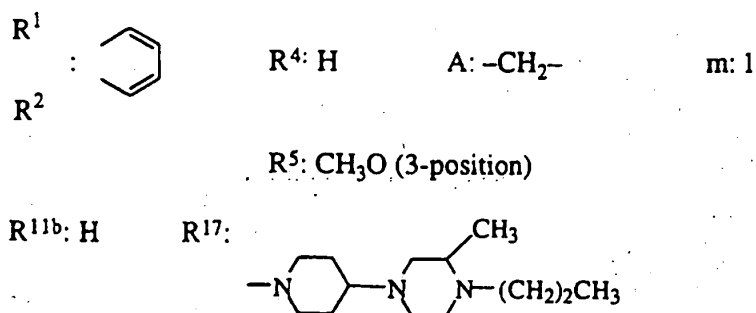
M.p. 156-159°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: 2HCl

## Example 265



M.p. 176-179°C

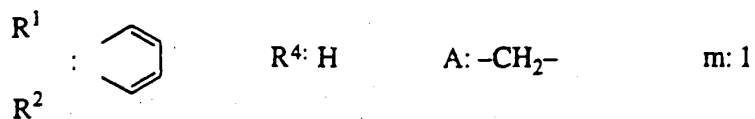
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

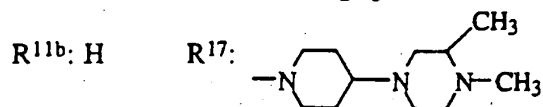
Form: 2HCl

Table 122

## Example 266

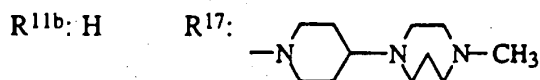
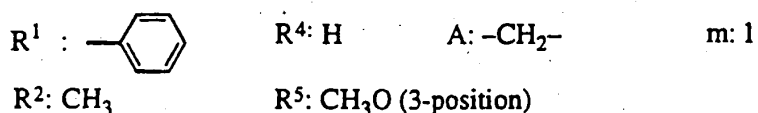


$R^5$ :  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}$  (3-position)



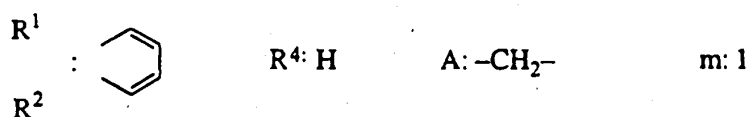
M.p. 159-161°C      Crystalline form: Yellow powder      Form: 2HCl  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-isopropyl alcohol-diethyl ether

## Example 267

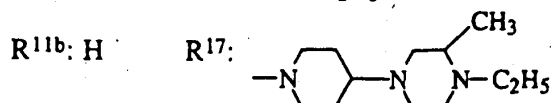


M.p. 166-169°C      Crystalline form: Yellow powder      Form: 2HCl  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether-isopropyl alcohol

## Example 268



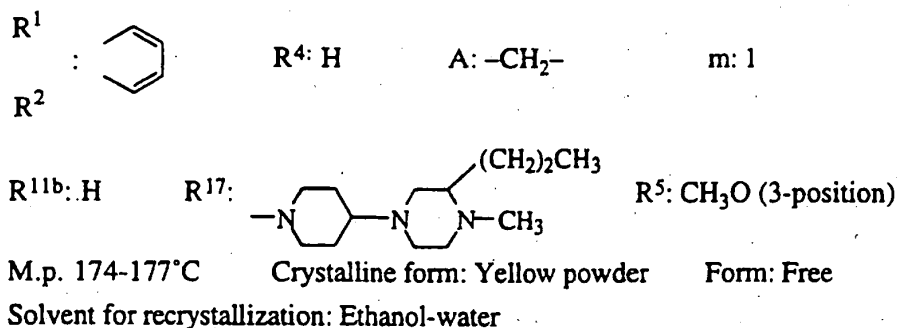
$R^5$ :  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}$  (3-position)



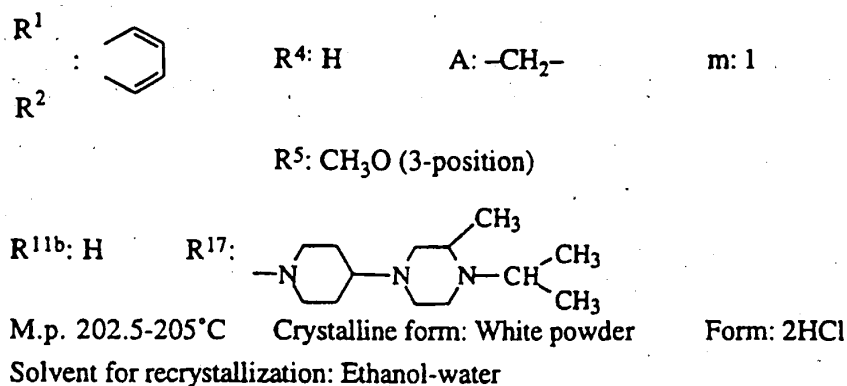
M.p. 215-217°C      Crystalline form: White powder      Form: 2HCl  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Table 123

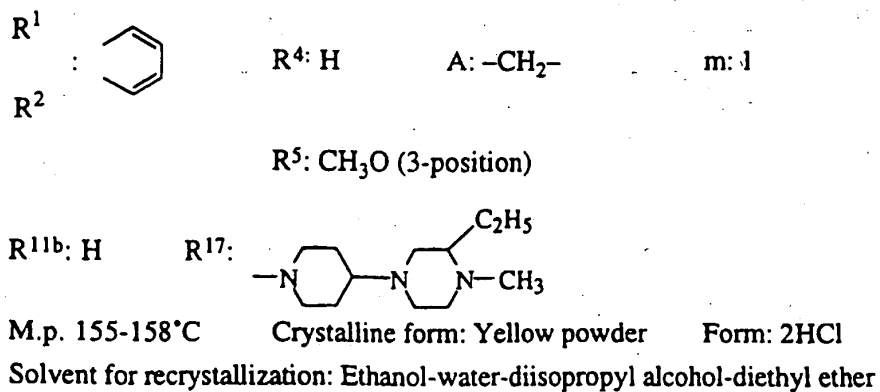
## Example 269



## Example 270



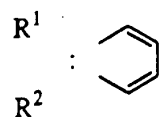
## Example 271



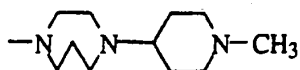
313

Table 124

## Example 272

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)

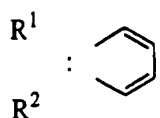
M.p. 202-204°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

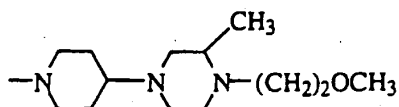
Form: 2HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

## Example 273

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:

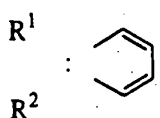
M.p. 163-165°C

Crystalline form: Pale brown powder

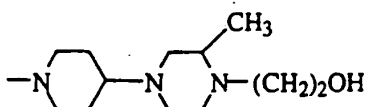
Form: 2HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

## Example 274

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>17</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (3-position)

M.p. 160-162°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: 2HCl



314

Table 125

## Example 275



M.p. 158-160°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder      Form: 2HCl  
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether-water

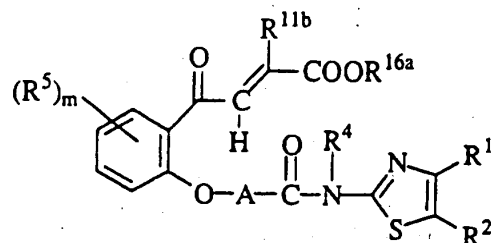
## Example 276



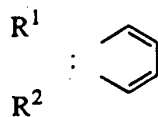
M.p. 164-166°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder      Form: 2HCl  
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Using the suitable starting compounds, the compounds as listed in Tables 126-128 are obtained in the same manner as in Example 5.

Table 126



## Example 277

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>16a</sup>: C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: H

M.p. 130.5-132°C

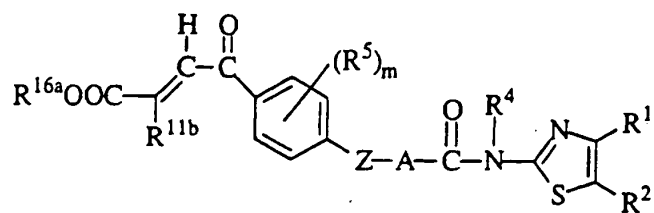
Crystalline form: Pale orange powder

Form: Free


Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-methanol

316

Table 127



## Example 278

$R^1$ :   $R^4$ : H  $A$ :  $-\text{CH}_2-$   $m$ : 1  
 $R^2$ :   
 $R^{16a}$ :  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$   $Z$ : O  
 $R^{11b}$ : H  $R^5$ : H  
 M.p.  $183.5-184^\circ\text{C}$  Crystalline form: White powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-ethanol Form: Free

## Example 279




$R^1$ :   $R^4$ : H  $A$ :  $-\text{CH}_2-$   $m$ : 1  
 $R^2$ :   
 $R^{16a}$ :  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$   $Z$ : O  
 $R^{11b}$ : H  $R^5$ :  $-(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{N} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{ } \end{array} \text{N}-\text{CH}_3$  (2-position)  
 M.p.  $221^\circ\text{C}$  (decomp.) Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Diethyl ether-ethanol Form: 2HCl

Table 128

## Example 280

$R^1$  :   $R^4$ : H      A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$       m: 1  
 $R^2$  :  
 $R^{16a}$ :  $\text{CH}_3$       Z: O  
 $R^{11b}$ :  $\text{CH}_3$        $R^5$ :  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}$  (2-position)  
 M.p. 124-126.5°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-n-hexane      Form: Free

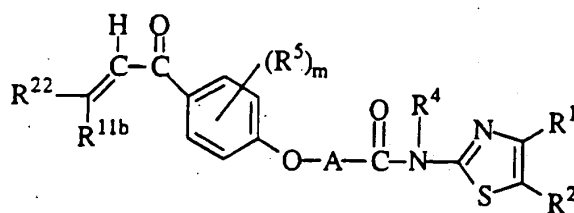
## Example 281

$R^1$  :   $R^4$ : H      A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$       m: 1  
 $R^2$  :  
 $R^{16a}$ :  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$       Z: S  
 $R^{11b}$ : H       $R^5$ :  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}$  (2-position)  
 M.p. 156-159°C      Crystalline form: Yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane      Form: Free

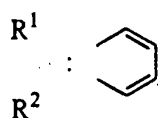
Using the suitable starting compounds, the compounds as listed in Tables 129-149 are obtained in the same manner as in Example 8.

318

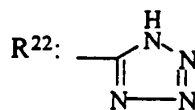
Table 129



## Example 282

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

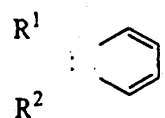
R<sup>5</sup>: Isopropyl (2-position)R<sup>11b</sup>: H

M.p. 137-138°C

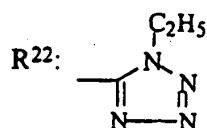
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Form: Free

## Example 283

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>5</sup>: Isopropyl (2-position)R<sup>11b</sup>: H

M.p. 197-198°C

Crystalline form: White powder

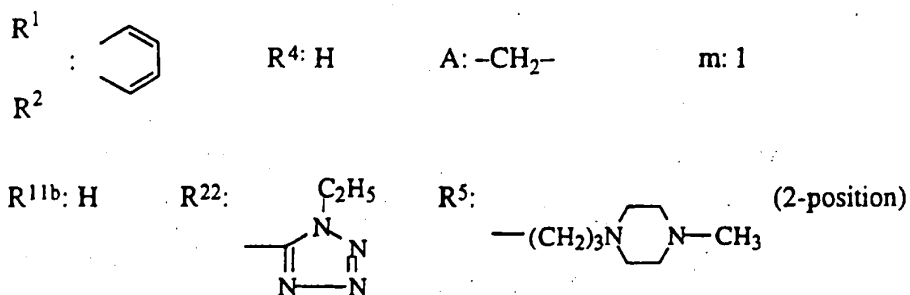
Form: Free

Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-ethanol

319

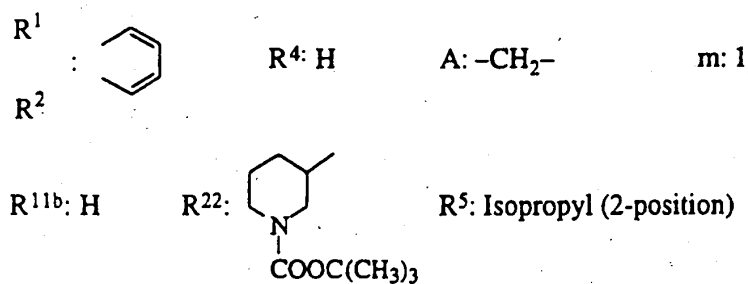
Table 130

## Example 284



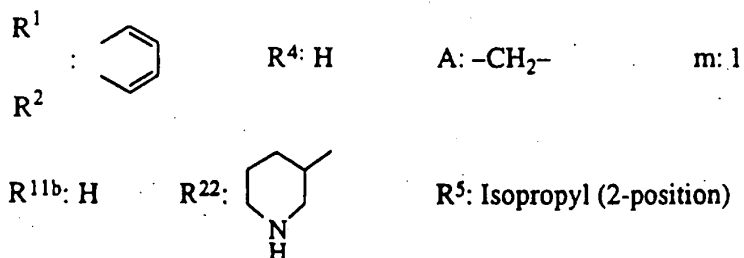
M.p. 240°C (decomp.)    Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder    Form: 2HCl  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

## Example 285



M.p. 169.5-170°C    Crystalline form: White powder    Form: Free  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol

## Example 286

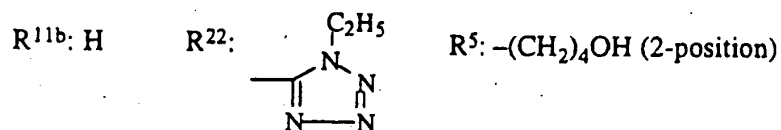
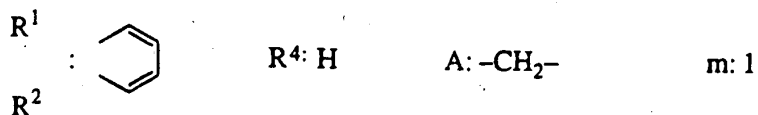


Crystalline form: Pale brown powder    Form: HCl    NMR (7)

320

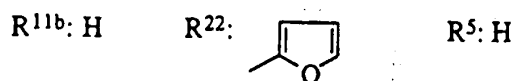
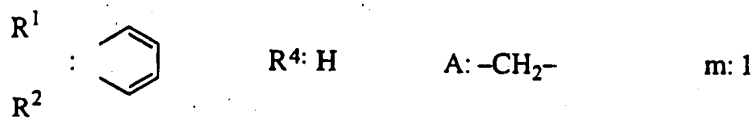
Table 131

## Example 287



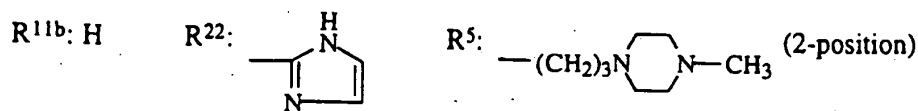
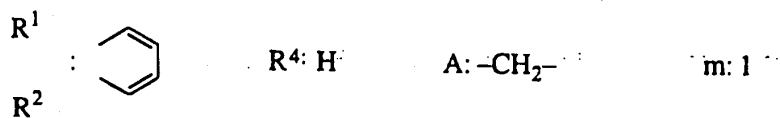
M.p. 170.5-175.5°C    Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder    Form: Free  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-n-hexane    NMR (8)

## Example 288



M.p. 201.5-202.5°C (decomp.)    Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane    Form: Free

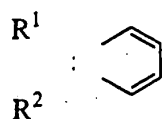
## Example 289



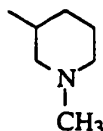
M.p. 195-198°C    Crystalline form: Yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water    Form: 3HCl

Table 132

## Example 290

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

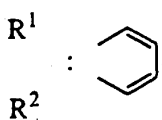
m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>22</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: Isopropyl (2-position)

M.p. 101-103.5°C

Crystalline form: Yellow amorphous Form: Free

## Example 291

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>22</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>) (2-position)

M.p. 148.2-153°C

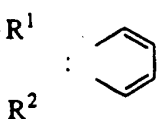
Crystalline form: Pale brown powder

Form: 3HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether

NMR (10)

## Example 292

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>22</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>) (2-position)

M.p. 184-187°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

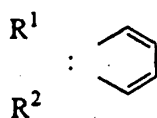
Form: 2HCl



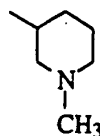
322

Table 133

## Example 293

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>22</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: F (2-position)

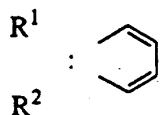
M.p. 151-154°C

Crystalline form: White powder

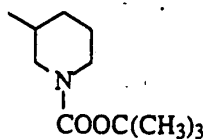
Form: HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether-isopropyl alcohol

## Example 294

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>22</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: Cl (2-position)

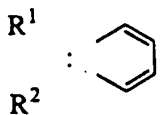
M.p. 207-209°C

Crystalline form: White powder

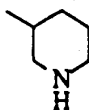
Form: Free

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-n-hexane

## Example 295

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>22</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: Cl (2-position)

M.p. 164-166°C

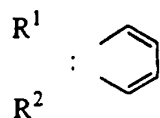
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Methanol-diethyl ether

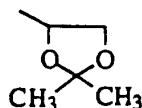
Form: HCl

Table 134

## Example 296

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>22</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: F (2-position)

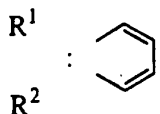
M.p. 141-141.5°C

Crystalline form: White powder

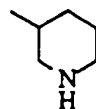
Form: Free

Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-diethyl ether

## Example 297

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

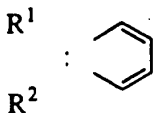
R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>22</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>O (2-position)

M.p. 186.5-191°C (decomp.)

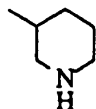
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether    Form: Methanesulfonate

## Example 298

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>22</sup>:R<sup>5</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub> (2-position)

Crystalline form: Pale yellow amorphous

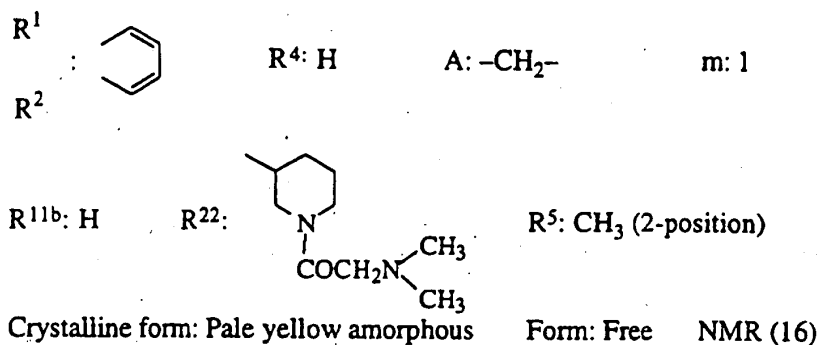
Form: Free

NMR (15)

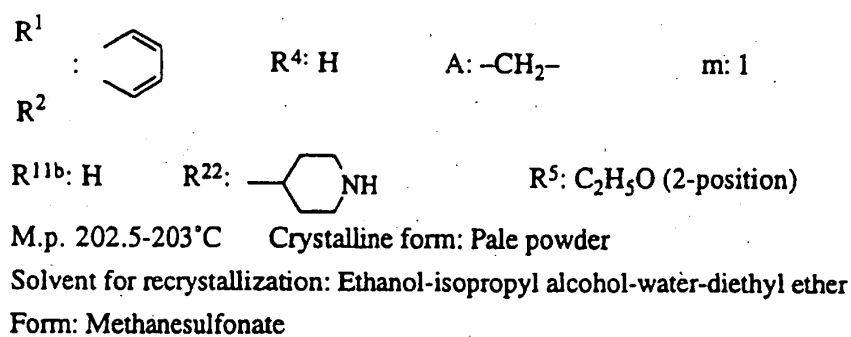
324

Table 135

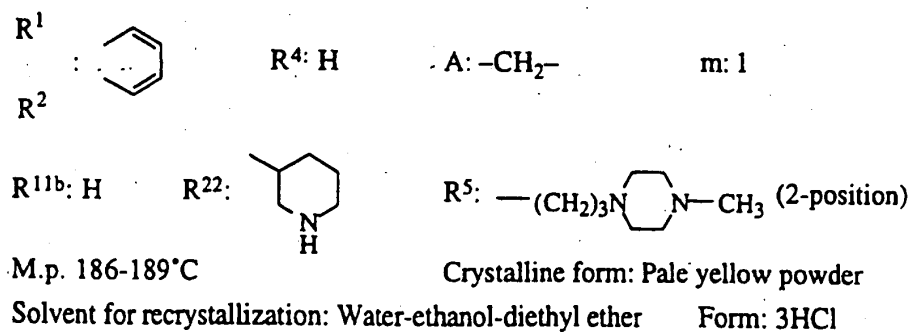
## Example 299



## Example 300



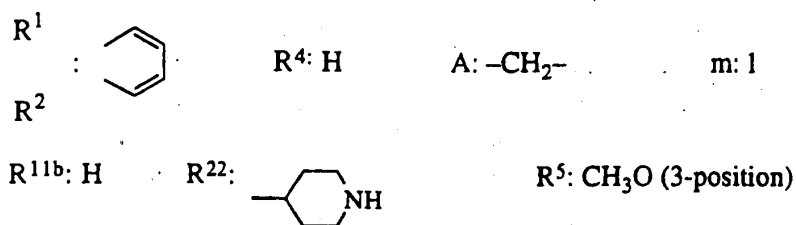
## Example 301



325

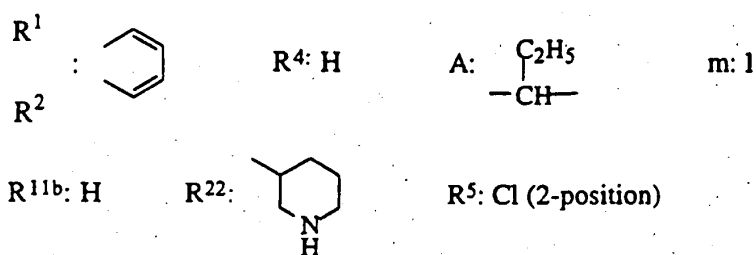
Table 136

## Example 302



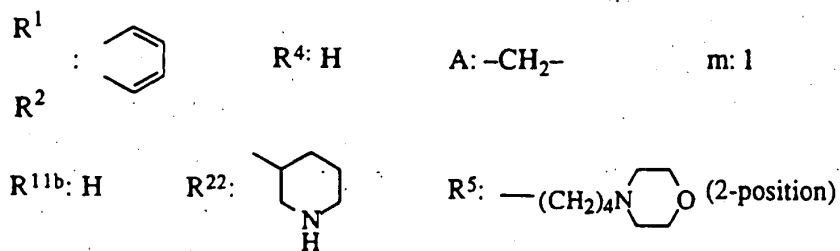
M.p. 135-145°C      Crystalline form: White powder      Form: Free  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane      NMR (17)

## Example 303



Crystalline form: Pale yellow amorphous      Form: Free      NMR (18)

## Example 304

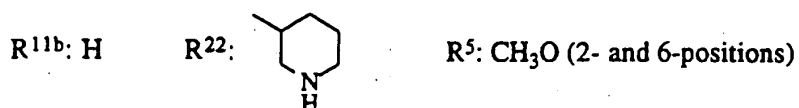
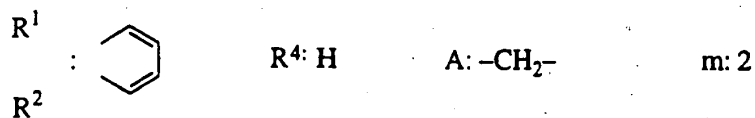


M.p. 146.5-150°C      Crystalline form: White powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water      Form: 2HCl

326

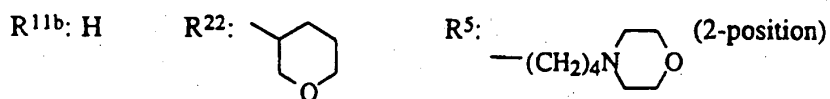
Table 137

## Example 305



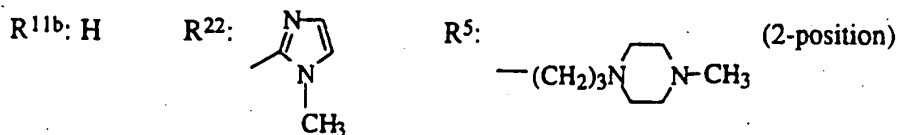
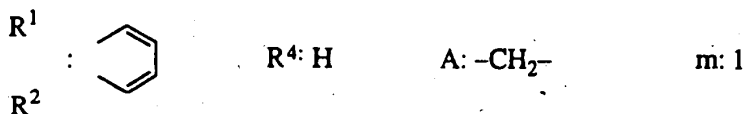
M.p. 115-120°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder      NMR (19)  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether      Form: Methanesulfonate

## Example 306



M.p. 207-208.5°C      Crystalline form: White powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Diethyl ether-ethanol      Form: Methanesulfonate

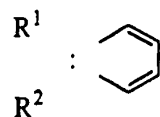
## Example 307



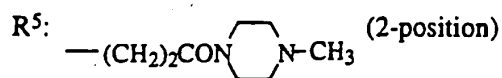
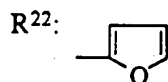
Crystalline form: Pale yellow amorphous      Form: Free      NMR (20)

Table 138

## Example 308

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: H

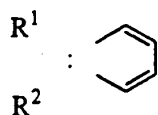
M.p. 139-141°C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

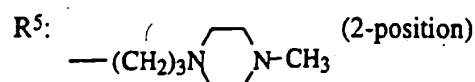
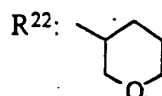
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol

Form: Methanesulfonate

## Example 309

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: H

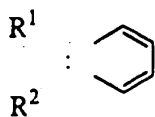
M.p. 194-197°C

Crystalline form: White powder

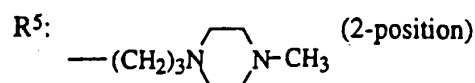
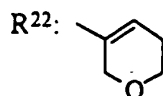
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: Dimethanesulfonate

## Example 310

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: H

M.p. 218-220°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

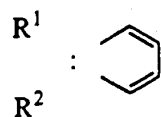
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: Dimethanesulfonate

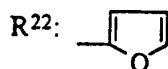
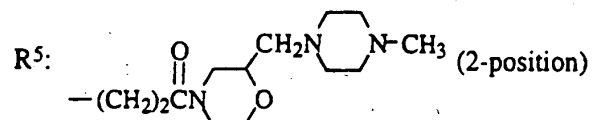
328

Table 139

## Example 311

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: H

M.p. 182.5-186°C

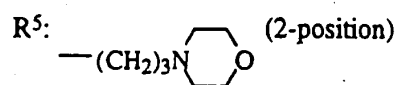
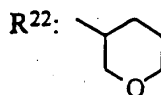
Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether    Form: 2HCl

## Example 312

R<sup>1</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>2</sup>: CH<sub>3</sub>R<sup>11b</sup>: H

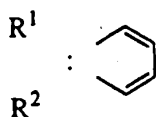
Crystalline form: White powder

Form: Methanesulfonate

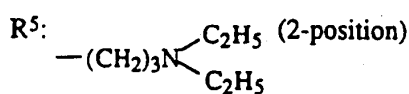
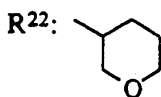
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether

NMR (21)

## Example 313

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: H

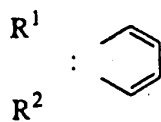
M.p. 140-141°C

Crystalline form: White powder    Form: Methanesulfonate

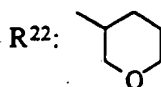
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-isopropyl alcohol-diethyl ether

Table 140

## Example 314

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CON(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>N(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> (2-position)

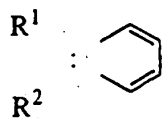
M.p. 166-177°C

Crystalline form: White powder

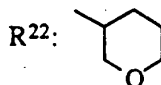
NMR (22)

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether    Form: 2HCl

## Example 315

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CON(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>) (2-position)

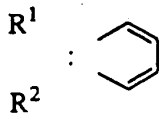
M.p. 156-157°C

Crystalline form: White powder

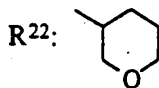
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol

Form: Free

## Example 316

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>N(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>N(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>) (2-position)

M.p. 191-192°C

Crystalline form: White powder

Form: 3HCl

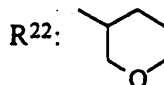
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-isopropyl alcohol



$$\begin{array}{c} R^1 \\ : \\ R^2 \end{array} \quad \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$$

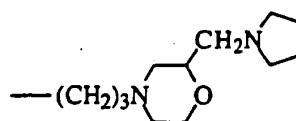
A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$

m: 1



R11b: H

**R5:**



(2-position)

**Crystalline form: Pale yellow amorphous**

Form: Free

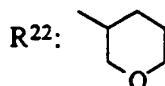
NMR (23)

$$\begin{array}{c} R^1 \\ : \\ R^2 \end{array} \quad \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$$

**R<sup>4</sup>: H**

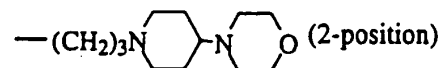
A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$

m: i



R<sup>11b</sup>: H

**R5:**



**Crystalline form: Colorless amorphous**

Form: Free

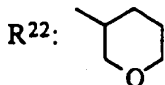
**NMR (24)**

$$\begin{array}{c} R^1 \\ : \\ R^2 \end{array} \quad \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$$

**R<sup>4</sup>: H**

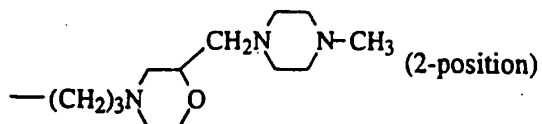
A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$

m: 1



R<sup>11b</sup>: H

**RS:**



M.p. 178-180°C

**Crystalline form:** White powder

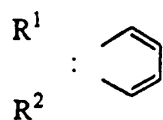
Form: 3HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-isopropanol-diethyl ether-water

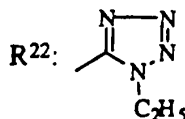
331

Table 142

## Example 320

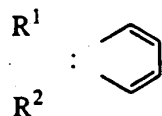
R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

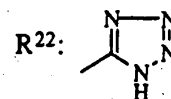
R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>N-(2-position)

Crystalline form: Pale yellow amorphous    Form: Free    NMR (25)

## Example 321

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

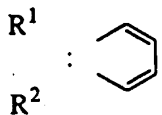
R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>N-CH<sub>3</sub> (2-position)

M.p. 198-201°C    Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

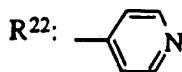
Form: 2HCl

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

## Example 322

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>N-(2-position)

M.p. 177-178°C

Crystalline form: White powder

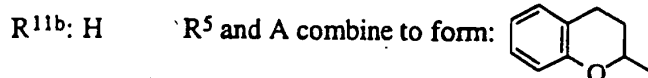
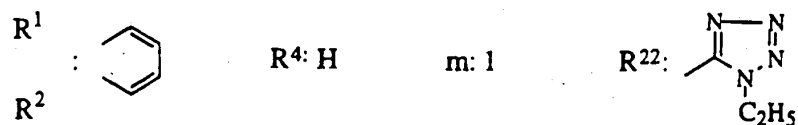
Form: Free

Solvent for recrystallization: Diethyl ether-ethanol-dichloromethane

332

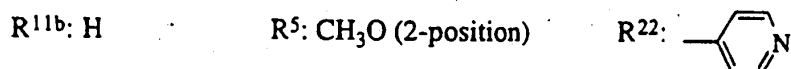
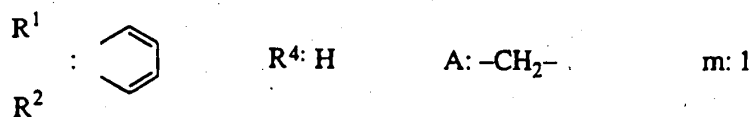
Table 143

## Example 323



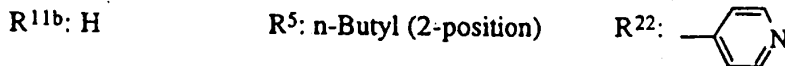
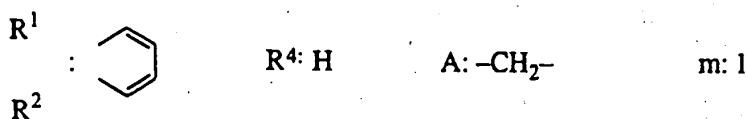
M.p. 234-235°C Crystalline form: White powder Form: Free  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-n-hexane

## Example 324



M.p. 206-207°C Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder Form: Free  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-ethanol-diethyl ether

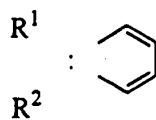
## Example 325



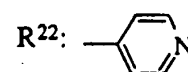
M.p. 195.5-196.5°C Crystalline form: Pale yellow needles  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane Form: Free

Table 144

## Example 326

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

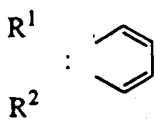
R<sup>11b</sup>: H
$$R^5: \begin{array}{c} \text{OCOCH}_3 \\ | \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{OCOCH}_3 \end{array} \quad (2\text{-position})$$


M.p. 134-136°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Yellow powder

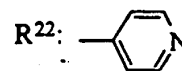
Form: Free

Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-diisopropyl ether

## Example 327

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: H
$$R^5: \begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ | \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{OH} \end{array} \quad (2\text{-position})$$


M.p. 207.6-214°C (decomp.)

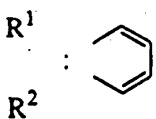
Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane

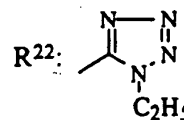
NMR (26)

Form: Free

## Example 328

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: n-Butyl (2-position)

M.p. 191-193°C

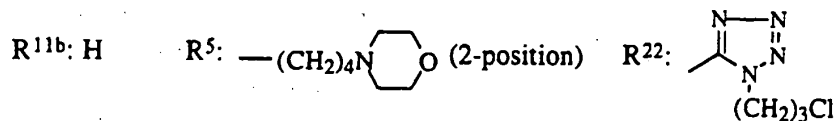
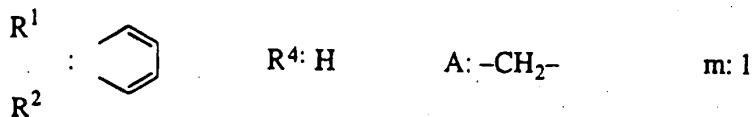
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane

Form: Free

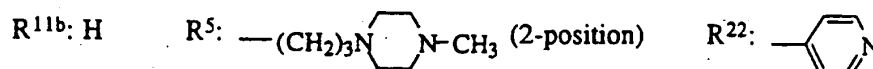
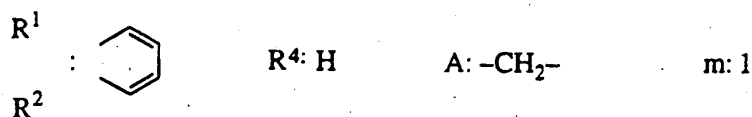
Table 145

## Example 329



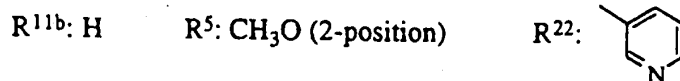
M.p. 112-114°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder      Form: Free  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-diethyl ether

## Example 330



M.p. 209-211°C      Crystalline form: Yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water      Form: 3HCl

## Example 331

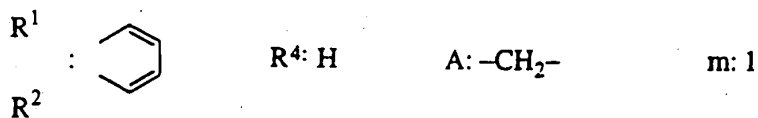



M.p. 208-210°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane      Form: Free

335

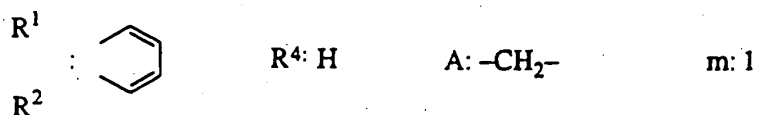
Table 146

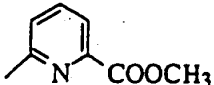
## Example 332



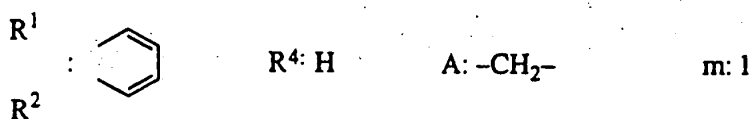
$R^{11b}$ : H       $R^5$ :  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}$  (2-position)       $R^{22}$ :   
 M.p. 200-203°C      Crystalline form: Yellow powder      Form: Free  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-isopropyl alcohol-dichloromethane

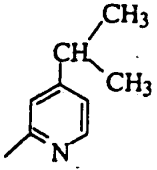
## Example 333



$R^{11b}$ : H       $R^5$ :  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}$  (2-position)       $R^{22}$ :   
 M.p. 196-197°C      Crystalline form: White powder      Form: Free  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane

## Example 334

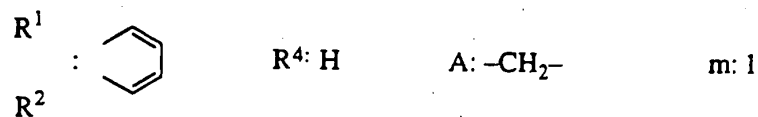


$R^{11b}$ : H       $R^5$ :  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}$  (2-position)       $R^{22}$ :   
 M.p. 203-204°C      Crystalline form: White powder      Form: Free  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-ethanol-isopropyl alcohol

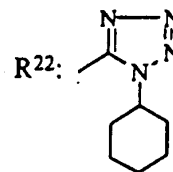
336

Table 147

## Example 335



$R^2$ :   
 $R^{11b}$ : H
  $R^5$ :  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}$  (2-position)



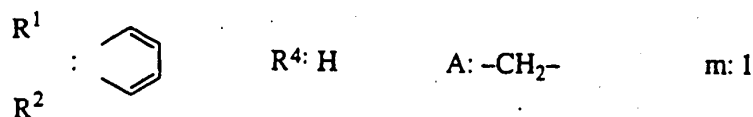
M.p. 206-208°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

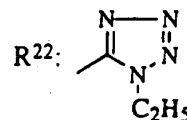
Form: Free

Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-n-hexane

## Example 336



$R^2$ :   
 $R^{11b}$ : H
  $R^5$ :  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}$  (2-position)



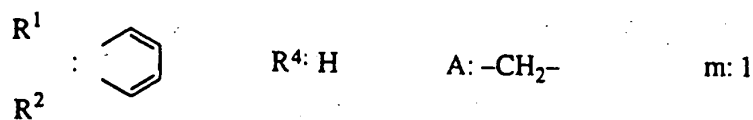
M.p. 190-192°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow needles

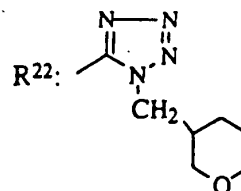
Form: Free

Solvent for recrystallization: Chloroform-ethyl acetate

## Example 337



$R^2$ :   
 $R^{11b}$ : H
  $R^5$ :  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}$  (2-position)



M.p. 207-209°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

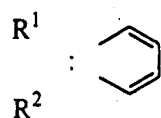
Form: Free

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-diisopropyl ether

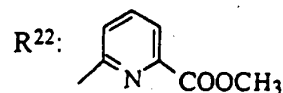
337

Table 148

## Example 338

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

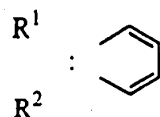
R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: Isopropyl (2-position)

M.p. 199.5-200.5°C

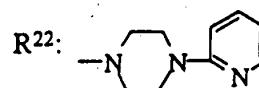
Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Methanol-dimethylformamide Form: Free

## Example 339

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>O (2-position)

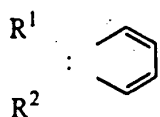
M.p. 204-206°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

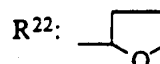
Form: Free

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane

## Example 340

R<sup>4</sup>: HA: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

m: 1

R<sup>11b</sup>: HR<sup>5</sup>: C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>O (2-position)

M.p. 115-117°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

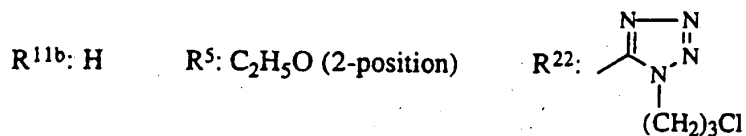
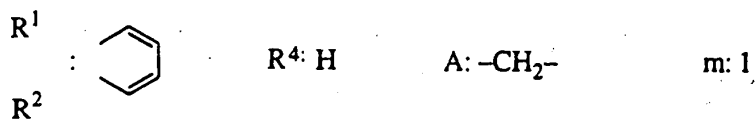
Form: Free

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-diisopropyl ether



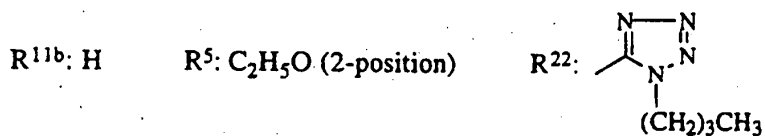
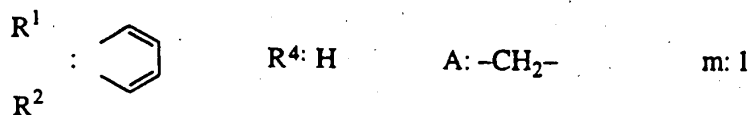
Table 149

## Example 341



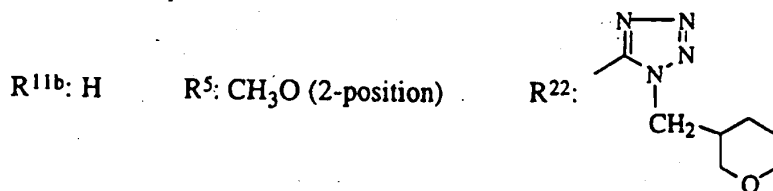
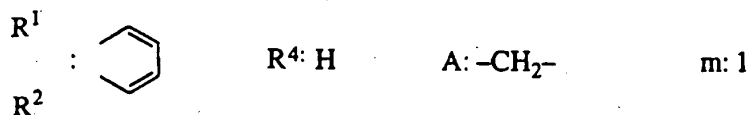
M.p. 225-227°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder      Form: Free  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-diisopropyl ether

## Example 342



M.p. 196.5-198°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder      Form: Free  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Chloroform-ethyl acetate

## Example 343



M.p. 192-194°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder      Form: Free  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethyl acetate-diisopropyl ether

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR spectrum (NMR (1) to NMR (55)) as described in Tables 50-149 are as follows:

NMR (1) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 2.33 (3H, s), 2.45 (4H, t, J=5Hz), 3.6-3.8 (4H, m), 4.85 (2H, s), 7.09 (2H, d, J=9Hz), 7.3-7.55 (2H, m), 7.50 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.8-7.95 (2H, m), 7.93 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 8.10 (2H, d, J=9Hz), 9.88 (1H, br)

NMR (2) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.35-1.8 (2H, m), 2.0-2.3 (2H, m), 2.6-3.9 (11H, m), 2.81 (3H, s), 4.1-4.3 (1H, m), 4.5-4.7 (1H, m), 5.08 (2H, s), 7.15 (2H, d, J=9Hz), 7.3-7.55 (3H, m), 7.76 (1H, d, J=14Hz), 7.77 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 8.05 (2H, d, J=9Hz), 12.67 (1H, br)

NMR (3) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.32 (3H, s), 2.45-4.50 (20H, m, 2.50 (s)), 5.14 (2H, s), 7.04 (1H, d, J=9.3Hz), 7.26-7.52 (3H, m), 7.70-8.10 (5H, m), 11.30-12.35, 12.35-13.20 (all 3H, br)

NMR (4) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.60-4.50 (20H, m), 5.23 (2H, s), 7.20-7.55 (4H, m), 7.70-8.10 (5H, m), 11.30-13.20 (3H, br)

NMR (5) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 0.926 (3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.5-1.9 (4H, m), 2.05-2.3 (2H, m), 2.6-2.8 (3H, m), 2.81 (3H, s), 3.0-3.3 (1H, m), 3.3-3.9 (9H, m), 4.15-4.35 (1H, m), 4.5-4.8 (1H, m), 5.12 (2H, s), 7.02 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.27-7.47 (3H, m), 7.74-7.99 (4H, m), 7.91 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 11.5-13.0 (3H, br)

NMR (6) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 0.93 (3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.55-1.75 (2H, m), 2.6-2.8 (4H, m), 2.79 (3H, s), 3.0-4.15 (14H, m), 4.2-4.4 (1H, m), 5.12 (2H, s), 7.03 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.25-7.55 (2H, m), 7.45 (1H, s), 7.75-7.9 (4H, m), 7.79 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz)

NMR (7) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.25 (6H, d, J=7Hz), 1.3-2.0 (4H, m), 2.6-3.5

(6H, m), 5.12 (2H, s), 6.77 (1H, dd, J=6Hz, J=15.5Hz), 7.00 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.17 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 7.25-7.5 (2H, m), 7.7-8.05 (4H, m), 9.14 (2H, br), 12.73 (1H, br)

NMR (8) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.62 (3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.76-2.03 (4H, m), 2.85-3.09 (2H, m), 3.95-4.11 (2H, m), 4.52 (2H, q, J=7.3Hz), 4.88 (2H, s), 5.28 (1H, brs), 6.98 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.32-7.43 (1H, m), 7.43-7.55 (1H, m), 7.56 (1H, d, J=15.2Hz), 7.77-7.93 (2H, m), 8.00-8.12 (2H, m), 8.35 (1H, d, J=15.2Hz), 10.85 (1H, brs)

NMR (9) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 0.93 (3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.5-1.8 (2H, m), 1.8-2.2 (4H, m), 2.69 (2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 2.8 (3H, s), 3.0-4.3 (12H, m), 4.3-4.6 (1H, m), 5.13 (2H, s), 7.03 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.17 (1H, d, J=15.1Hz), 7.30 (1H, t, J=7Hz), 7.74-7.99 (5H, m), 11.5-12.3 (1H, br), 12.3-13.3 (1H, br)

NMR (10) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.56-1.91 (4H, m), 2.70-2.90 (7H, m), 3.10-3.52 (8H, m), 5.14 (2H, s), 6.65-6.75 (1H, m), 6.99-7.15 (2H, m), 7.28-7.40 (1H, m), 7.40-7.52 (1H, m), 7.52-7.60 (2H, m), 7.72-7.85 (1H, m), 7.90-8.08 (4H, m), 10.90-13.18 (3H, m)

NMR (11) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.40-1.89 (2H, m), 1.96-2.32 (2H, m), 2.58-2.96 (4H, m), 2.96-3.83 (10H, m), 3.89 (3H, s), 4.06-4.34 (1H, m), 4.42-4.71 (1H, m), 5.08 (2H, s), 7.07 (1H, d,  $J=8.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.31 (1H, t,  $J=7.0\text{Hz}$ ), 7.38-7.69 (3H, m), 7.69-7.92 (3H, m), 7.98 (1H, d,  $J=8.5\text{Hz}$ ), 11.76 (2H, br), 12.71 (1H, br).

20 NMR (12) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.40-1.85 (2H, m), 2.00-2.23 (2H, m), 2.40 (3H, s), 2.60-2.88 (1H, m), 2.81 (3H, s), 3.00-3.80 (10H, m), 3.89 (3H, s), 4.10-4.30 (1H, m), 4.48-4.78 (1H, m), 5.06 (2H, s), 7.04 (1H, d,  $J=8.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.21-7.31 (1H, m), 7.40 (1H, d,  $J=15.2\text{Hz}$ ), 7.52-7.60 (1H, m), 7.60-7.88 (4H, m), 11.02-12.33 (2H, m), 12.33-12.80 (1H, m)

NMR (13) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 2.40 (3H, s), 2.81 (3H, s), 2.90-4.35 (15H, m),  
3.89 (3H, s), 5.07 (2H, s), 6.99-7.12 (1H, m), 7.12-7.35 (2H, m), 7.52-7.60 (1H, m),  
7.60-7.91 (4H, m), 11.00-13.28 (3H, m)

NMR (14) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.31-1.64 (2H, m), 1.77-2.07 (2H, m), 2.21-2.87  
5 (10H, m), 2.29 (3H, s), 2.67 (3H, s), 3.06-3.26 (1H, m), 3.96-4.28 (1H, m), 4.10 (3H,  
s), 4.62-4.78 (1H, m), 4.87 (2H, s), 7.07 (1H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.14-7.32 (2H, m), 7.52  
(1H, d, J=14.9Hz), 7.61-7.77 (3H, m), 7.91 (1H, d, J=14.9Hz)

NMR (15) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.20-2.16 (4H, m), 2.31-2.72 (3H, m), 2.44 (3H,  
s), 2.72-3.34 (2H, m), 4.85 (2H, s), 6.76-7.06 (3H, m), 7.21-7.58 (2H, m), 7.72-  
10 8.00 (4H, m)

NMR (16) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.43-2.13 (4H, m), 2.28 (6H, s), 2.45 (3H, s),  
2.53-3.28 (5H, m), 3.56-4.56 (2H, m), 4.86 (2H, s), 6.80-7.11 (3H, m), 7.28-7.53  
(2H, m), 7.74-7.93 (4H, m)

NMR (17) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.3-1.5 (2H, m), 1.7-1.9 (2H, m), 2.6-2.8 (2H, m),  
15 2.8-3.3 (2H, m), 3.90 (3H, s), 4.80 (2H, s), 6.5-6.65 (2H, m), 6.73 (1H, d,  
J=15.5Hz), 6.87 (1H, dd, J=15.5Hz, J=6Hz), 7.3-7.55 (2H, m), 7.6-7.95 (4H, m)

NMR (18) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.12 (3H, t, J=5.9Hz), 1.28-3.78 (11H, m), 4.97  
(1H, t, J=5.3Hz), 6.68-7.53 (5H, m), 7.70-8.14 (4H, m)

NMR (19) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.29-2.11 (4H, m), 2.32 (3H, s), 2.60-3.08  
20 (3H, m), 3.08-3.56 (3H, m), 3.91 (6H, s), 4.85 (2H, s), 6.73-6.93 (1H, m), 7.19-7.54  
(5H, m), 7.71-7.83 (1H, m), 7.93-8.05 (1H, m), 8.29-8.80 (1H, m), 12.14 (1H, brs)

NMR (20) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ ppm: 1.86-2.13 (2H, m), 2.39 (3H, s), 2.48-3.06 (12H,  
m), 3.82 (3H, s), 4.87 (2H, s), 6.82-8.09 (9H, m), 7.04 (1H, s), 7.21 (1H, s)

342

NMR (21) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.4-2.2 (6H, m), 2.35 (3H, s), 2.65-2.85 (2H, m), 2.95-4.05 (14H, m), 5.07 (2H, s), 6.78 (1H, dd,  $J=7\text{Hz}$ ,  $J=15.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.02 (1H, d,  $J=8.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.16 (1H, d,  $J=15.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.26 (1H, d,  $J=3.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.50 (1H, d,  $J=3.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.8-8.0 (2H, m), 9.58 (1H, br), 12.45 (1H, br)

5 NMR (22) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.33-1.71 (5H, m), 1.80-2.00 (1H, m), 2.00-2.21 (2H, m), 2.65-2.77 (2H, m), 2.80 (3H, s), 2.88-3.10 (4H, m), 3.10-4.00 (14H, m), 4.00-4.23 (1H, m), 4.47-4.66 (1H, m), 5.13 (2H, s), 6.71-6.87 (1H, m), 6.98-7.09 (1H, m), 7.09-7.22 (1H, m), 7.26-7.40 (1H, m), 7.40-7.52 (1H, m), 7.72-7.83 (1H, m), 7.83-7.97 (2H, m), 7.97-8.08 (1H, m), 11.32-12.55 (2H, m), 12.70 (1H, brs)

10 NMR (23) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.43-2.28 (12H, m), 2.28-3.01 (13H, m), 3.23-3.56 (2H, m), 3.56-4.09 (5H, m), 4.87 (2H, s), 6.74-7.02 (3H, m), 7.22-7.53 (2H, m), 7.70-7.97 (4H, m)

NMR (24) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.43-2.18 (12H, m), 2.37-2.68 (8H, m), 2.86 (2H, t,  $J=7.7\text{Hz}$ ), 2.97-3.16 (2H, m), 3.25-3.53 (2H, m), 3.56-3.80 (4H, m), 3.82-4.03 (2H, m), 4.85 (2H, s), 6.79-7.00 (3H, m), 7.22-7.53 (2H, m), 7.68-7.93 (4H, m)

15 NMR (25) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.48-3.22 (19H, m), 1.62 (3H, t,  $J=7.4\text{Hz}$ ), 3.57-3.78 (4H, m), 4.54 (2H, q,  $J=7.4\text{Hz}$ ), 4.89 (2H, s), 6.99 (1H, d,  $J=8.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.22-7.53 (3H, m), 7.59 (1H, d,  $J=15.2\text{Hz}$ ), 7.76-7.90 (2H, m), 7.92-8.09 (1H, m), 8.36 (1H, d,  $J=15.2\text{Hz}$ )

20 NMR (26) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 2.65-2.8 (1H, m), 2.9-3.05 (1H, m), 3.3-3.45 (2H, m), 3.8 (1H, m), 4.65 (2H, br), 5.11 (2H, s), 7.06 (1H, d,  $J=8.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.25-7.5 (2H, m), 7.64 (1H, d,  $J=15.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.75-7.9 (3H, m), 7.95-8.2 (4H, m), 8.66 (2H, br), 12.58 (1H, br)

NMR (27) ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.36 (3H, t,  $J=7.5\text{Hz}$ ), 2.6-3.6 (6H, m), 2.86 (2H,

343

q, J=7.5Hz), 4.05 (1H, m), 4.50 (1H, m), 4.87 (2H, s), 6.93 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.3-7.55 (3H, m), 7.8-8.0 (5H, m), 9.66 (1H, br)

NMR (28) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.67-1.97 (2H, m), 2.80 (3H, s), 2.88-4.35 (17H, m), 3.90 (3H, s), 5.10 (2H, s), 7.08 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.20-7.66 (4H, m), 7.66-5 7.95 (3H, m), 7.99 (1H, d, J=7.1Hz), 12.70 (1H, s)

NMR (29) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.05-2.35 (2H, m), 2.55-4.18 (22H, m), 4.18-4.42 (1H, m), 5.09 (2H, s), 7.07 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.27-7.57 (4H, m), 7.74-7.77 (3H, m), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7.1Hz), 11.52 (2H, br), 12.55 (1H, br)

NMR (30) (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δppm: 1.1-1.4 (3H, m), 1.37 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 2.5-2.8 10 (2H, m), 2.86 (2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 2.9-3.1 (1H, m), 3.2-3.6 (2H, m), 3.8-4.1 (1H, m), 4.5-4.8 (1H, m), 4.87 (2H, s), 5.35 (1H, br), 6.93 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 7.25-7.6 (3H, m), 7.75-8.05 (5H, m), 9.60 (1H, br)

NMR (31) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 0.74-0.91 (3H, m), 1.12-1.44 (6H, m), 1.50-1.71 (2H, m), 2.55-2.90 (3H, m), 2.79 (3H, s), 2.90-3.80 (13H, m), 3.80-4.12 (4H, 15 m), 4.19-4.42 (1H, m), 5.11 (2H, s), 7.01 (1H, d, J=8.7Hz), 7.27-7.51 (3H, m), 7.71-8.02 (5H, m), 11.00-13.00 (3H, m)

NMR (32) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.45-1.89 (2H, m), 2.00-2.38 (6H, m), 2.55-2.86 (6H, m), 3.01-3.22 (1H, m), 3.22-3.94 (9H, m), 3.77 (3H, s), 3.99-4.50 (3H, m), 4.50-4.70 (1H, m), 7.07-7.20 (1H, m), 7.20-7.37 (1H, m), 7.37-7.54 (3H, m), 20 7.67-7.89 (3H, m), 7.89-8.03 (1H, m), 11.06-12.62 (3H, m)

NMR (33) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.40-1.92 (2H, m), 1.92-2.30 (4H, m), 2.31 (3H, s), 2.55-2.90 (4H, m), 2.90-4.03 (10H, m), 4.03-4.34 (1H, m), 4.44-4.73 (1H, m), 5.11 (2H, s), 7.23 (1H, d, J=9.3Hz), 7.31 (1H, t, J=6.9Hz), 7.32-7.48 (2H, m), 7.74-7.86 (2H, m), 7.86-8.05 (3H, m), 10.88-12.00 (2H, m), 12.70 (1H, br)

NMR (34) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.48-1.94 (2H, m), 2.00-2.39 (4H, m), 2.57-2.85 (4H, m), 2.85-4.03 (10H, m), 4.10-4.39 (1H, m), 4.48-4.71 (1H, m), 5.29 (2H, s), 7.21-7.57 (4H, m), 7.75-7.83 (2H, m), 7.98 (1H, d,  $J=7.4$ Hz), 8.23 (1H, s), 8.32 (1H, d,  $J=8.7$ Hz), 10.89-12.06 (2H, m), 12.76 (1H, br)

5 NMR (35) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 2.88-3.28 (4H, m), 3.73-4.31 (4H, m), 5.30 (2H, s), 7.31 (1H, t,  $J=6.9$ Hz), 7.35-7.48 (3H, m), 7.75-7.85 (2H, m), 7.97 (1H, d,  $J=7.1$ Hz), 8.23 (1H, s), 8.33 (1H, d,  $J=8.7$ Hz), 9.37 (2H, br), 12.78 (1H, br)

NMR (36) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.2-1.5 (2H, m), 1.6-1.85 (8H, m), 2.31 (3H, s), 2.5-3.15 (15H, m), 3.9-4.0 (1H, ), 4.4-4.5 (1H, m), 5.04 (2H, s), 6.81 (1H, d,  $J=8.5$ Hz), 7.20 (1H, d,  $J=15.5$ Hz), 7.25-7.5 (3H, m), 7.55 (1H, d,  $J=8.5$ Hz), 7.75 (1H, d,  $J=7.5$ Hz), 7.97 (1H, d,  $J=7$ Hz)

10

NMR (37) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.4-1.9 (2H, m), 2.12 (6H, s), 2.0-4.0 (19H, m), 4.45-4.6 (1H, m), 4.95 (2H, s), 6.77 (2H, s), 6.88 (1H, d,  $J=16$ Hz), 7.03 (1H, d,  $J=16$ Hz), 7.35-7.5 (2H, m), 7.76 (1H, d,  $J=7.5$ Hz), 7.99 (1H, d,  $J=8$ Hz), 11.24, 12.04 (all 1H, br), 11.74 (1H, br), 12.64 (1H, br)

15

NMR (38) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 2.54-2.93 (5H, m), 2.93-3.78 (10H, m), 3.78-4.17 (7H, m), 4.17-4.44 (1H, m), 5.07 (2H, s), 6.65-6.78 (1H, m), 6.78-6.90 (1H, m), 7.18-7.71 (5H, m), 7.76 (1H, d,  $J=7.5$ Hz), 7.98 (1H, d,  $J=7.1$ Hz), 11.28 (2H, br), 12.68 (1H, br)

20 NMR (39) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 2.22 (3H, s), 2.33 (3H, s), 2.36 (3H, s), 2.80 (3H, d,  $J=4$ Hz), 2.9-3.6 (6H, m), 4.15-4.3 (1H, m), 4.4-4.55 (1H, m), 5.06 (2H, s), 6.85 (1H, d,  $J=9$ Hz), 7.24 (1H, d,  $J=15.5$ Hz), 7.37 (1H, d,  $J=15.5$ Hz), 7.25-7.55 (3H, m), 7.76 (1H, d,  $J=7$ Hz), 7.98 (1H, d,  $J=7$ Hz), 9.76 (1H, br), 12.60 (1H, br)

NMR (40) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 2.05-2.35 (2H, m), 2.54-2.98 (5H, m), 2.98-

345

3.85 (10H, m), 3.85-4.19 (7H, m), 4.19-4.47 (1H, m), 5.07 (2H, s), 6.65-6.79 (1H, m), 6.79-6.90 (1H, m), 7.18-7.71 (5H, m), 7.77 (1H, d,  $J=7.7\text{Hz}$ ), 8.00 (1H, d,  $J=7.8\text{Hz}$ ), 11.22 (2H, br), 12.68 (1H, br)

5 NMR (41) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta\text{ppm}$ : 1.89-2.44 (4H, m), 2.53-3.78 (16H, m), 3.78-4.13 (6H, m), 4.13-4.42 (1H, m), 5.07 (2H, s), 6.70 (1H, dd,  $J=2.2\text{Hz}$ ,  $J=8.7\text{Hz}$ ), 6.81 (1H, d,  $J=2.2\text{Hz}$ ), 7.19-7.73 (5H, m), 7.76 (1H, d,  $J=7.8\text{Hz}$ ), 7.98 (1H, d,  $J=7.0\text{Hz}$ ), 10.61 (1H, br), 11.27 (1H, br), 12.71 (1H, br)

10 NMR (42) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta\text{ppm}$ : 1.30 (6H, d,  $J=5.9\text{Hz}$ ), 2.55-4.19 (19H, m), 4.19-4.41 (1H, m), 4.82 (1H, sept,  $J=5.9\text{Hz}$ ), 5.07 (2H, s), 6.60-6.71 (1H, m), 6.76-6.79 (1H, m), 7.22-7.49 (3H, m), 7.64 (1H, d,  $J=8.7\text{Hz}$ ), 7.71-7.90 (2H, m), 7.98 (1H, d,  $J=7.1\text{Hz}$ ), 11.81 (2H, br), 12.58 (1H, br)

15 NMR (43) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta\text{ppm}$ : 1.35 (3H, d,  $J=6\text{Hz}$ ), 1.5-2.2 (4H, m), 2.5-3.8 (13H, m), 3.88 (3H, s), 4.1-4.3 (1H, m), 4.45-4.65 (1H, m), 5.06 (2H, s), 6.70 (1H, d,  $J=9\text{Hz}$ ), 6.81 (1H, s), 7.27 (1H, d,  $J=15.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.25-7.5 (2H, m), 7.56 (1H, d,  $J=15.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.64 (1H, d,  $J=8.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.77 (1H, d,  $J=8\text{Hz}$ ), 7.99 (1H, d,  $J=8\text{Hz}$ ), 12.5-13 (3H, br)

20 NMR (44) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta\text{ppm}$ : 1.30 (3H, d,  $J=6.5\text{Hz}$ ), 1.5-2.3 (4H, m), 2.55-2.8 (1H, m), 3.0-4.7 (13H, m), 3.88 (3H, s), 5.07 (2H, s), 6.70 (1H, d,  $J=9\text{Hz}$ ), 6.81 (1H, m), 7.27 (1H, d,  $J=15.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.25-7.5 (2H, m), 7.56 (1H, d,  $J=15.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.64 (1H, d,  $J=8.5\text{Hz}$ ), 7.77 (1H, d,  $J=8\text{Hz}$ ), 7.98 (1H, d,  $J=7.5\text{Hz}$ ), 9.85 (1H, br), 10.01 (1H, br), 12.25 (1H, br)

NMR (45) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta\text{ppm}$ : 2.05-2.20 (2H, m), 2.5-4.0 (18H, m), 3.88 (3H, s), 4.1-4.25 (1H, m), 4.5-4.65 (1H, m), 5.06 (2H, s), 6.70 (1H, d,  $J=8.5\text{Hz}$ ), 6.81 (1H, m), 7.28 (1H, d,  $J=15\text{Hz}$ ), 7.25-7.5 (2H, m), 7.56 (1H, d,  $J=15\text{Hz}$ ), 7.64 (1H, d,



346

J=8.5Hz), 7.77 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.99 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 10.78 (1H, br), 11.94 (1H, br), 12.66 (1H, br)

NMR (46) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.43-1.85 (2H, m), 1.97-2.42 (4H, m), 2.58-2.82 (1H, m), 2.82-4.08 (18H, m), 4.08-4.30 (1H, m), 4.42-4.72 (1H, m), 5.06 (2H, s), 5.22-5.68 (2H, m), 6.62-6.78 (1H, m), 6.78-6.95 (1H, m), 7.24-7.70 (5H, m), 7.77 (1H, d, J=6.2Hz), 7.99 (1H, d, J=5.8Hz), 10.35 (2H, br), 11.48 (1H, br)

NMR (47) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.3-2.0 (6H, m), 2.37 (6H, s), 2.8-4.2 (16H, m), 3.88 (3H, s), 5.07 (2H, s), 6.71 (1H, dd, J=7H, J=2Hz), 6.81 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 7.25 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.25-7.5 (3H, m), 7.65-7.75 (2H, m), 7.77 (1H, d, J=7Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=6Hz), 9.40 (1H, br)

NMR (48) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.4-4.5 (23H, m), 3.88 (3H, s), 5.09 (2H, s), 6.71 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 6.82 (1H, s), 7.2-7.75 (5H, m), 7.77 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7Hz), 10.98 (1H, br), 11.58 (1H, br), 12.71 (1H, br)

NMR (49) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.16 (3H, s), 2.23 (3H, s), 2.74 (3H, d, J=4Hz), 2.85-3.7 (6H, m), 3.86 (3H, s), 4.15-4.6 (2H, m), 4.95 (2H, s), 6.66 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 6.79 (1H, m), 7.27 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.61 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.63 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 11.42 (1H, br)

NMR (50) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.39-1.90 (2H, m), 1.98-2.37 (4H, m), 2.58-2.90 (4H, m), 2.98-3.99 (10H, m), 4.11-4.32 (1H, m), 4.48-4.70 (1H, m), 5.09 (2H, s), 6.93-7.15 (2H, m), 7.20-7.62 (4H, m), 7.80-7.92 (2H, m), 7.99 (1H, d, J=7.3Hz), 10.80-11.95 (2H, m), 12.68 (1H, br)

NMR (51) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.67-2.03 (2H, m), 2.80 (3H, s), 2.99-4.35 (20H, m), 5.07 (2H, s), 6.70 (1H, dd, J=2.2Hz, J=8.7Hz), 6.82 (1H, d, J=2.2Hz), 7.19-7.74 (5H, m), 7.77 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.99 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 10.80-12.32 (2H,

br), 12.69 (1H, br)

NMR (52) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 2.15 (3H, s), 2.22 (3H, s), 2.83 (3H, s), 2.5-4.4 (17H, m), 3.86 (3H, s), 4.94 (2H, s), 6.65 (1H, d,  $J=8.5$ Hz), 6.78 (1H, s), 7.2-7.7 (3H, m), 12.05 (1H, br)

5 NMR (53) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 2.36 (6H, s), 2.55-4.45 (20H, m), 4.92 (2H, q,  $J=8.9$ Hz), 5.08 (2H, s), 6.80 (1H, dd,  $J=2.3$ Hz,  $J=8.9$ Hz), 6.94 (1H, d,  $J=2.3$ Hz), 7.21-7.75 (5H, m), 7.77 (1H, d,  $J=8.1$ Hz), 7.98 (1H, d,  $J=7.1$ Hz), 9.95 (2H, br), 12.63 (1H, br)

10 NMR (54) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.40 (6H, d,  $J=6.0$ Hz), 1.51-1.86 (2H, m), 2.05-2.30 (2H, m), 2.57-2.73 (1H, m), 2.79 (3H, s), 2.98-3.87 (8H, m), 3.88 (3H, s), 4.14-4.25 (1H, m), 4.40-4.70 (1H, m), 5.06 (2H, s), 6.70 (1H, dd,  $J=2.2$ Hz,  $J=8.8$ Hz), 6.81 (1H, d,  $J=2.2$ Hz), 7.23-7.66 (5H, m), 7.77 (1H, d,  $J=7.6$ Hz), 8.00 (1H, d,  $J=7.0$ Hz), 11.40-13.10 (3H, m)

15 NMR (55) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.4-2.4 (4H, m), 2.34 (3H, s), 2.7-5.0 (9H, m), 3.88 (3H, s), 5.06 (2H, s), 6.71 (1H, dd,  $J=2$ Hz,  $J=9$ Hz), 6.82 (1H, d,  $J=2$ Hz), 7.2-7.5 (3H, m), 7.55-7.8 (3H, m), 7.99 (1H, d,  $J=7$ Hz), 9.6-10.2 (1H, m), 12.60 (1H, br)

20 NMR (56) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm: 1.40-1.84 (2H, m), 2.00-2.42 (4H, m), 2.67 (1H, t,  $J=12.5$ Hz), 2.77 (3H, s), 3.12 (1H, t,  $J=12.5$ Hz), 3.24-4.05 (12H, m), 4.10-4.31 (1H, m), 4.48-4.71 (1H, m), 5.07 (2H, s), 6.70 (1H, dd,  $J=2.1$ Hz,  $J=8.7$ Hz), 6.82 (1H, d,  $J=2.1$ Hz), 7.19-7.62 (4H, m), 7.64 (1H, d,  $J=8.6$ Hz), 7.77 (1H, d,  $J=8.1$ Hz), 7.99 (1H, d,  $J=7.9$ Hz), 11.05-12.10 (2H, m), 12.68 (1H, br)

#### Example 344

2-{3-Allyloxy-4-[3-(1-piperidiny)carbonylacryloyl]phenoxy)methyl-carbonylamino}benzothiazole (0.55 g) is dissolved in methanol (70 ml) and

348

dioxane (40 ml), and thereto are added 10 % palladium-carbon (0.15 g), p-toluenesulfonic acid monohydrate (70 mg) and water (3 ml). The mixture is subjected to deaeration, and the mixture is refluxed under nitrogen atmosphere overnight. The mixture is filtered through a cerite pad, and to the filtrate is  
5 added water-methylene chloride, and the mixture is separated, and dried over sodium sulfate. The residue is crystallized from ethanol-methylene chloride, and recrystallized from dimethylformamide-ethanol to give 2-{3-hydroxy-4-[3-(1-piperidinyl)carbonylacryloyl]phenoxyethylcarbonylamino}benzothiazole (120 mg).

10           Yellow powder  
              M.p. 207.3-210°C

#### Example 345

To a solution of dimethyl [{2-methoxy-4-[2-(2-benzothiazolylamino-carbonyl)ethyl]benzoyl}methyl]phosphonate (6.4 g) in tetrahydrofuran (100  
15 ml) is added 40 % glyoxylic acid (7.7 ml), and further thereto is added dropwise a 5 % aqueous sodium hydroxide solution (70 ml) under ice-cooling. The mixture is stirred for 30 minutes, and the mixture is acidified with 5 % hydrochloric acid. The precipitated yellow powder is collected by filtration, washed with ethanol, dried, and then recrystallized from dimethylformamide-ethanol to  
20 give 2-{2-[3-methoxy-4-(trans-3-carboxyacryloyl)phenyl]ethylcarbonylamino}-benzothiazole (4.0 g).

              Yellow powder  
              M.p. 260-261°C

#### Example 346

25           To tetrahydrofuran (50 ml) is added dimethyl [{2-dimethylamino-4-[(2-

benzothiazolyl)aminocarbonylmethoxy]benzoyl)methyl]phosphonate (4.70 g), and thereto are added 5 % aqueous sodium hydroxide solution (40 ml) and glyoxylic acid (3.5 ml) under ice-cooling, and the mixture is stirred at the same temperature for 10 minutes. After confirming that the starting compounds are consumed, the mixture is acidified with hydrochloric acid, and concentrated under reduced pressure to remove the solvent. The precipitated crystals are collected by filtration, dissolved in dimethylformamide (100 ml), and the mixture is heated with stirring at 100°C for 30 minutes. After cooling, to the reaction solution is added isopropyl alcohol, and the precipitated crystals are collected by filtration. The crystals are recrystallized from dimethylformamide-isopropyl alcohol to give 1,1-dimethyl-2-carboxy-4-oxo-7-[(2-benzothiazolyl)-aminocarbonylmethoxy]-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolinium chloride (2.46 g).

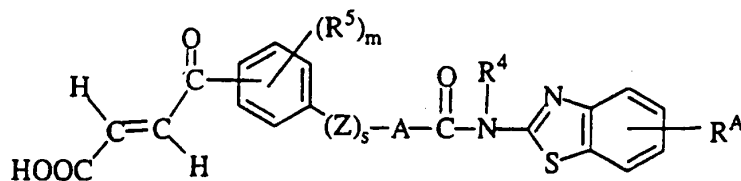
Pale green powder

M.p. 184.5-186.5°C

Using the suitable starting compounds, the compounds as listed in Table 150-160 are obtained in the same manner as in Example 1 or 5.

350

Table 150

**Example 347**

$R^5$ : H      A:  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$       m: 1      s: 0

Z: -       $R^A$ : H       $R^4$ : H

Position of  $-\text{COCH}=\text{CHCOOH}$ : 4-position

M.p. 253.5-255°C      Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-ethanol

Form: Free

**Example 348**

$R^5$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (3-position)      A:  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$       m: 1      s: 0

Z: -       $R^A$ : H       $R^4$ : H

Position of  $-\text{COCH}=\text{CHCOOH}$ : 4-position

M.p. 260-261°C      Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-ethanol

Form: Free

**Example 349**

$R^5$ :  $-\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{N}$  (5-position)      A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$       m: 1      s: 1

Z: O       $R^A$ : H       $R^4$ : H

Position of  $-\text{COCH}=\text{CHCOOH}$ : 4-position

M.p. 184-186°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-ethanol-water

Form: HCl

351

Table 151

## Example 350

R<sup>5</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub> (3-position)      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-      m: 1      s: 1

Z: O      R<sup>A</sup>: -N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub> (6-position)      R<sup>4</sup>: H

Position of -COCH=CHCOOH: 4-position

M.p. 263-264°C (decomp.)      Crystalline form: Pale brown powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-ethanol-water

Form: Hydrate

## Example 351

R<sup>5</sup>: -OCH<sub>2</sub>- (3-position)      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-      m: 1      s: 1

Z: O      R<sup>A</sup>: H      R<sup>4</sup>: H

Position of -COCH=CHCOOH: 4-position

M.p. 294-297°C      Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide

Form: Free

## Example 352

R<sup>5</sup>: -OCH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub> (3-position)      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-      m: 1      s: 1

Z: O      R<sup>A</sup>: H      R<sup>4</sup>: H

Position of -COCH=CHCOOH: 4-position

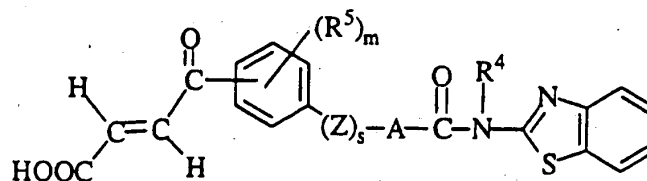
M.p. 248-254°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Diluted hydrochloric acid

NMR (36)      Form: Free

352

Table 152



## Example 353

Z: O      R<sup>4</sup>: H

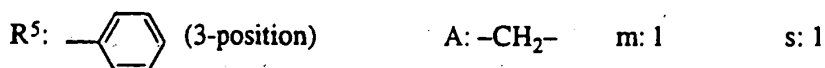
Position of -COCH=CHCOOH: 4-position

M.p. 270.0-271.5°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-dichloromethane

Form: Free

## Example 354

Z: O      R<sup>4</sup>: H

Position of -COCH=CHCOOH: 4-position

M.p. 270.5-273.3°C      Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-dichloromethane

Form: Free

## Example 355

A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-      m: 2      s: 1      Z: O      R<sup>4</sup>: H

Position of -COCH=CHCOOH: 4-position

M.p. 203-206°C      Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-dichloromethane

Form: Free

353

Table 153

---

**Example 356**
R<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> (2-position) & -OCH<sub>3</sub> (3-position)A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-      m: 2      s: 1      Z: O      R<sup>4</sup>: H

Position of -COCH=CHCOOH: 4-position

M.p. 232-234°C      Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Tetrahydrofuran-water

Form: Free

---

**Example 357**
R<sup>5</sup>:  (3-position)      A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-      m: 1      s: 1Z: O      R<sup>4</sup>: H

Position of -COCH=CHCOOH: 4-position

M.p. 237-245°C (decomp.)      Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Tetrahydrofuran-water

NMR (37)      Form: Free

---

**Example 358**
R<sup>5</sup>: -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> (2-position) & -OCH<sub>3</sub> (5-position)A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-      m: 2      s: 1      Z: O      R<sup>4</sup>: H

Position of -COCH=CHCOOH: 4-position

M.p. 127-138°C (decomp.)      Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-acetonitrile

NMR (38)      Form: Free



354

Table 154

---

Example 359 $R^5$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (2- & 6-positions)A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$     m: 2    s: 1    Z: O     $R^4$ : HPosition of  $-\text{COCH}=\text{CHCOOH}$ : 4-position

M.p. 137-138°C    Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-ethanol-diethyl ether-n-hexane

Form: Free

---

## Example 360

 $R^5$ :  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (2- & 3-positions)A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$     m: 2    s: 1    Z: O     $R^4$ : HPosition of  $-\text{COCH}=\text{CHCOOH}$ : 4-position

M.p. 235-237°C    Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-dimethylformamide

Form: Free

---

## Example 361

 $R^5$ :  $-\text{CH}_3$  (2-position) &  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (3-position)A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$     m: 2    s: 1    Z: O     $R^4$ : HPosition of  $-\text{COCH}=\text{CHCOOH}$ : 4-positionCrystalline form: Pale yellow powder    NMR (39)    Form: Free

---

## Example 362

 $R^5$ :  $-\text{CH}_3$  (2-position) &  $-\text{OCH}_3$  (3-position)A:  $-\text{CH}_2-$     m: 2    s: 1    Z: O     $R^4$ : HPosition of  $-\text{COCH}=\text{CHCOOH}$ : 6-positionCrystalline form: Pale brown powder    NMR (40)    Form: Free

---

355

Table 155

---

Example 363 $R^5$ :  $-(CH_2)_3CH_3$  (2-position) &  $-OCH_3$  (3-position)A:  $-CH_2-$  m: 2 s: 1 Z: O  $R^4$ : HPosition of  $-COCH=CHCOOH$ : 4-position

Crystalline form: Yellow powder NMR (41) Form: Free

---

Example 364 $R^5$ :  $-SCH_3$  (3-position)A:  $-CH_2-$  m: 1 s: 1 Z: O  $R^4$ : HPosition of  $-COCH=CHCOOH$ : 4-position

Crystalline form: Yellow powder NMR (42) Form: Free

---

Example 365 $R^5$ :  $-CH_2CH_3$  (2-position) &  $-OCH_3$  (3-position)A:  $-CH_2-$  m: 2 s: 1 Z: O  $R^4$ : HPosition of  $-COCH=CHCOOH$ : 4-position

Crystalline form: Pale brown powder NMR (43) Form: Free

---

Example 366 $R^5$ :  $-OCH_3$  (3-position)A:  $-CH(CH_3)-$  m: 1 s: 1 Z: O  $R^4$ : HPosition of  $-COCH=CHCOOH$ : 4-position

M.p. 225-228°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Pale brown powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-ethanol-diethyl ether-water

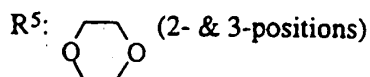
Form: Free

---

356

Table 156

## Example 367



A: -CH<sub>2</sub>- m: 2 s: 1 Z: O R<sup>4</sup>: H

Position of -COCH=CHCOOH: 4-position

M.p. 255-256°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-acetonitrile Form: Free

## Example 368

R<sup>5</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub> (3-position)

A: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>- m: 1 s: 1 Z: O R<sup>4</sup>: H

Position of -COCH=CHCOOH: 4-position

M.p. 239-241°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-acetonitrile Form: Free

## Example 369

R<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> (2-position) & -OCH<sub>3</sub> (5-position)

A: -CH<sub>2</sub>- m: 2 s: 1 Z: O R<sup>4</sup>: H

Position of -COCH=CHCOOH: 4-position

M.p. 222-224°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-acetonitrile Form: Free

## Example 370

R<sup>5</sup>: -CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub> (2-position) & -OCH<sub>3</sub> (5-position)

A: -CH<sub>2</sub>- m: 2 s: 1 Z: O R<sup>4</sup>: H

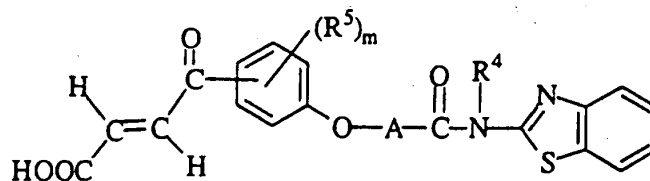
Position of -COCH=CHCOOH: 4-position

M.p. 224-225°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-acetonitrile Form: Free

357

Table 157



---

Example 371R<sup>5</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub> (2- & 5-positions)A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-      m: 2      R<sup>4</sup>: H

Position of -COCH=CHCOOH: 4-position

NMR (44)      Crystalline form: Yellow powder      Form: Free

---

## Example 372

R<sup>5</sup>: -CH<sub>3</sub> (2-position) & -OCH<sub>3</sub> (5-position)A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-      m: 2      R<sup>4</sup>: H

Position of -COCH=CHCOOH: 4-position

NMR (45)      Crystalline form: Yellow powder

---

## Example 373

R<sup>5</sup>: -OC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub> (2-position) & -OCH<sub>3</sub> (5-position)A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-      m: 2      R<sup>4</sup>: H

Position of -COCH=CHCOOH: 4-position

M.p. 202-204°C (decomp.)      Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-acetonitrile      Form: Free

---

Table 158

---

Example 374

R<sup>5</sup>: -Br (2-position) & -OCH<sub>3</sub> (5-position)

A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-      m: 2      R<sup>4</sup>: H

Position of -COCH=CHCOOH: 4-position

M.p. 238-239°C (decomp.)    Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-acetonitrile      Form: Free

---

## Example 375

R<sup>5</sup>: -CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub> (2-position) & -OCH<sub>3</sub> (5-position)

A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-      m: 2      R<sup>4</sup>: H

Position of -COCH=CHCOOH: 4-position

NMR (46)    Crystalline form: Yellow powder    Form: Free

---

## Example 376

R<sup>5</sup>: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>5</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> (2-position) & -OCH<sub>3</sub> (5-position)

A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-      m: 2      R<sup>4</sup>: H

Position of -COCH=CHCOOH: 4-position

NMR (47)    Crystalline form: Yellow powder    Form: Free

---

## Example 377

R<sup>5</sup>: -N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub> (2-position)

A: -CH<sub>2</sub>-      m: 1      R<sup>4</sup>: H

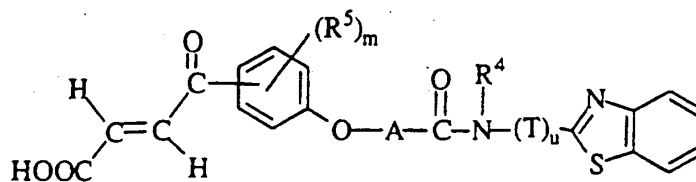
Position of -COCH=CHCOOH: 4-position

NMR (48)    Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder    Form: Free

---

359

Table 159



## Example 378

R<sup>5</sup>: -OCH<sub>3</sub> (3-position)A: -CH<sub>2</sub>- m: 1R<sup>4</sup>: HT: -CH<sub>2</sub>-

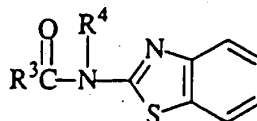
u: 1

Position of -COCH=CHCOOH: 4-position

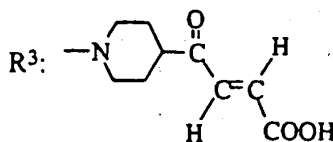
NMR (49) Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Form: Free

Table 160



## Example 379

R<sup>4</sup>: H

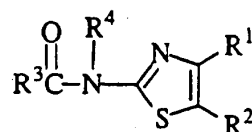
M.p. 211.5-213°C Crystalline form: White powder Form: Free

Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-methanol

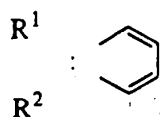
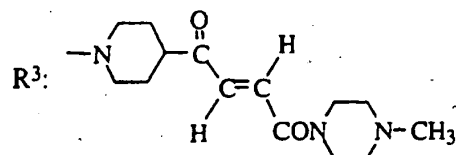
360

Using the suitable starting compounds, the compounds as listed in Tables 161-193 are obtained in the same manner as in Example 3 or 4.

Table 161



## Example 380

R<sup>4</sup>: H

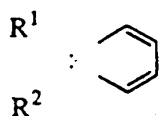
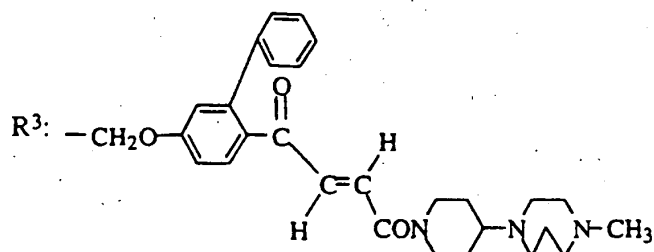
M.p. 187.5-188.5°C

Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether

Form: Free

## Example 381

R<sup>4</sup>: H

M.p. 164-166°C

Crystalline form: White powder

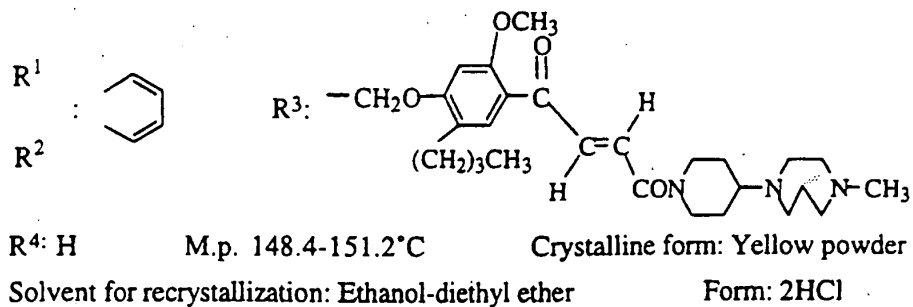
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether

Form: 2HCl

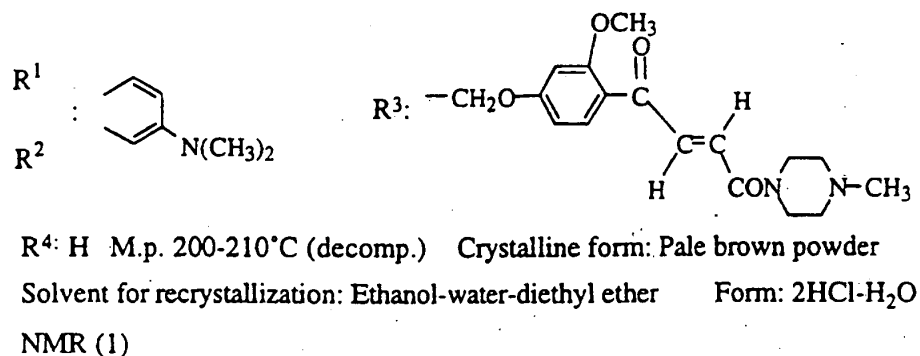
361

Table 162

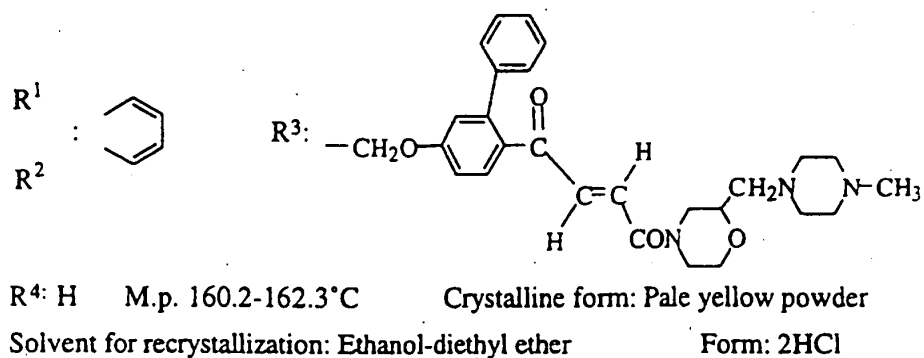
## Example 382



## Example 383



## Example 384

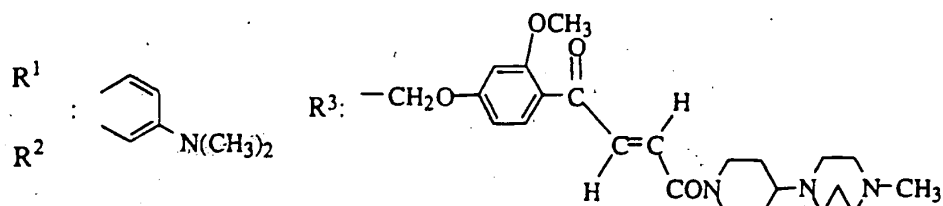




362

Table 163

## Example 385

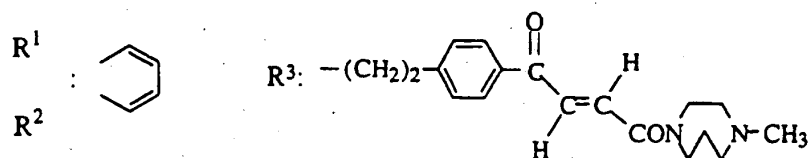


$R^4$ : H M.p. 156-166°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Pale brown powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether Form: 3HCl·3H<sub>2</sub>O

NMR (2)

## Example 386

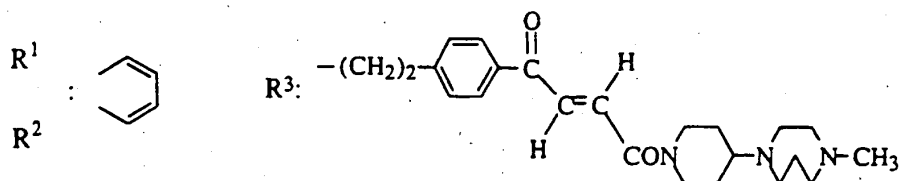


$R^4$ : H M.p. 178-179°C Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol

Form: Free

## Example 387



$R^4$ : H M.p. 252-253.5°C Crystalline form: White powder

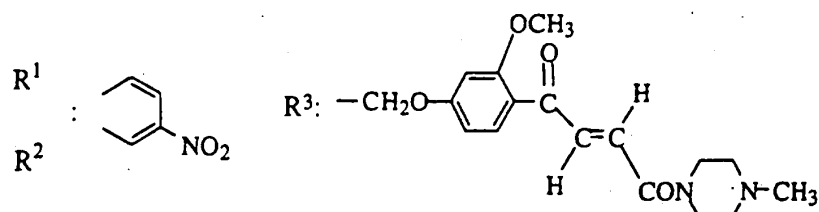
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

Form: Free

363

Table 164

## Example 388

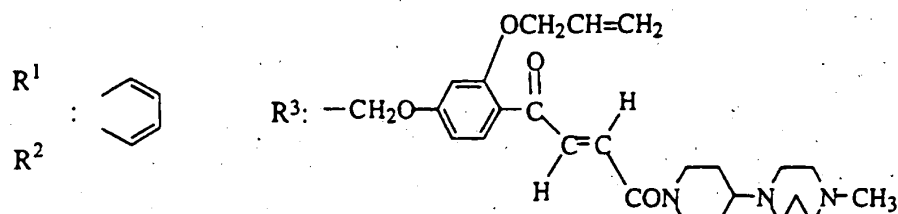


$R^4$ : H M.p. 244-246°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Pale brown powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-chloroform

Form: Free

## Example 389

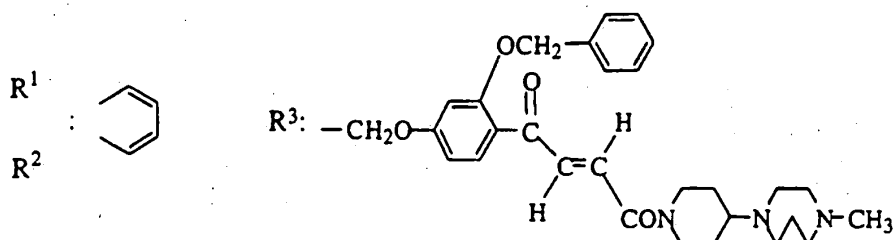


$R^4$ : H M.p. 173-176°C Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

Form: 2HCl

## Example 390



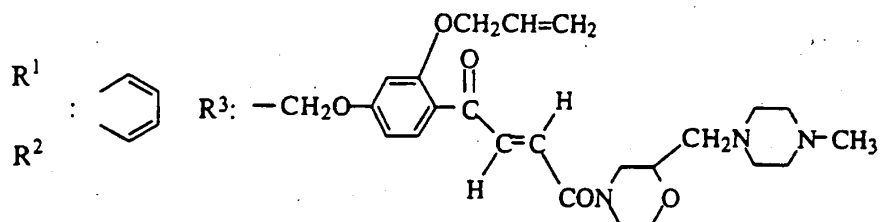
$R^4$ : H M.p. 161.2-163.0°C Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

Form: 2HCl

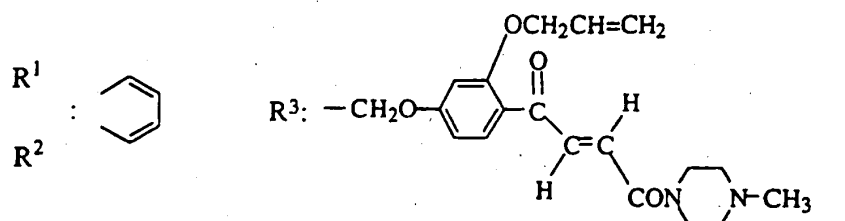
Table 165

## Example 391



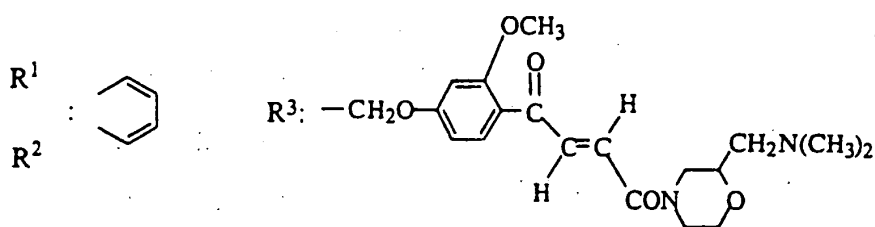
$R^4$ : H      M.p. 172-176°C      Crystalline form: White powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether      Form: Free

## Example 392



$R^4$ : H      M.p. 234.5-236.5°C      Crystalline form: Yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water      Form: Methanesulfonate

## Example 393

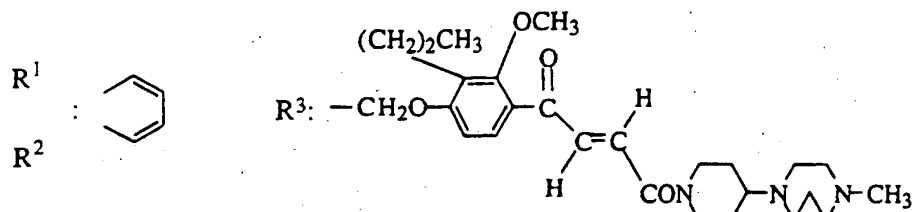


$R^4$ : H      M.p. 114-117°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether      Form: Dimethanesulfonate

365

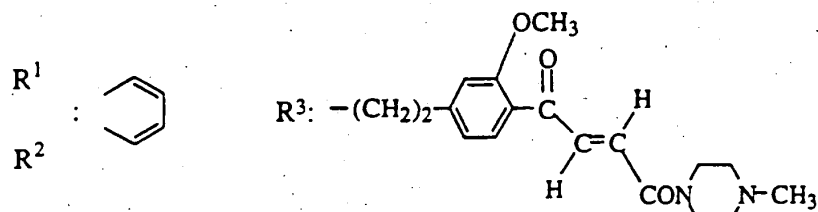
Table 166

## Example 394



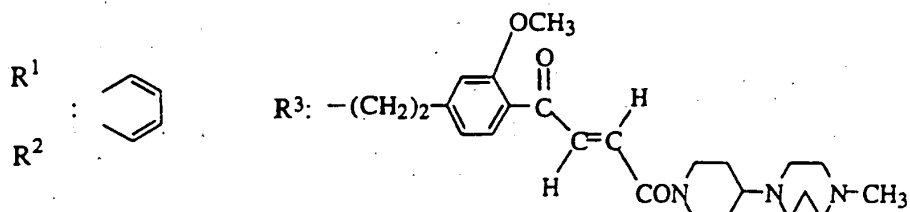
$R^4$ : H      M.p. 167.0-168.5°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water      Form: 2HCl

## Example 395



$R^4$ : H      M.p. 183-183.5°C      Crystalline form: Pale brown powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol      Form: Free

## Example 396

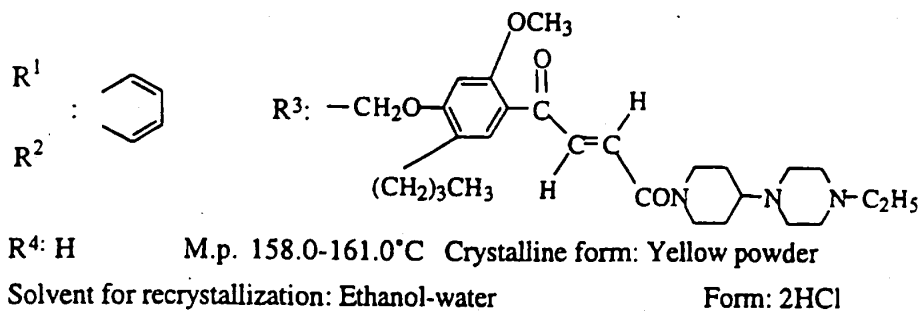


$R^4$ : H      M.p. 237.5-238.5°C      Crystalline form: Yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water      Form: 2HCl

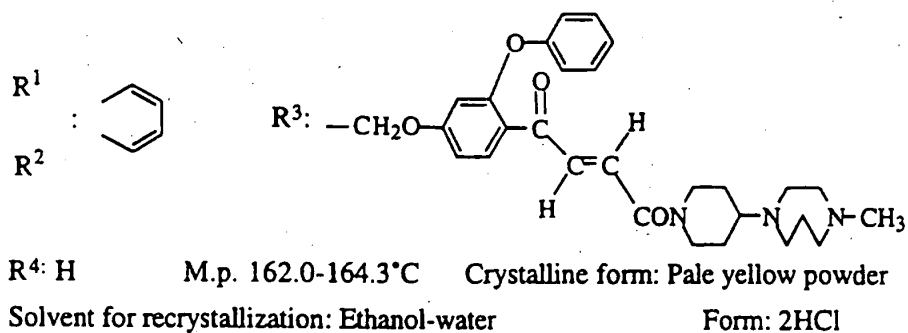
366

Table 167

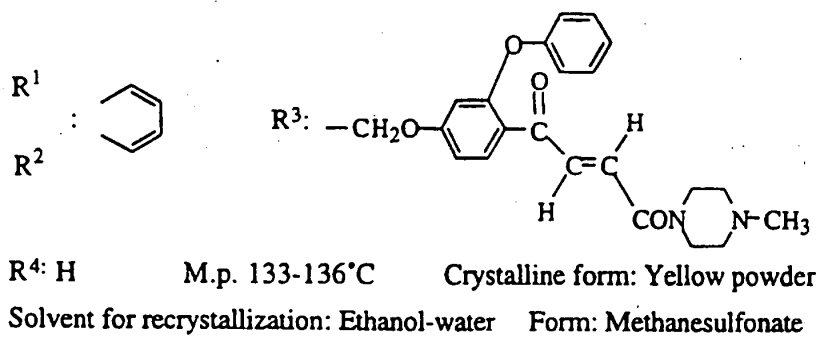
## Example 397



## Example 398



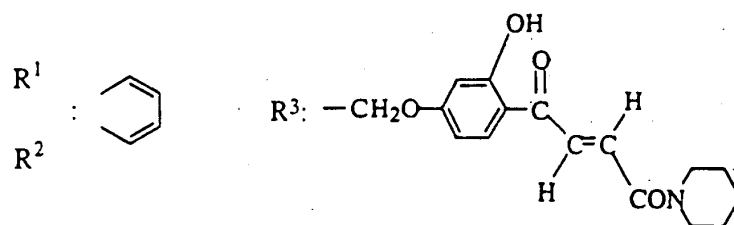
## Example 399



367

Table 168

## Example 400

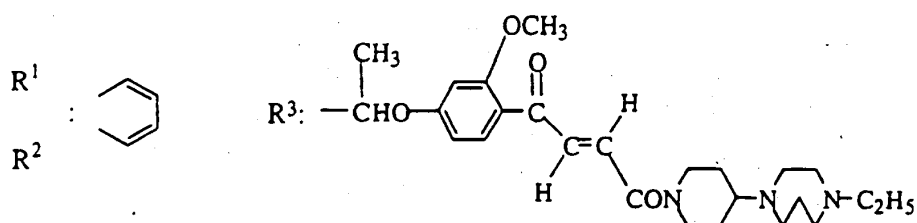


$R^4$ : H M.p. 207.3-210.0°C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dimethylformamide-ethanol Form: Free

## Example 401



$R^4$ : H M.p. 220-240°C (decomp.)

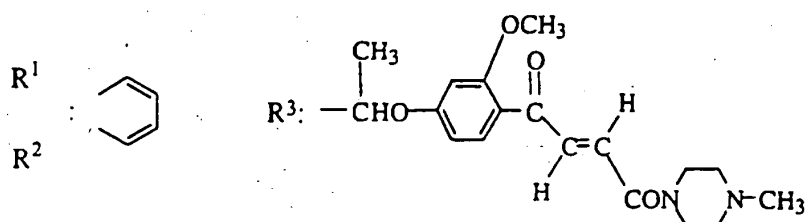
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether

Form: 2HCl

NMR (3)

## Example 402



$R^4$ : H M.p. 170-180°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether

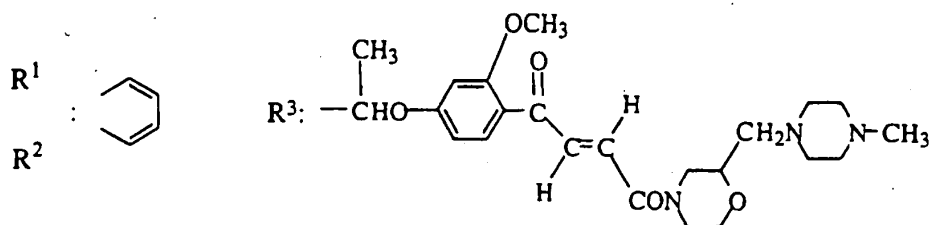
Form: HCl

NMR (4)

368

Table 169

### Example 403



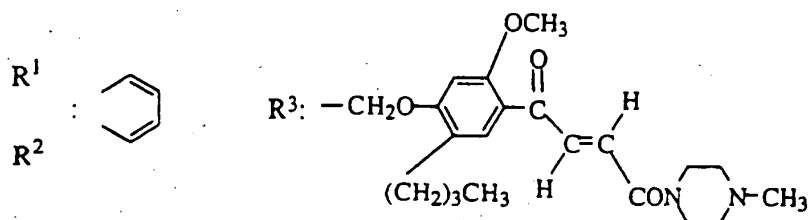
R<sup>4</sup>: H    M.p. 190-220°C (decomp.)    Crystalline form: Pale orange powder

**Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether**

Form: 2HCl

NMR (5)

### Example 404

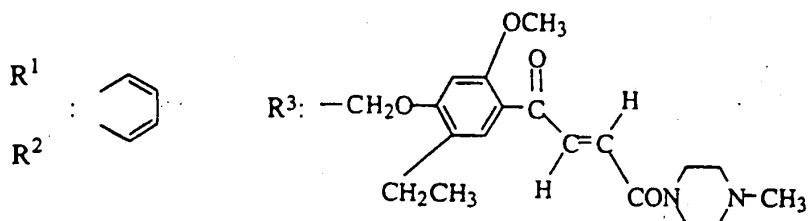


R<sup>4</sup>: H      M.p. 138.5-140.3°C      Crystalline form: Yellow powder

**Solvent for recrystallization:** Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

**Form:** Methanesulfonate

### Example 405



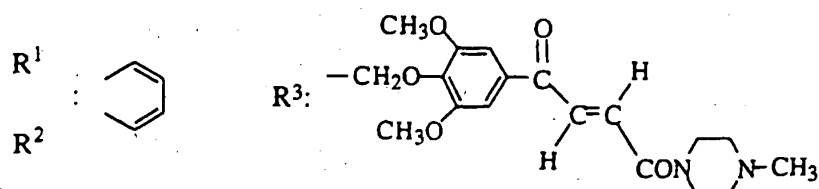
R<sup>4</sup>: H      M.p. 217.4-219.0°C      Crystalline form: Yellow powder

**Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether-dichloromethane**

Form: Methanesulfonate

Table 170

## Example 406

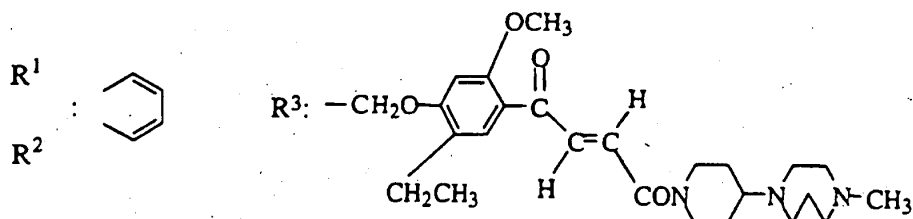


$R^4$ : H    M.p. 138.2-139.5°C    Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

Form: Methanesulfonate

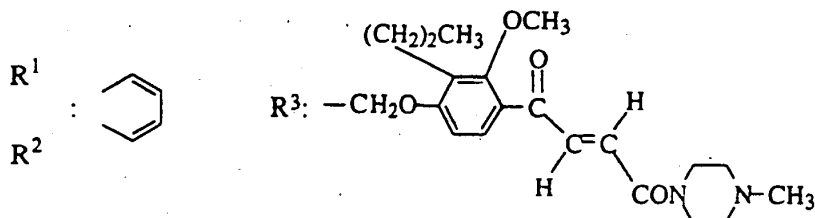
## Example 407



$R^4$ : H    M.p. 168.5-171.0°C    Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether    Form: 2HCl

## Example 408



$R^4$ : H    M.p. 132-134°C    Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether

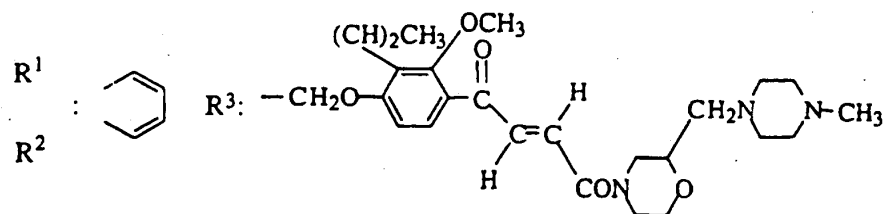
Form: Methanesulfonate



370

Table 171

## Example 409

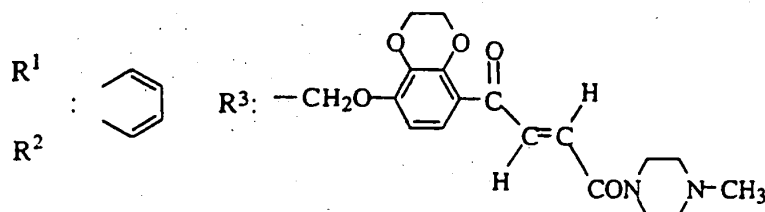
 $R^4$ : H M.p. 190-193°C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-acetone-diethyl ether

Form: 2HCl

## Example 410

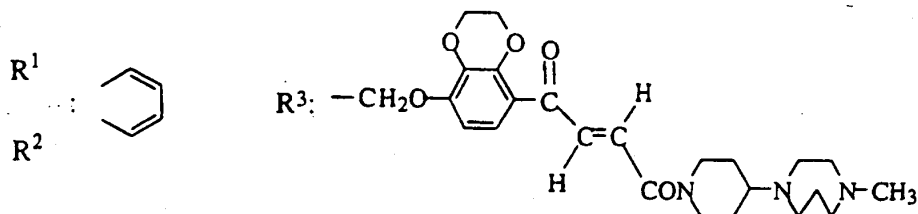
 $R^4$ : H M.p. 110-150°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-diethyl ether

Form: Dimethanesulfonate

NMR (6)

## Example 411

 $R^4$ : H M.p. 190-240°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether

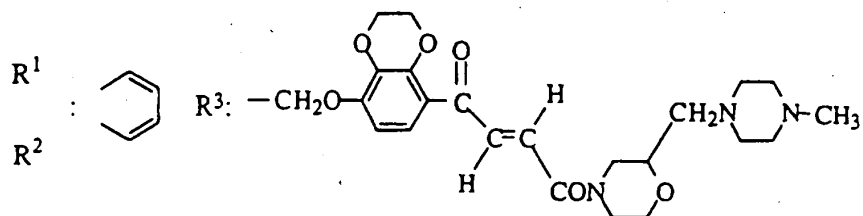
Form: 2HCl

NMR (7)

371

Table 172

## Example 412

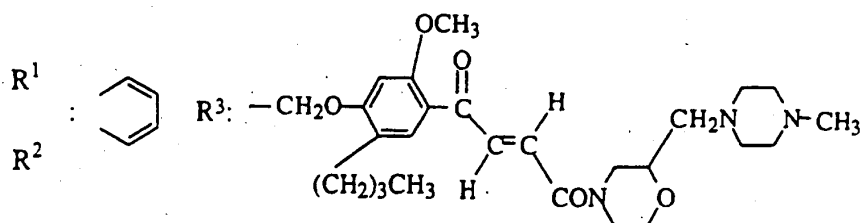


$R^4$ : H M.p. 190-210°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether

Form: 2HCl NMR (8)

## Example 413



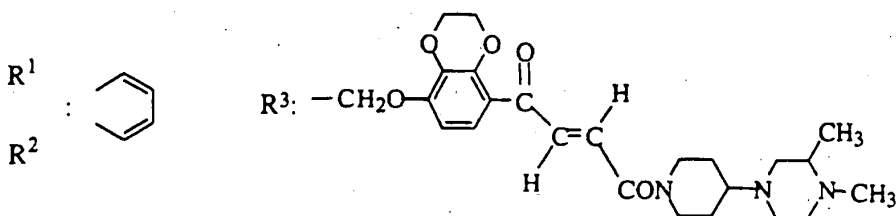
$R^4$ : H M.p. 167.0-169.0°C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol

Form: 2HCl

## Example 414



$R^4$ : H M.p. 200-220°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

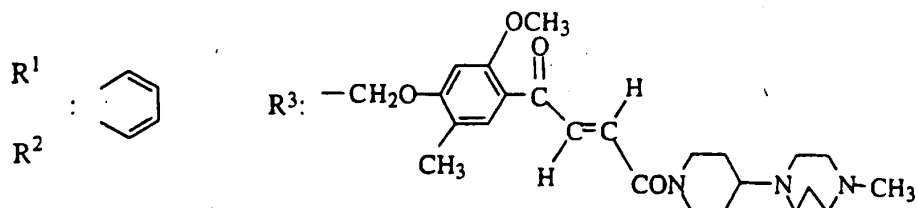
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

Form: 2HCl NMR (9)

372

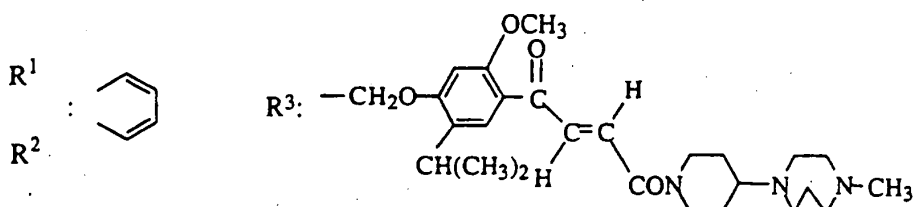
Table 173

## Example 415



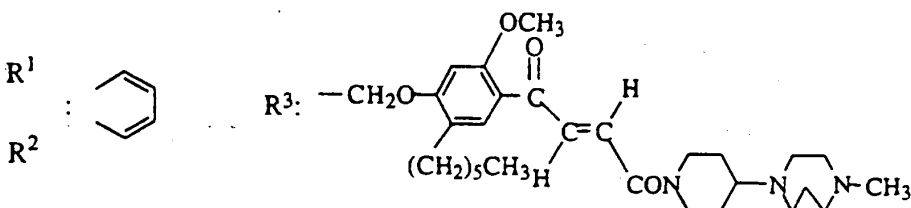
$R^4$ : H    M.p. 177-180°C    Crystalline form: Yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-diisopropyl ether  
 Form: 2HCl

## Example 416



$R^4$ : H    M.p. 179-182°C    Crystalline form: Yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-diisopropyl ether  
 Form: 2HCl

## Example 417

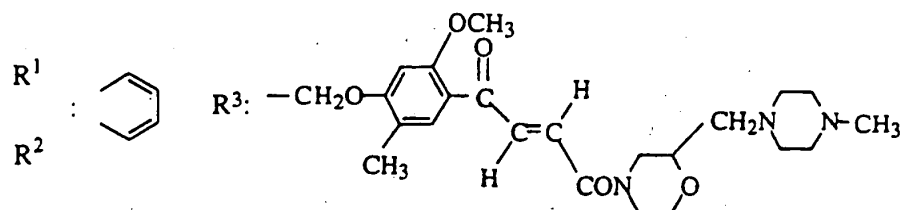


$R^4$ : H    M.p. 158-159°C    Crystalline form: Yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-diisopropyl ether  
 Form: 2HCl

373

Table 174

## Example 418

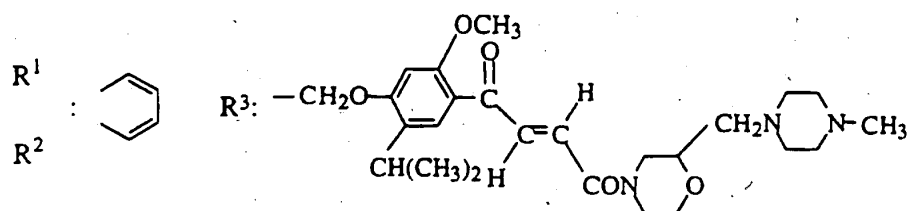


$R^4$ : H M.p. 230-232°C Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Methanol-diethyl ether

Form: 2HCl

## Example 419



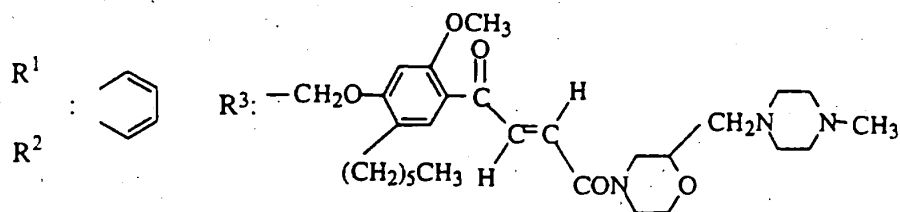
$R^4$ : H M.p. 221-224°C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Methanol-diethyl ether

Form: 2HCl

## Example 420



$R^4$ : H M.p. 179-182°C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

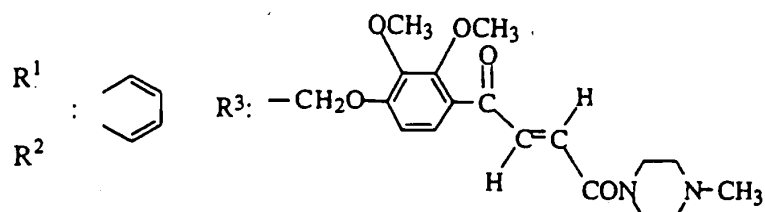
Solvent for recrystallization: Methanol-diethyl ether

Form: 2HCl

374

Table 175

## Example 421

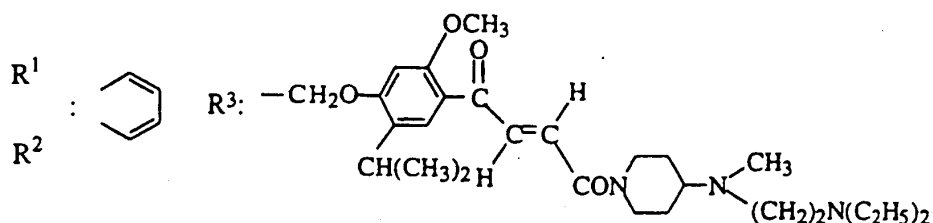


$R^4$ : H M.p. 146.2-148.5°C Crystalline form: Gray powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol

Form: HCl

## Example 422



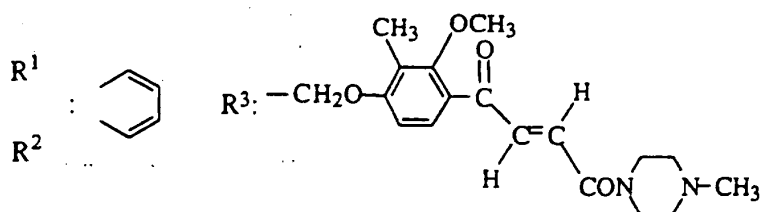
$R^4$ : H M.p. 153-155°C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane

Form: 2HCl

## Example 423



$R^4$ : H

M.p. 225-228°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

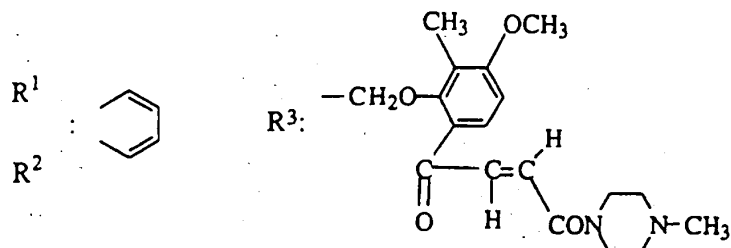
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol

Form: Methanesulfonate

375

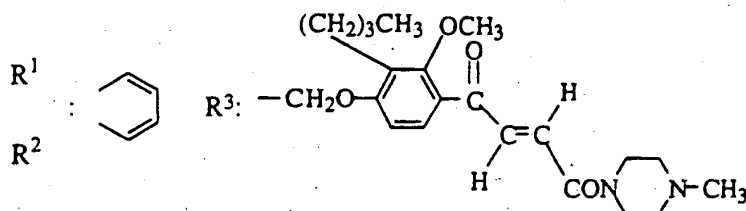
Table 176

## Example 424



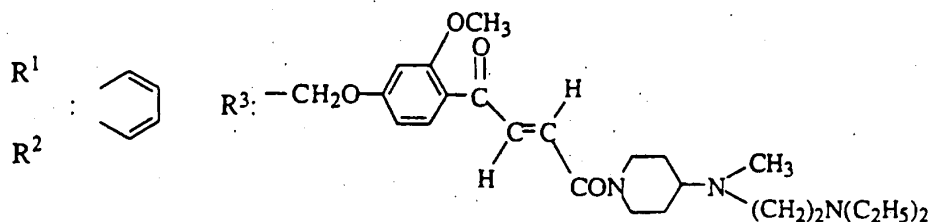
$R^4$ : H      NMR (10)      Crystalline form: Pale yellow amorphous  
 Form: Methanesulfonate

## Example 425



$R^4$ : H      M.p. 140-143°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol      Form: Methanesulfonate

## Example 426

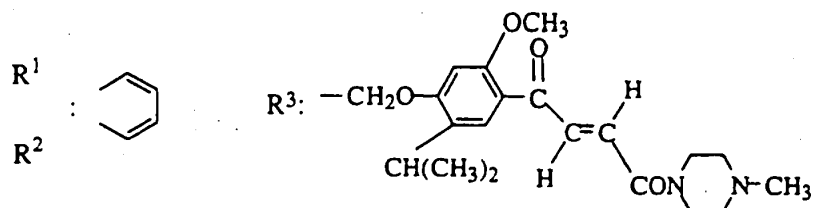


$R^4$ : H      M.p. 152.4-154.8°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Acetone-dichloromethane-water  
 Form: 2HCl

376

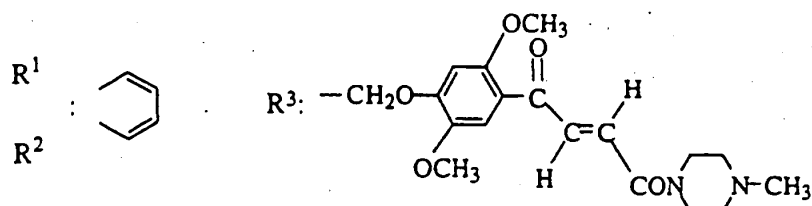
Table 177

## Example 427



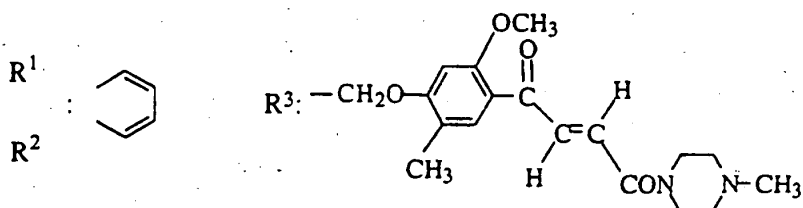
$R^4$ : H      M.p. 154-155°C      Crystalline form: Yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether      Form: Methanesulfonate

## Example 428



$R^4$ : H      M.p. 165-168°C      Crystalline form: Yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-diethyl ether  
 Form: Methanesulfonate

## Example 429

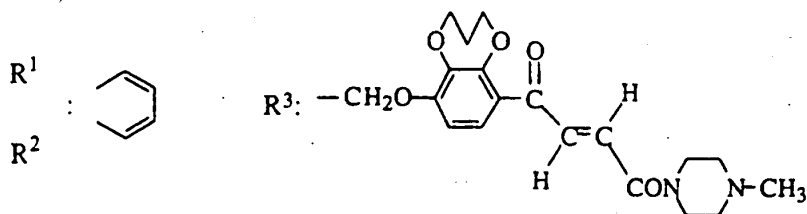


$R^4$ : H      M.p. 234-235°C      Crystalline form: Yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-diethyl ether  
 Form: Methanesulfonate

377

Table 178

## Example 430

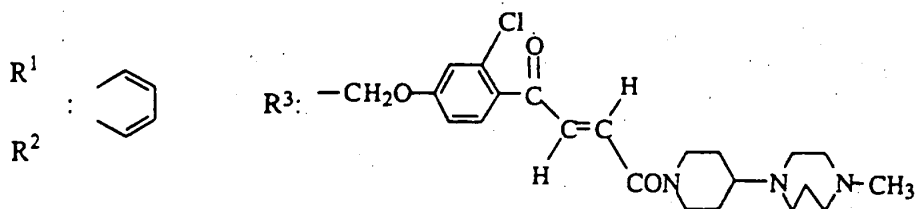


$R^4$ : H M.p. 195-200°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Acetone-water-diethyl ether

NMR (11) Form: Methanesulfonate

## Example 431

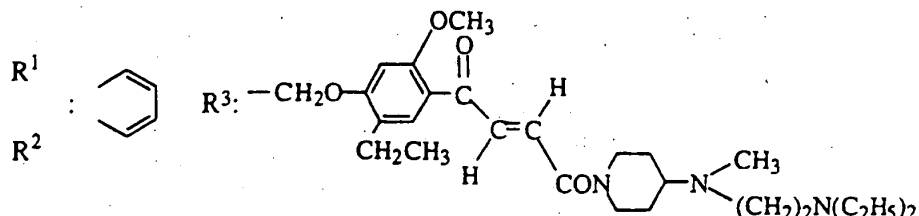


$R^4$ : H M.p. 183-220°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Acetone-ethanol-diethyl ether

NMR (12) Form: 2HCl

## Example 432



$R^4$ : H M.p. 159-161°C Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-acetone-diethyl ether

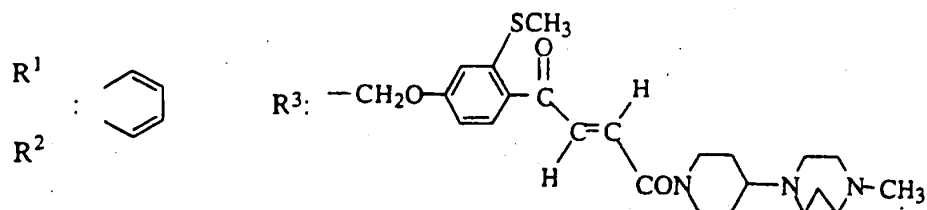
Form: 2HCl



378

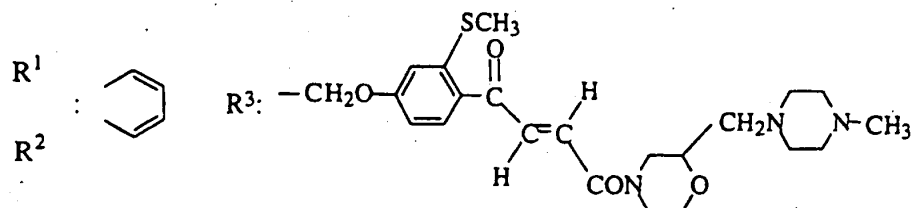
Table 179

## Example 433

 $R^4$ : H M.p. 177-180°C Crystalline form: Yellow amorphous

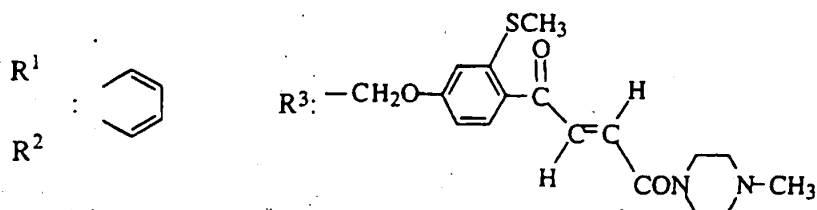
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether Form: 2HCl

## Example 434

 $R^4$ : H M.p. 178-181°C Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water Form: 2HCl

## Example 435

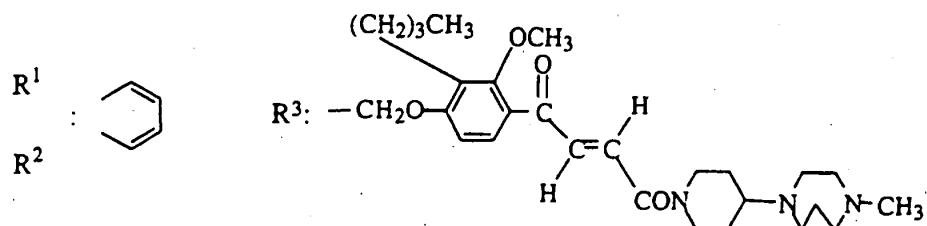
 $R^4$ : H M.p. 199-202°C Crystalline form: Pale orange powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water Form: Methanesulfonate

379

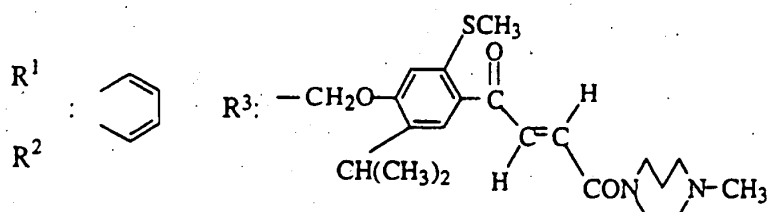
Table 180

## Example 436



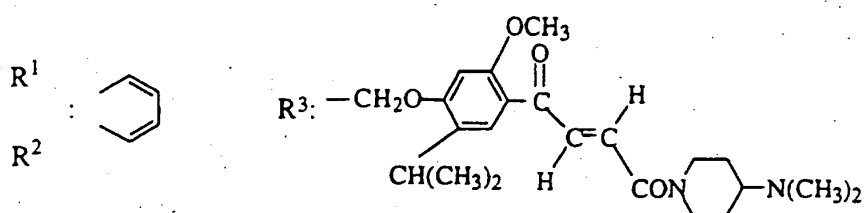
$R^4$ : H    NMR (13)    Crystalline form: Yellow amorphous    Form: 2HCl

## Example 437



$R^4$ : H    M.p. 151-154°C    Crystalline form: Yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether    Form: Methanesulfonate

## Example 438

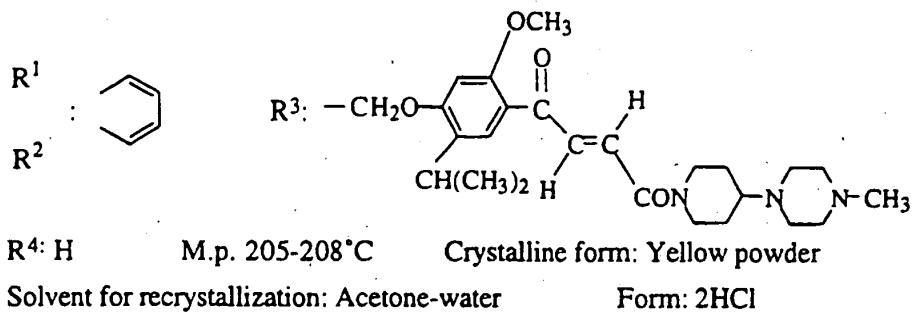


$R^4$ : H    M.p. 114-116°C    Crystalline form: Yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Acetone-water    Form: Methanesulfonate

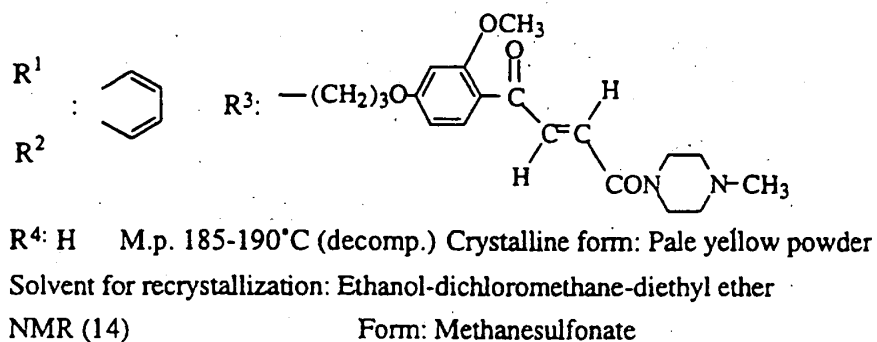
380

Table 181

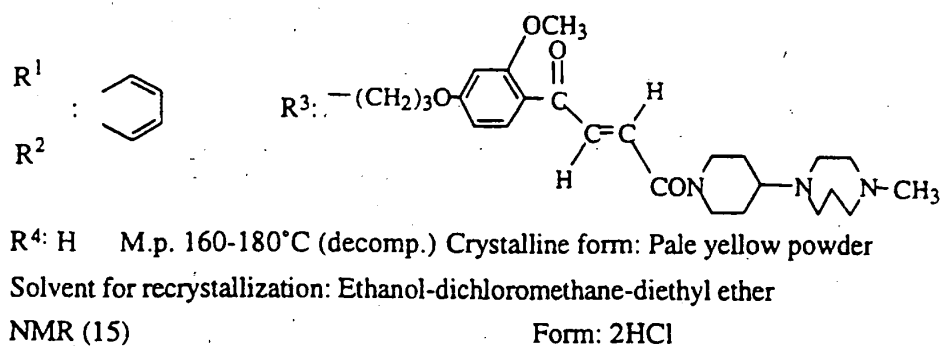
## Example 439



## Example 440



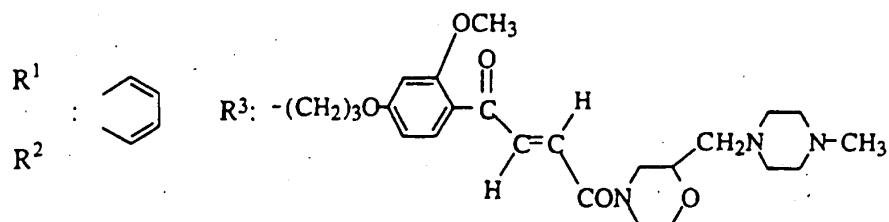
## Example 441



381

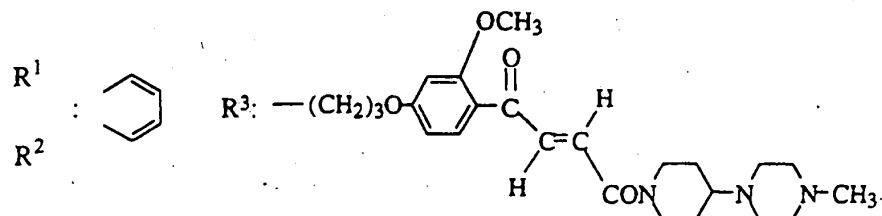
Table 182

## Example 442



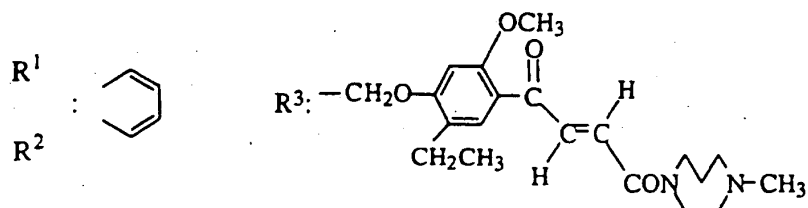
$R^4$ : H      M.p. 170-190°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-diethyl ether  
 NMR (16)      Form: 2HCl

## Example 443



$R^4$ : H      M.p. 178-183°C (decomp.)      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-diethyl ether  
 NMR (17)      Form: 2HCl

## Example 445

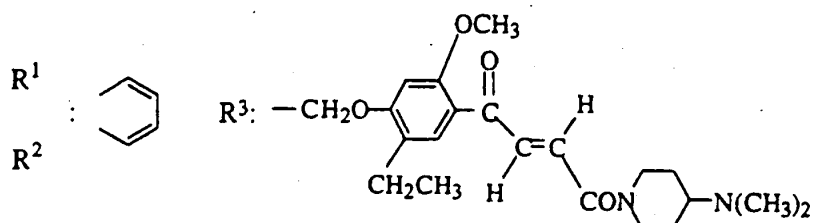


$R^4$ : H      M.p. 138-150°C (decomp.)      Crystalline form: Pale brown powder  
 Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-diethyl ether  
 NMR (18)      Form: Methanesulfonate

382

Table 183

## Example 446



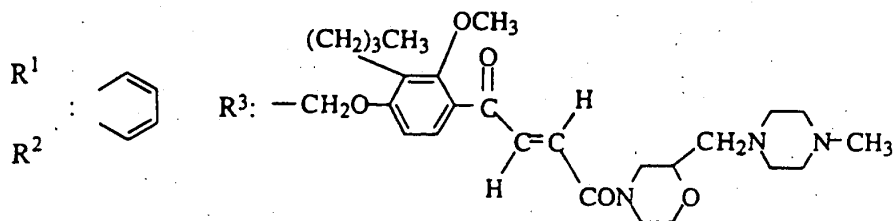
$R^4$ : H M.p. 120-160°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Pale brown powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-diethyl ether-acetone

NMR (19)

Form: Methanesulfonate

## Example 447



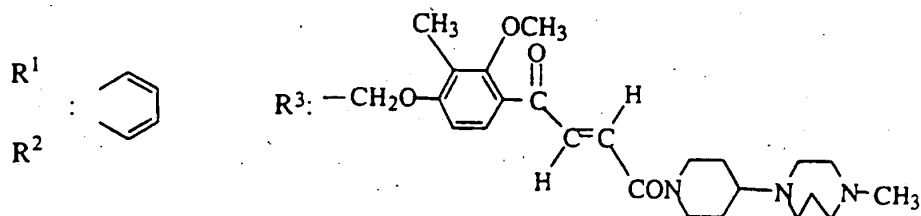
$R^4$ : H M.p. 169-171°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: 2HCl

## Example 448



$R^4$ : H M.p. 178-180°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

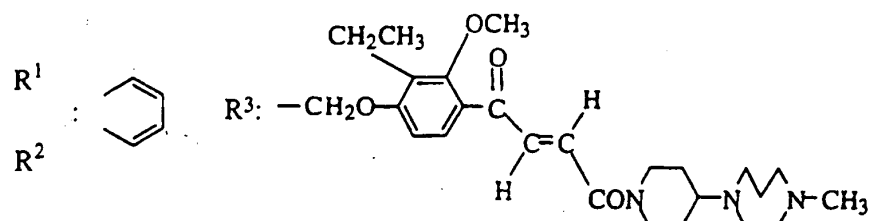
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

Form: 2HCl

383

Table 184

## Example 449

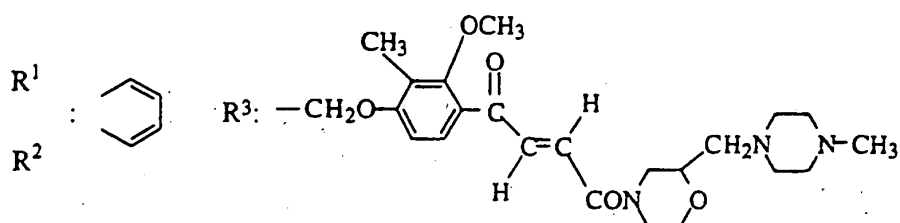


$R^4$ : H M.p. 162-164°C Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether

Form: 2HCl

## Example 450

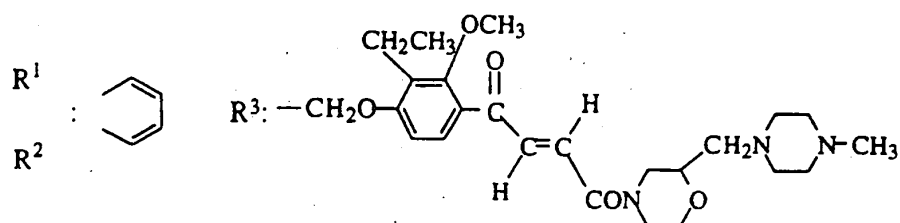


$R^4$ : H M.p. 172-175°C Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: 2HCl

## Example 451



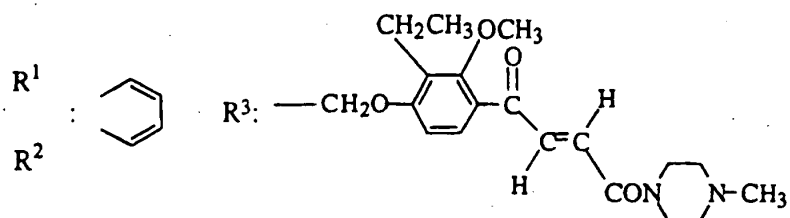
$R^4$ : H M.p. 167-170°C Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water Form: 2HCl

384

Table 185

## Example 452

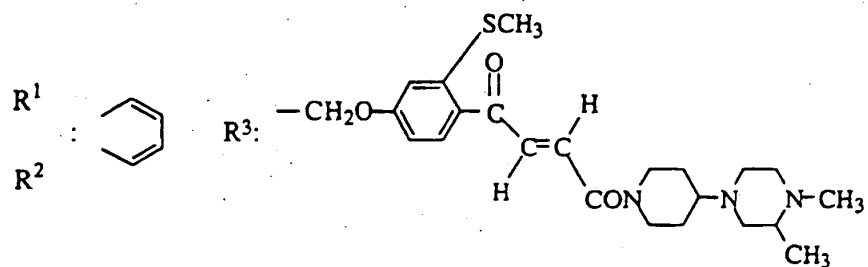


$R^4$ : H M.p. 208-209°C Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: Methanesulfonate

## Example 453



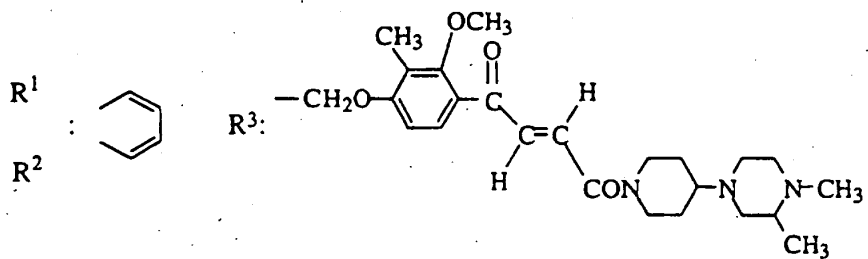
$R^4$ : H M.p. 246-249°C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: 2HCl

## Example 454



$R^4$ : H M.p. 188-190°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

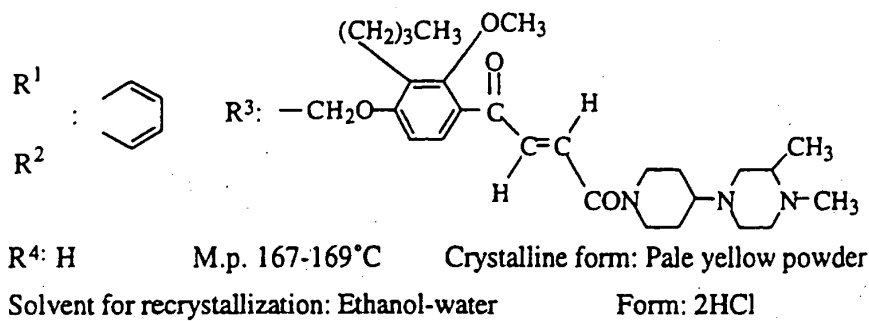
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: 2HCl

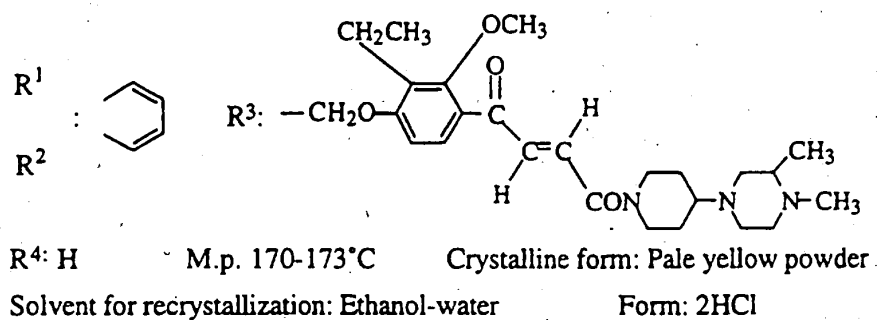
385

Table 186

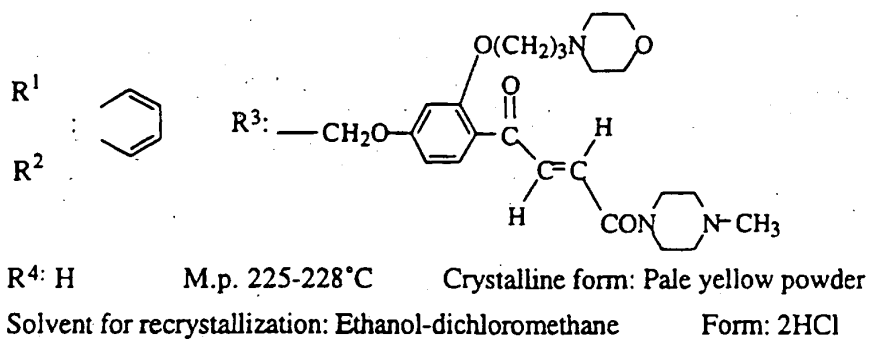
## Example 455



## Example 456



## Example 457

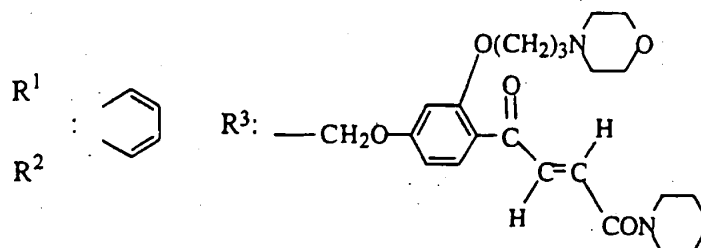




386

Table 187.

## Example 458

 $R^4$ : H

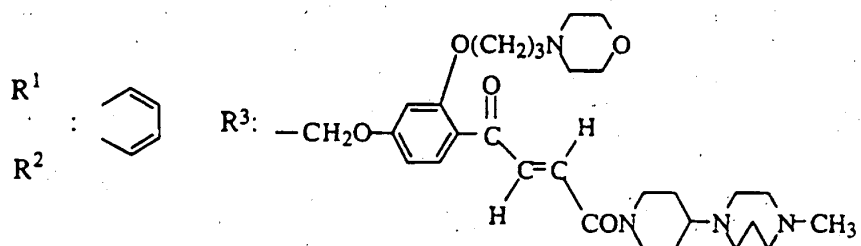
M.p. 162.0-163.5°C

Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: Methanesulfonate

## Example 459

 $R^4$ : H

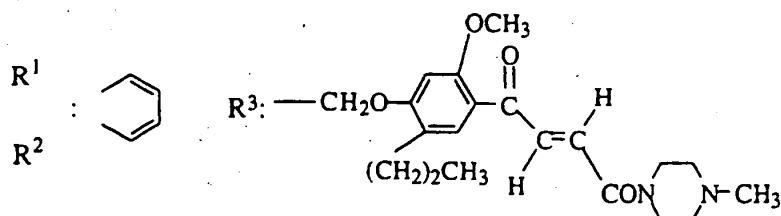
M.p. 209.5-212.5°C

Crystalline form: White powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

Form: 3HCl

## Example 460

 $R^4$ : H

M.p. 155-185°C (decomp.)

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-diethyl ether

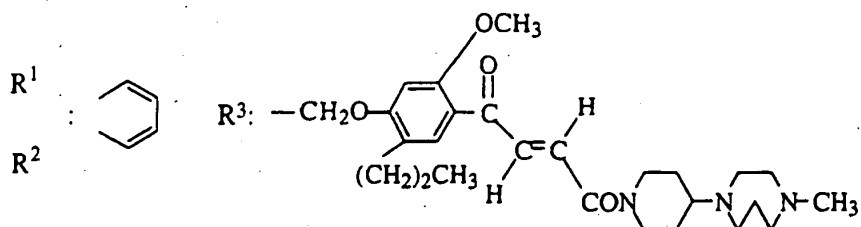
NMR (20)

Form: Methanesulfonate

387

Table 188

## Example 461

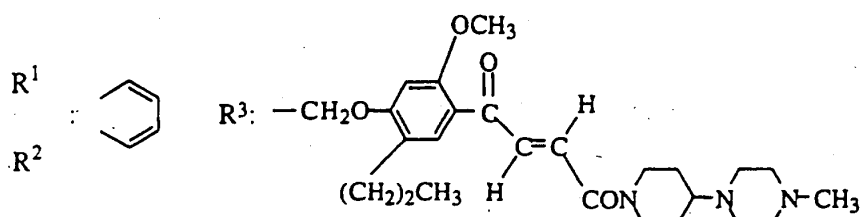


$R^4$ : H M.p. 180-215°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-diethyl ether

NMR (21) Form: 2HCl

## Example 462

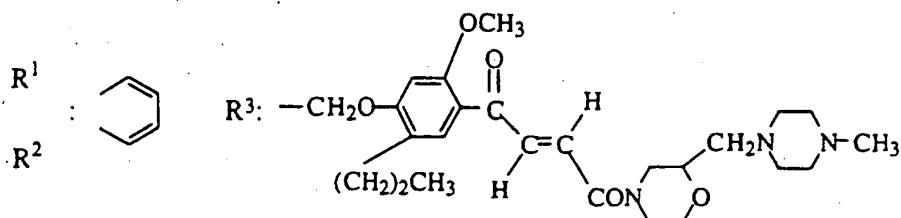


$R^4$ : H M.p. 220-225°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-diethyl ether

NMR (22) Form: 2HCl

## Example 463



$R^4$ : H M.p. 180-215°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

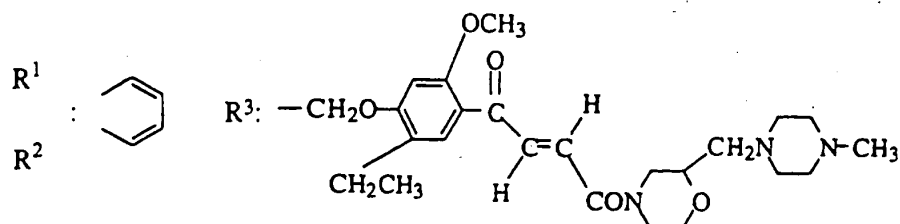
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-diethyl ether

NMR (23) Form: 2HCl

388

Table 189

## Example 464

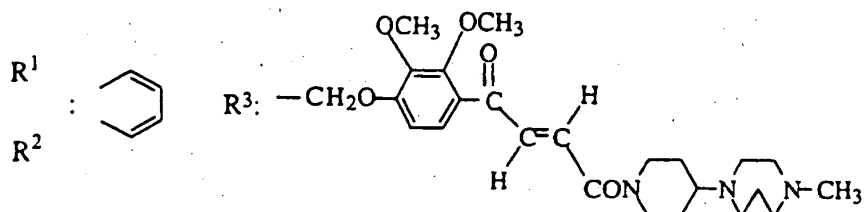


$R^4$ : H      M.p. 185.5-192°C      Crystalline form: Yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

NMR (24)      Form: 2HCl

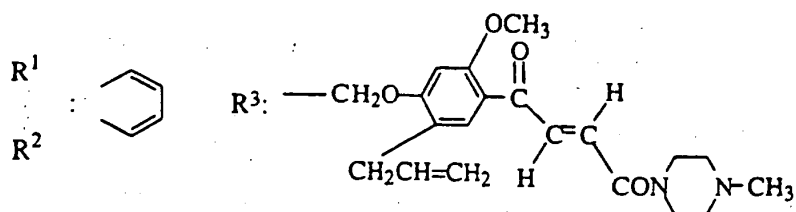
## Example 465



$R^4$ : H      M.p. 159.5-161.2°C      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether-water      Form: 2HCl

## Example 466



$R^4$ : H      M.p. 150-158°C (decomp.)      Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

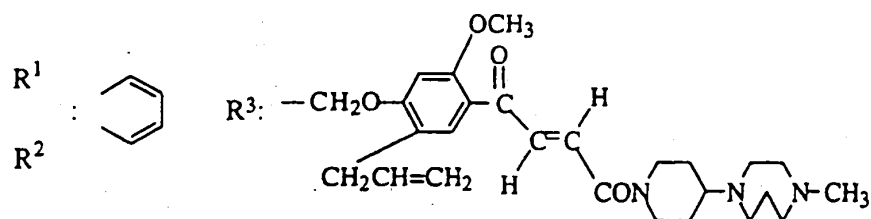
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-diethyl ether

NMR (25)      Form: Methanesulfonate

389

Table 190

## Example 467



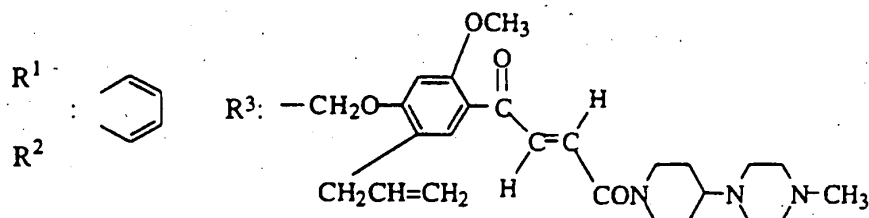
$R^4$ : H M.p. 193-204°C (decomp.)

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-diethyl ether

NMR (26) Form: 2HCl

## Example 468



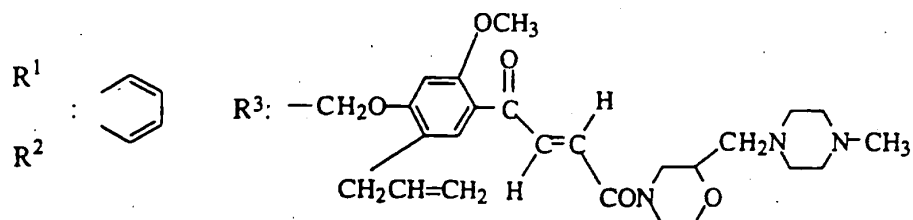
$R^4$ : H M.p. 205-213°C (decomp.)

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-diethyl ether

NMR (27) Form: 2HCl

## Example 469



$R^4$ : H M.p. 205-213°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

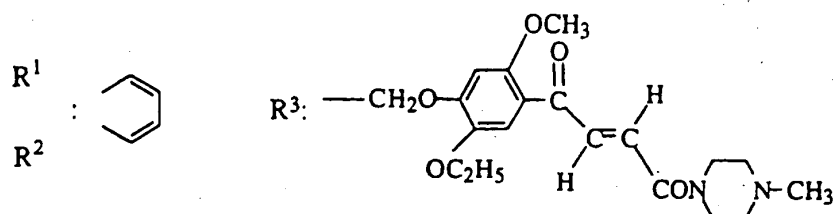
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-dichloromethane-diethyl ether

NMR (28) Form: 2HCl

390

Table 191

## Example 470



$R^4$ : H M.p. 131-160°C (decomp.)

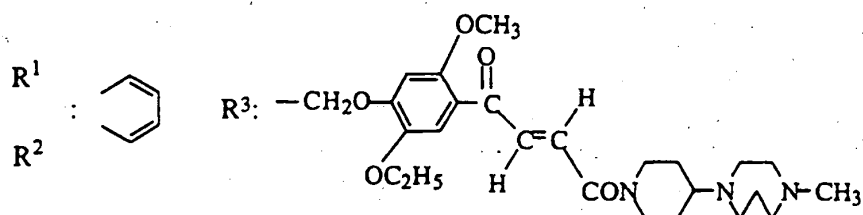
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-ethanol-diethyl ether

NMR (29)

Form: Methanesulfonate

## Example 471



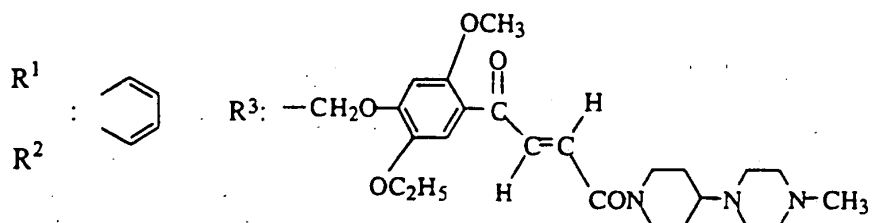
$R^4$ : H M.p. 180-210°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Pale brown powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-ethanol-diethyl ether

NMR (30)

Form: 2HCl

## Example 472



$R^4$ : H M.p. 231-235°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

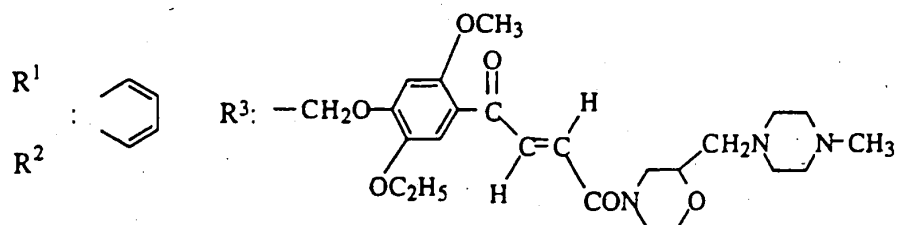
Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-ethanol-diethyl ether

Form: 2HCl

391

Table 192

## Example 473



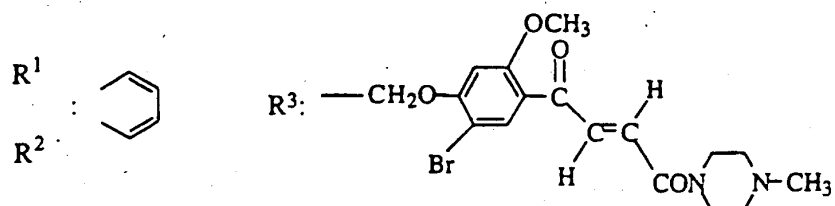
$R^4$ : H M.p. 216-221°C (decomp.)

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-ethanol-diethyl ether

NMR (31) Form: 2HCl

## Example 474

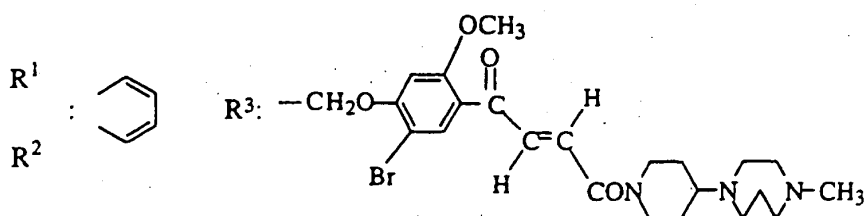


$R^4$ : H M.p. 175-205°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-ethanol-diethyl ether

NMR (32) Form: Methanesulfonate

## Example 475



$R^4$ : H M.p. 185-230°C (decomp.) Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

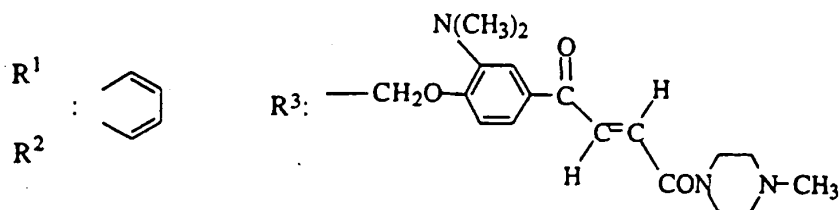
Solvent for recrystallization: Dichloromethane-ethanol-diethyl ether

NMR (33) Form: 2HCl

392

Table 193

## Example 476



$R^4$ : H M.p. 160-170°C

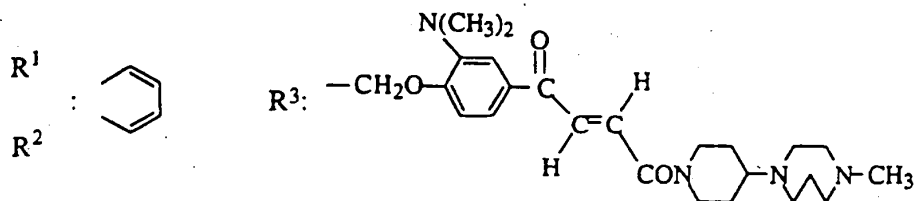
Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water

NMR (34)

Form: Dimethanesulfonate

## Example 477

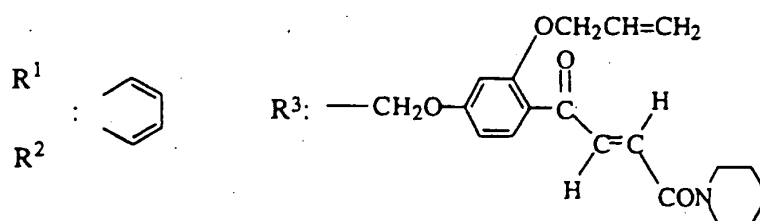


$R^4$ : H M.p. 172-178°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water NMR (35) Form: 3HCl

## Example 478



$R^4$ : H M.p. 185.2-186.0°C

Crystalline form: White powder

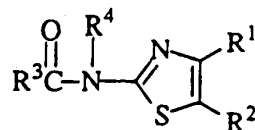
Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol

Form: Free

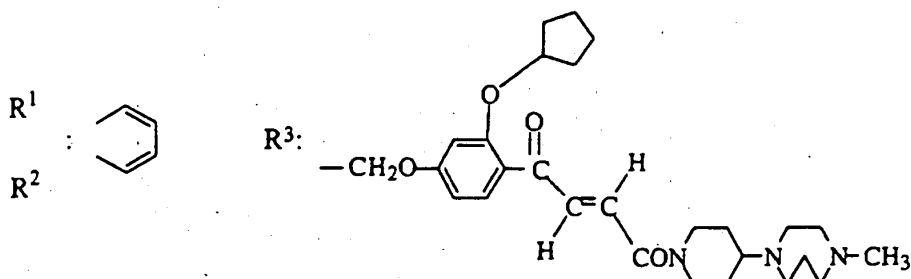
393

Using the suitable starting compounds, the compounds as listed in Table 194 are obtained in the same manner as in Example 8.

Table 194



## Example 479



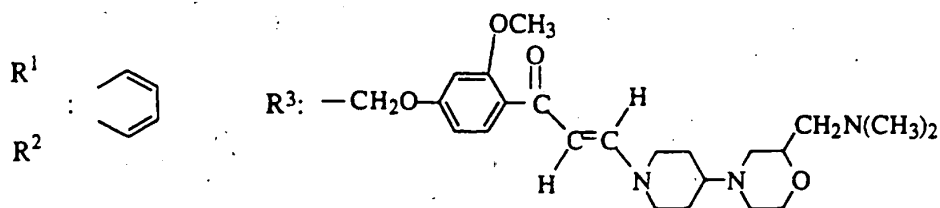
R<sup>4</sup>: H M.p. 171.5-173.0°C

Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-diethyl ether-dichloromethane

Form: 2HCl

## Example 480



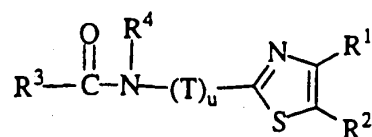
R<sup>4</sup>: H M.p. 111.5-114.5°C Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-isopropyl alcohol Form: 2HCl

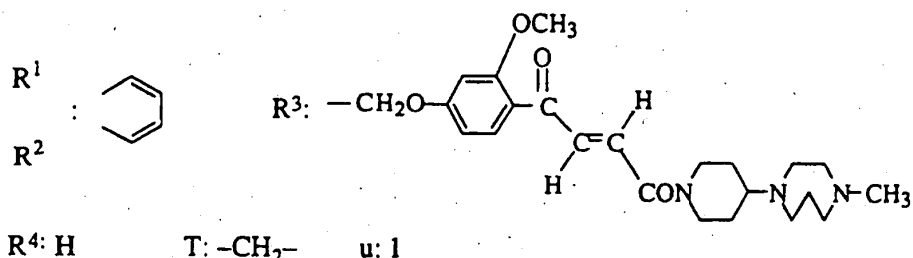


Using the suitable starting compounds, the compound as listed in Table 195 are obtained in the same manner as in Example 3 or 4.

Table 195



## Example 481



M.p. 147-150°C Crystalline form: Pale yellow powder

Solvent for recrystallization: Ethanol-water-diethyl ether-isopropyl alcohol

Form: 2HCl

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR spectrum (NMR (1) to NMR (49)) as described in Tables 150-195 are as follows:

NMR (1) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.65-2.8 (4H, m), 3.06 (9H, s), 3.87 (3H, s), 4.15-4.65 (4H, m), 5.07 (2H, s), 6.70 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, J=8.5Hz), 6.81 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 7.29 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.48 (1H, br), 7.62 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.65 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.77 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 7.93 (1H, br), 11.0 (1H, br), 12.7 (1H, br)

5 NMR (2) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.65 (2H, br), 2.05-2.40 (4H, m), 2.55-2.9 (4H, m), 3.13 (6H, s), 3.25-4.8 (15H, m), 5.10 (2H, s), 6.70 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, J=9Hz),

395

6.81 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 7.26 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.55 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.64 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.7-7.8 (1H, m), 7.88 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 8.31 (1H, br), 11.2-12.2 (2H, m)

NMR (3) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.61 (3H, d, J=6.5Hz), 1.6 (2H, br), 2.12 (4H, br), 2.5-2.85 (4H, m), 2.95-4.05 (13H, m), 4.1-4.3 (1H, m), 4.4-4.7 (1H, m), 5.35 (1H, q, J=6.5Hz), 6.63 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, 9Hz), 6.77 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 7.15-7.7 (4H, m), 7.69 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 7.76 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 11.1-13.1 (3H, m)

NMR (4) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.61 (3H, d, J=6.5Hz), 2.73 (3H, d, J=4Hz), 2.8-4.1 (6H, m), 3.85 (3H, s), 4.1-4.35 (1H, m), 4.35-4.6 (1H, m), 5.38 (1H, q, J=6.5Hz), 6.63 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, 9Hz), 6.78 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 7.26 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.25-7.5 (2H, m), 7.59 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.63 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 7.76 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.97 (1H, d, J=7Hz), 11.40 (1H, br), 12.9 (1H, br)

NMR (5) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.61 (3H, d, J=6.5Hz), 2.35-4.4 (23H, m), 5.37 (1H, q, J=6.5Hz), 6.63 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, J=8.5Hz), 6.78 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 7.1-7.7 (5H, m), 7.76 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7Hz), 11.85 (2H, br) 12.90 (1H, br)

NMR (6) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.42 (6H, s), 2.82 (3H, d, J=4Hz), 2.9-3.25 (3H, m), 3.3-3.6 (3H, m), 4.15-4.6 (6H, m), 5.03 (2H, s), 6.68 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 7.23 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 7.31 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.15-7.5 (2H, m), 7.61 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.76 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7Hz), 9.85 (1H, br)

NMR (7) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.64 (2H, br), 2.17 (4H, br), 2.55-2.7 (4H, m), 2.95-4.0 (10H, m), 4.05-4.7 (6H, m), 5.03 (2H, s), 6.68 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 7.22 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 7.25-7.6 (4H, m), 7.76 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 11.1-12.2 (2H, m), 12.65 (1H, br)

NMR (8) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.55-2.7 (1H, m), 2.79 (3H, s), 2.85-4.5 (20H,

396

m), 5.04 (2H, s), 6.68 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.15-7.7 (5H, m), 7.76 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz),  
7.98 (1H, d, J=7Hz), 11.4 -13.1 (2H, m)

NMR (9) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.35 (3H, d, J=5.5Hz), 1.64 (2H, br), 2.14 (2H,  
br), 2.55-2.95 (4H, m), 2.95-4.0 (9H, m), 6.0 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 7.22 (1H, d, J=9Hz),  
5 7.29 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 4.05-4.7 (6H, m), 5.03 (2H, s), 7.4-7.5 (1H, m), 7.53 (1H, d,  
J=15.5Hz), 7.76 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7Hz), 11.5-13.0 (2H, m)

NMR (10) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.16 (3H, s), 2.37 (3H, s), 2.77 (3H, d,  
J=4.2Hz), 2.83-3.19 (3H, m), 3.29-3.58 (3H, m), 3.88 (3H, s), 4.12-4.57 (2H, m),  
4.65 (2H, s), 6.95 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 7.19-7.37 (2H, m), 7.37-7.50 (1H, m), 7.50-  
10 7.66 (2H, m), 7.75 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.99 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 9.82 (1H, brs), 11.95-  
12.71 (1H, m)

NMR (11) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 2.17 (2H, br), 2.34 (3H, s), 2.82 (3H, s), 3.05  
(4H, br), 3.4 (2H, br), 4.05-4.4 (5H, m), 4.49 (1H, br), 5.05 (2H, s), 6.83 (1H, d,  
J=9Hz), 7.28 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.29 (1H, d, J=9Hz), 7.25-7.35 (1H, m), 7.35-7.5  
15 (1H, m), 7.52 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.76 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7Hz), 9.81  
(1H, br), 12.6 (1H, br)

NMR (12) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 1.61 (2H, br), 2.15 (4H, br), 2.55-2.9 (4H, m),  
3.0-4.3 (11H, m), 4.4-4.7 (1H, m), 5.09 (2H, s), 7.12 (1H, dd, J=2.5Hz, J=8.5Hz),  
7.25-7.41 (4H, m), 7.4-7.5 (1H, m), 7.69 (1H, d, J=8.5Hz), 7.77 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz),  
20 7.99 (1H, d, J=7Hz), 11.0-12.2 (2H, m)

NMR (13) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm: 0.91 (3H, t, J=7.2Hz), 1.20-1.86 (6H, m),  
1.93-2.39 (4H, m), 2.58-2.89 (4H, m), 2.76 (3H, s), 2.95-3.98 (9H, m), 3.64 (3H, s),  
4.07-4.31 (1H, m), 4.41-4.69 (1H, m), 5.09 (2H, s), 6.83 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.20-  
7.64 (5H, m), 7.76 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.97 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 11.11-12.29 (2H, m),

397

12.72 (1H, brs)

NMR (14) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm; 2.0-2.2 (2H, m), 2.34 (3H, s), 2.68 (2H, t,  $J=7$ Hz), 2.81 (3H, d,  $J=3$ Hz), 2.9-3.2 (2H, m), 3.3-3.65 (4H, m), 3.79 (3H, s), 4.15 (2H, t,  $J=6$ Hz), 4.2-4.4 (1H, m), 4.4-4.6 (1H, m), 6.55-6.7 (2H, m), 7.2-7.35 (1H, m),  
5 7.27 (1H, d,  $J=15$ Hz), 7.35-7.5 (1H, m), 7.63 (1H, d,  $J=9.5$ Hz), 7.63 (1H, d,  $J=15$ Hz), 7.72 (1H, d,  $J=7.5$ Hz), 7.9-8.0 (1H, m), 9.79 (1H, br), 12.38 (1H, br)

NMR (15) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm; 1.64 (2H, br), 2.0-2.4 (6H, m), 2.55-2.9 (6H, m), 2.95-4.0 (3H, m), 4.0-4.35 (3H, m), 4.4-4.7 (1H, m), 6.55-6.75 (2H, m), 7.0 (1H, br), 7.2-7.35 (2H, m), 7.35-7.45 (1H, m), 7.5-7.65 (2H, m), 7.65-7.75 (1H, m),  
10 7.9-8.0 (1H, m), 11.2-12.6 (2H, m)

NMR (16) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm; 2.0-2.2 (2H, m), 2.69 (2H, t,  $J=7$ Hz), 2.80 (3H, s), 2.9-4.4 (22H, m), 6.4-6.75 (2H, m), 7.15-7.5 (3H, m), 7.5-7.8 (3H, m), 7.96 (1H, d,  $J=7$ Hz), 11.95 (1H, br), 12.41 (1H, br)

NMR (17) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm; 1.45-1.9 (2H, m), 2.0-2.35 (4H, m), 2.55-2.95 (6H, m), 2.95-3.25 (1H, m), 3.3-3.95 (12H, m), 4.0-4.35 (3H, m), 4.4-4.65 (1H, m),  
15 6.4-6.75 (2H, m), 7.25 (1H, d,  $J=15$ Hz), 7.2-7.5 (2H, m), 7.55 (1H, d,  $J=15$ Hz), 7.61 (1H, d,  $J=9.5$ Hz), 7.71 (1H, d,  $J=7.5$ Hz), 7.96 (1H, d,  $J=7$ Hz), 11.9-12.8 (2H, m)

NMR (18) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm; 1.16 (3H, t,  $J=7.5$ Hz), 1.9-2.2 (2H, m), 2.48 (3H, s), 2.62 (2H, q,  $J=7.5$ Hz), 2.82 (3H, d,  $J=4.5$ Hz), 3.0-3.8 (5H, m), 3.84 (3H, s),  
20 3.9-4.3 (3H, m), 5.16 (2H, s), 6.71 (1H, s), 7.22 (1H, d,  $J=15$ Hz), 7.25-7.35 (1H, m), 7.4-7.5 (1H, m), 7.51 (1H, s), 7.66 (1H, dd,  $J=5.5$ Hz,  $J=15$ Hz), 7.77 (1H, d,  $J=7.5$ Hz), 7.98 (1H, d,  $J=7$ Hz), 9.55 (1H, br), 11.7 (1H, br)

NMR (19) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm; 1.15 (3H, t,  $J=7.5$ Hz), 1.35-1.7 (2H, m), 1.9-

2.1 (2H, m), 2.36 (3H, s), 2.5-2.7 (3H, m), 2.73 (3H, s), 2.75 (3H, s), 3.0-3.2 (1H, m),  
3.3-3.55 (1H, m), 3.84 (3H, s), 4.05-4.25 (1H, m), 4.45-4.65 (1H, m), 5.16 (2H, s),  
6.71 (1H, s), 7.26 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.25-7.35 (1H, m), 7.4-7.5 (1H, m), 7.50 (1H, s),  
7.58 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.77 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7Hz), 9.58 (1H, br)

5 NMR (20) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm; 0.90 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.57 (2H, tq, J=7.5Hz,  
J=8Hz), 2.35 (3H, s), 2.57 (2H, t, J=8Hz), 2.81 (3H, d, J=3.5Hz), 2.9-3.25 (3H, m),  
3.3-3.7 (3H, m), 3.83 (3H, s), 4.15-4.4 (1H, m), 4.4-4.65 (1H, m), 5.16 (2H, s), 6.70  
(1H, s), 7.28 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.25-7.4 (1H, m), 7.4-7.5 (1H, m), 7.49 (1H, s), 7.66  
(1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.77 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 9.85 (1H, br), 12.6  
10 (1H, br)

NMR (21) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm; 0.89 (3H, t, 7.5Hz), 1.4-1.9 (4H, m), 2.0-2.4  
(4H, m), 2.5-2.85 (6H, m), 3.0-4.05 (10H, m), 3.84 (3H, s), 4.05-4.3 (1H, m), 4.45-  
4.7 (1H, m), 5.17 (2H, s), 6.71 (1H, s), 7.15-7.35 (2H, m), 7.35-7.5 (1H, m), 7.48  
(1H, s), 7.58 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.77 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7Hz), 11.1-13.2  
15 (2H, m)

NMR (22) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm; 0.90 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.4-1.8 (4H, m), 1.95 -  
2.25 (2H, m), 2.57 (2H, t, J=8Hz), 2.6-2.9 (1H, m), 2.81 (3H, s), 2.95-4.0 (10H, m),  
3.84 (3H, s), 4.05-4.3 (1H, m), 4.4-4.65 (1H, m), 5.16 (2H, s), 6.70 (1H, s), 7.26 (1H,  
d, J=15Hz), 7.25-7.35 (1H, m), 7.35-7.5 (1H, m), 7.48 (1H, s), 7.58 (1H, d, J=15Hz),  
20 7.77 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7Hz), 11.4-13.0 (3H, m)

NMR (23) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm; 0.90 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 1.57 (2H, tq, J=7.5Hz,  
J=8Hz), 2.57 (2H, t, J=8Hz), 2.65-4.4 (17H, m), 2.79 (3H, s), 3.84 (3H, s), 5.18  
(2H, s), 6.71 (1H, s), 7.15-7.5 (3H, m), 7.48 (1H, s), 7.5-7.8 (2H, m), 7.98 (1H, d,

J=7Hz), 11.0-13.0 (3H, m)

NMR (24) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm; 1.11 (3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 2.53-4.17 (16H, m),

2.59 (2H, q, J=7.4Hz), 2.79 (3H, s), 3.84 (3H, s), 4.17-4.40 (1H, m), 5.20 (2H, s),

6.73 (1H, s), 7.18-7.38 (2H, m), 7.38-7.54 (2H, m), 7.54-7.74 (1H, m), 7.74-7.81

5 (1H, m), 7.92-8.05 (1H, m), 11.32-13.11 (3H, m)

NMR (25) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm; 2.35 (3H, s), 2.80 (3H, d, J=3.5Hz), 2.85-3.6

(6H, m), 3.85 (3H, s), 4.04 (2H, br), 4.2-4.6 (2H, m), 5.0-5.25 (4H, m), 5.81-6.1 (1H,

m), 6.74 (1H, s), 7.28 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.25-7.55 (2H, m), 7.48(1H, s), 7.65 (1H, d,

J=15Hz), 7.77 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7Hz), 9.99 (1H, br), 12.6 (1H, br)

10 NMR (26) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm; 1.65 (2H, br), 2.0-2.4 (4H, m), 2.55-2.95

(4H, m), 3.0-3.25 (1H, m), 3.25-4.05 (14H, m), 4.05-4.3 (1H, m), 4.45-4.7 (1H, m),

4.95-5.3 (4H, m), 5.85-6.1 (1H, m), 6.75 (1H, s), 7.15-7.7 (5H, m), 7.77 (1H, d,

J=8Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 11.1-13.0 (3H, m)

NMR (27) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm; 1.4-1.85 (2H, m), 1.95-2.3 (2H, m), 2.55-2.95

15 (4H, m), 2.95-3.2 (1H, m), 3.2-3.95 (11H, m), 5.86 (3H, s), 4.1-4.3 (1H, m), 4.45-4.7

(1H, m), 4.95-5.25 (4H, m), 5.86-6.1 (1H, m), 6.74 (1H, s), 7.26 (1H, d, J=15Hz),

7.25-7.55 (3H, m), 7.56 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.77 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 7.98 (1H, d,

J=7Hz), 11.3-13.2 (3H, m)

NMR (28) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm; 2.55-4.45 (25H, m), 4.9-5.3 (4H, m), 5.85-

20 6.1 (1H, m), 6.75 (1H, s), 7.15-7.85 (6H, m), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7Hz), 11.0-13.3 (3H, m)

NMR (29) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm; 1.32 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 2.33 (3H, s), 2.80 (3H,s),

2.9-3.2 (3H, m), 3.3-3.5 (3H, m), 3.81 (3H, s), 4.03 (2H, q, J=7Hz), 4.2-4.65 (2H,

m), 5.15 (2H, s), 6.83 (1H, s), 7.2-7.4 (3H, m), 7.44 (1H, t, J=8Hz), 7.69 (1H, d,

J=15Hz), 7.77 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 9.83 (1H, br), 12.60 (1H, br)

400

NMR (30) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm; 1.32 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 1.4-1.9 (2H, m), 2.05-2.4 (4H, m), 2.6-3.9 (4H, m), 3.05-3.95 (13H, m), 4.03 (2H, q, J=7Hz), 4.1-4.3 (1H, m), 4.5-4.7 (1H, m), 5.17 (2H, s), 6.83 (1H, s), 7.2-7.4 (3H, m), 7.44 (1H, t, J=8Hz), 7.60 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 7.76 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 11.25-12.2 (2H, m)

NMR (31) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm; 1.32 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 2.55-4.5 (19H, m), 2.80 (3H, s), 3.82 (3H, s), 5.17 (2H, s), 6.84 (1H, s), 7.2-7.4 (3H, m), 7.44 (1H, t, J=8Hz), 7.64 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 7.76 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 11.5-12.5 (2H, m)

NMR (32) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm; 2.32 (3H, s), 2.81 (3H, s), 3.4-3.7 (4H, m), 3.25-3.6 (2H, m), 3.86 (3H, s), 4.15-4.65 (2H, m), 5.26 (2H, s), 6.89 (1H, s), 7.32 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.32 (1H, t, J=7.5Hz), 7.45 (1H, t, J=8Hz), 7.61 (1H, d, J=15Hz), 7.77 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.83 (1H, s), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 9.78 (1H, br), 12.65 (1H, br)

NMR (33) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm; 1.4-1.85 (2H, m), 2.1-2.4 (4H, m), 2.6-3.9 (4H, m), 3.05-4.5 (14H, m), 4.5-4.65 (1H, m), 5.27 (2H, s), 6.89 (1H, s), 7.2-7.4 (2H, m), 7.4-7.6 (2H, m), 7.77 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.81 (1H, s), 7.98 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 11.1-12.1 (2H, m)

NMR (34) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm; 2.35(s, 6H), 2.82 (s, 3H), 2.92-3.27 (m, 9H), 3.30-3.59 (m, 3H), 4.18 (br, 1H), 4.19-4.34 (m, 1H), 4.47-4.65 (m, 1H), 5.24 (s, 2H), 7.33 (t, J=7.6Hz, 2H), 7.44 (d, J=7.3Hz, 1H), 7.46 (d, J=15.1Hz, 1H), 7.78 (d, J=8.0Hz, 1H), 7.84 (d, J=15.1Hz, 1H), 7.96-8.15 (m, 3H), 9.82 (br, 1H), 12.66 (br, 1H)

NMR (35) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm; 1.42-1.88 (m, 2H), 1.93-2.39(m, 4H), 2.59-

401

2.85 (m, 4H), 3.13 (s, 6H), 3.26-3.96 (m, 10H), 4.05-4.28 (m, 1H), 4.51-4.68 (m, 1H), 5.26 (s, 2H), 7.29-7.35 (m, 2H), 7.42-7.48 (m, 2H), 7.74-7.80 (m, 2H), 7.96-8.04 (m, 2H), 8.19 (br, 1H), 11.35-12.13 (m, 2H)

NMR (36) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm; 4.61-4.78 (2H, m), 5.05 (2H, s), 5.18-5.50 (2H, m), 5.91-6.17 (1H, m), 6.46 (1H, d,  $J=15.5$ Hz), 6.62-6.78 (1H, m), 6.78-6.88 (1H, m), 7.28-7.39 (1H, m), 7.39-7.52 (1H, m), 7.54-7.81 (2H, m), 7.71 (1H, d,  $J=15.5$ Hz), 7.92-8.05 (1H, m), 12.72 (2H, brs)

NMR (37) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm; 4.97 (2H, s), 6.40-6.58 (2H, m), 6.91 (1H, dd,  $J=2.4$ Hz,  $J=8.8$ Hz), 7.00-7.22 (3H, m), 7.22-7.51 (4H, m), 7.61-7.89 (3H, m), 7.89-8.04 (1H, m), 12.75 (2H, brs)

NMR (38) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm; 1.12 (3H, t,  $J=7.4$ Hz), 2.60 (2H, q,  $J=7.4$ Hz), 3.85 (3H, s), 5.15 (2H, s), 6.46 (1H, d,  $J=15.5$ Hz), 6.71 (1H, s), 7.26-7.39 (1H, m), 7.39-7.50 (1H, m), 7.51 (1H, s), 7.68 (1H, d,  $J=15.5$ Hz), 7.72-7.81 (1H, m), 7.91-8.03 (1H, m), 12.75 (2H, brs)

NMR (39) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm; 2.19 (3H, s), 3.64 (3H, s), 5.07 (2H, s), 6.54 (1H, d,  $J=15.6$ Hz), 6.85 (1H, d,  $J=8.7$ Hz), 7.25-7.40 (1H, m), 7.40-7.51 (1H, m), 7.54 (1H, d,  $J=8.8$ Hz), 7.68 (1H, d,  $J=15.6$ Hz), 7.76 (1H, d,  $J=7.5$ Hz), 7.98 (1H, d,  $J=7.5$ Hz), 12.41-13.16 (2H, m)

NMR (40) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm; 2.16 (3H, s), 3.88 (3H, s), 4.64 (2H, s), 6.52 (1H, d,  $J=15.6$ Hz), 6.95 (1H, d,  $J=8.8$ Hz), 7.21-7.38 (1H, m), 7.38-7.51 (1H, m), 7.55-7.80 (3H, m), 7.98 (1H, d,  $J=7.1$ Hz)

NMR (41) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm; 0.91 (3H, t,  $J=7.3$ Hz), 1.20-1.65 (4H, m), 2.54-2.78 (2H, m), 3.63 (3H, s), 5.07 (2H, s), 6.58 (1H, d,  $J=15.6$ Hz), 6.84 (1H, d,  $J=8.7$ Hz), 7.21-7.39 (1H, m), 7.39-7.51 (1H, m), 7.55 (1H, d,  $J=8.7$ Hz), 7.67 (1H, d,



J=15.6Hz), 7.76 (1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.97 (1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 12.05-13.51 (2H, m)

NMR (42) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm; 2.41 (3H, s), 5.10 (2H, s), 6.56 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 6.90 (1H, dd, J=8.8Hz, J=2.2Hz), 6.98 (1H, d, J=2.2Hz), 7.32 (1H, t, J=7.2Hz), 7.45 (1H, t, J=7.2Hz), 7.65-7.85 (2H, m), 7.99 (1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 8.05  
5 (1H, d, J=8.8Hz), 12.06-13.45 (2H, m)

NMR (43) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm; 1.17 (3H, t, J=7.5Hz), 2.70 (2H, q, J=7.5Hz), 3.65 (3H, s), 5.09 (2H, s), 6.57 (1H, d, J=15.6Hz), 6.85 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.30 (1H, dt, J=1.2Hz, J=7.1Hz), 7.43 (1H, dt, J=1.2Hz, J=7.1Hz), 7.56 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.67 (1H, d, J=15.6Hz), 7.76 (1H, d, J=7.1Hz), 7.97 (1H, d, J=7.1Hz), 12.51-13.12  
10 (2H, m)

NMR (44) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm; 3.79 (3H, s), 3.83 (3H, s), 5.12 (2H, s), 6.51 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 6.84 (1H, s), 7.15-7.54 (3H, m with 1H s at 7.26), 7.61-7.86 (2H, m with 1H, d at 7.76 J=15.5Hz), 7.99 (1H, d, J=7.1Hz), 12.20-13.25 (2H, m)

NMR (45) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm; 2.19 (3H, s), 3.85 (3H, s), 5.14 (2H, s), 6.49  
15 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 6.70 (1H, s), 7.20-7.56 (3H, m, with 1H s at 7.52), 7.60-7.82 (2H, m, with 1H d at 7.71 J=15.5Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7.0Hz), 12.41-13.17(2H, m)

NMR (46) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm; 1.19 (6H, d, J=6.9Hz), 3.10-3.42 (1H, m), 3.86 (3H, s), 5.16 (2H, s), 6.50 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 6.70 (1H, s), 7.21-7.60 (3H, m with 1H s at 7.55), 7.65-7.82 (2H, m with 1H d at 7.73 J=15.5Hz), 7.89-8.08 (1H, m),  
20 m), 12.42-13.12 (2H, m)

NMR (47) (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δppm; 0.68-0.92 (3H, m), 1.08-1.64 (8H, m), 2.38-2.68 (2H, m), 3.85 (3H, s), 5.14 (2H, s), 6.49 (1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 6.71 (1H, s), 7.20-7.57 (3H, m), 7.62-7.85 (2H, m with 1H d at 7.72 J=15.5Hz), 7.88-8.05 (1H, m), 12.45-13.12 (2H, m)

NMR (48) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm; 3.17 (s, 6H), 5.28 (s, 2H), 6.71 (d,  $J=15.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.29-7.49 (m, 3H), 7.78 (d,  $J=8.0$ Hz, 1H), 7.91-8.06 (m, 2H), 8.09 (d,  $J=8.4$ Hz, 1H), 8.25 (s, 1H)

NMR (49) (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$ ppm; 3.87 (s, 3H), 4.75 (d,  $J=5$ Hz, 2H), 4.77 (s, 2H), 6.50 (d,  $J=15.5$ Hz, 1H), 6.72 (dd,  $J=2.2$ Hz  $J=8.6$ Hz, 1H), 6.78 (d,  $J=2.2$ Hz, 1H), 7.33-7.57 (m, 2H), 7.66 (d,  $J=8.6$ Hz, 1H), 7.69 (d,  $J=15.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.94 (d,  $J=7.4$ Hz, 1H), 8.05 (d,  $J=6.9$ Hz, 1H), 9.18 (t,  $J=5.1$ Hz, 1H), 12.99 (br, 1H)

#### PHARMACOLOGICAL EXPERIMENTS

##### (1) Protein kinase C (PKC) inhibitory activity

##### 10 Method for determining PKC activity:

The purification of PKC using rat's brain soluble fractions was carried out by a method of Kikkawa et al. (cf. Ushio Kikkawa, Yoshimi Takai, Ryoji Minakuchi, Sinichi Inohara and Yasutomi Nishizuka: The Journal of Biological Chemistry, vol. 257, No. 22, pp. 13341-13348 (1982)). PKC activity was

15 determined by the transfer of radio activity from the [ $\gamma$ - $^{32}$ P] adenosine triphosphate (ATP) to H1 histone derived from calf thymus in the presence of 20 mM Tris-HCl buffer (pH 7.5), H1 histone derived from calf thymus (200  $\mu$ g/ml), 10  $\mu$ M [ $\gamma$ - $^{32}$ P]ATP, 5 mM magnesium acetate, 8  $\mu$ g/ml phosphatidyl serine, 2  $\mu$ g/ml diacylglycerol and 0.3 mM  $Ca^{2+}$ . The test compound was dissolved in

20 dimethylformamide, and the test compound solution was added to the assay system so that the final concentration thereof was adjusted to 0.8 %. The reaction mixture was incubated at 30°C for 30 minutes, and the reaction was quenched with 25 % trichloroacetic acid. The acid-insoluble protein was collected on a nitrocellulose membrane by suction filtration. The radio activity

of  $^{32}\text{P}$  was determined by scintillation counter. The PKC inhibitory activity of the test compounds was expressed by  $\text{IC}_{50}$ , which is a concentration of the test compound to be required to reduce the PKC activity by 50 %. The results are shown in Table 196.

5           Results:

Table 196

Test compound	PKC inhibitory activity ( $\text{IC}_{50}$ , $\mu\text{M}$ )
The compound of Example 71	0.8
The compound of Example 88	0.1
The compound of Example 89	0.3
The compound of Example 100	0.3
The compound of Example 160	0.6
The compound of Example 182	0.08
The compound of Example 192	0.8
The compound of Example 197	0.3

(2)   Mouse collagen arthritis

Bovine II-type collagen (provided by Collagen Gijyutsu Kensyukai) (0.1  
10 %) was emulsified with Complete Fleund's adjuvant (CFA) (50 %)  
(manufactured by DIFCO, Ltd.), and the emulsion thus obtained was injected  
intracutaneously to mice at the tail (primary sensitization). Three weeks later,  
bovine II-type collagen (0.1 %) was injected intraperitoneally again to the mice

(secondary sensitization). Three weeks later, the swelling of limbs of the mice was observed, and evaluated by four-degree as 0 to 3 each limb. The degree (0 to 3) each limb was added, and the results were used a score of the arthritis. That is, the maximum degree is 12 (degree 3 X 4 limb). The test compound was administered orally to the mice once a day, which started after two weeks from the primary sensitization.

In the mice treated with the compound of Example 182 at a dose of 30 to 50 mg/kg, the score of arthritis was significantly reduced in comparison with the control mice.

10 In the mice treated with the compounds of Example 160, 192 or 197 at a dose of 50 mg/kg, the score of arthritis was significantly reduced in comparison with the control mice.

(3) Mouse cGVHD (chronic Graft-versus-host disease model)

Female mice (DBA/2NCrj) were subjected to an operation of cervical vertebra dislocation, and the spleen was taken out to give the spleen cells preparation. The preparation were adjusted to  $37.5 \times 10^7$  cells/ml, and administered to the BDF1 female mice on the tail vein at a dose of 200  $\mu$ l per a mouse. Two weeks later, the blood was collected in the absence of heparin, and anti-DNA antibody therein was determined by ELISA.

20 The compound of Example 182 was administered orally to the mice at a dose of 30 to 50 mg/kg once a day for two weeks, and the effect of the test compound on cGVHD was determined.

The amount of anti-DNA antibody in the blood was determined with OD<sub>405</sub>. The amounts of anti-DNA antibody were  $0.348 \pm 0.111$  (mean  $\pm$  s.e.) in

the control group,  $0.255 \pm 0.062$  (mean  $\pm$  s.e.) in the group treated with the compound of Example 182 at a dose of 30 mg/kg, and  $0.094 \pm 0.026$  (mean  $\pm$  s.e.) in the group treated with the compound of Example 182 at a dose of 50 mg/kg. From the results, it was proved that the compound of Example 182 reduced the anti-DNA antibody in the blood dose-dependently, compared with the control group.

Further, the compound of Example 100 was also administered orally to the mice at 30 mg/kg once a day for two weeks, and the effect of the compound on cGVHD was also determined.

The amount of anti-DNA antibody in the blood was determined with OD<sub>405</sub>. The amounts of anti-DNA antibody were  $0.258 \pm 0.084$  (mean  $\pm$  s.e.) in the control group, and  $0.177 \pm 0.061$  (mean  $\pm$  s.e.) in the group treated with the compound of Example 100 at a dose of 30 mg/kg. From the results, it was proved that the compound of Example 100 reduced the anti-DNA antibody in the blood, compared with the control group.

(4) Rat kidney ischemic re-perfusion model

The right kidney of a SD male rat was taken out, and the left kidney artery was clumped, and then, re-perfused to give a kidney ischemic re-perfusion model. The effect of the compounds of Examples 71, 89 and 100 on the kidney ischemic re-perfusion model was estimated.

The compound of Example 71 was administered intravenously to the rat at a dose of 3 mg/kg 5 minutes before the ischemic. Twenty-four hours later, the blood was collected from the tail vein, and the amounts of creatine and urea nitrogen were determined. The amount of creatine in the blood was  $2.19 \pm 0.21$  (mean  $\pm$  s.e.) in the control group;  $1.4 \pm 0.11$  (mean  $\pm$  s.e.) in the group treated with

the compound of Example 71, and the amount of urea nitrogen in the blood was  $78.8 \pm 5.6$  (mean  $\pm$  s.e.) in the control group, and  $54.1 \pm 5.0$  (mean  $\pm$  s.e.) in the group treated with the compound of Example 71. That is, the compound of Example 71 significantly reduced the amounts of both of creatine and urea nitrogen, compared with the control group.

The compound of Example 89 was administered intravenously to the rat at a dose of 3 mg/kg 5 minutes before the ischemic and the re-perfusion. Forty-eight hours later, the blood was collected from the tail vein, and the amounts of creatine and urea nitrogen were determined. The amount of creatine in the blood was  $4.31 \pm 0.53$  (mean  $\pm$  s.e.) in the control group;  $2.34 \pm 0.46$  (mean  $\pm$  s.e.) in the group treated with the compound of Example 89, and the amount of urea nitrogen in the blood was  $155.1 \pm 15.4$  (mean  $\pm$  s.e.) in the control group, and  $99.1 \pm 16.0$  (mean  $\pm$  s.e.) in the group treated with the compound of Example 89. That is, the compound of Example 89 significantly reduced the amounts of both of creatine and urea nitrogen, compared with the control group.

The compound of Example 100 was administered orally to the rat at a dose of 30 mg/kg one hour before the ischemic. Forty-eight hours later, the blood was collected from the tail vein, and the amounts of creatine and urea nitrogen were determined. The amount of creatine in the blood was  $2.48 \pm 0.59$  (mean  $\pm$  s.e.) in the control group;  $1.53 \pm 0.20$  (mean  $\pm$  s.e.) in the group treated with the compound of Example 100, and the amount of urea nitrogen in the blood was  $91.3 \pm 20.1$  (mean  $\pm$  s.e.) in the control group, and  $63.1 \pm 10.3$  (mean  $\pm$  s.e.) in the group treated with the compound of Example 100. Thus, it is proved that the compound of Example 100 reduced the amounts of both of creatine and urea nitrogen, compared with the control group.

(5) Phorbol ester (TPA)-induced mouse auricle edema, acanthosis model

A 200 µg/ml phorbol ester (TPA) (10 µl) was applied to the one side to the ear of a female mouse (ICR). Twenty-four hours later, the thickness of the auricle of the mouse was determined with using a dialthickness gage, and the increase in the thickness of auricle was calculated. A test compound was dissolved in acetone, and the solution of a test compound was applied to the both sides of the ear 30 minutes before the application of TPA.

The compound of Example 88 was applied to the ear at a dose of 20 µl of 0.3 % or 1 % solution. The increase in the thickness of auricle in the control group is  $215 \pm 40$  µm (mean $\pm$ s.e.) after 24 hours, while  $87 \pm 53$  µm (mean $\pm$ s.e.) in the group treated with the compound of Example 88 in 0.3 %, and  $67 \pm 23$  µm (mean $\pm$ s.e.) in the group treated with the compound of Example 88 in 1 %. Thus, the compound of Example 88 significantly reduced the increase in auricle thickness, compared with the control group.

(6) Mouse atopic dermatitis model:

1 % Trinitrobenzene (TNCB), (10 µl) was applied to each side of the ear of female mice (Balb/c), once every two days for 24 days. Twenty-four days later, the mice were grouped, and the auricle thickness of the mouse was determined by using a dial thickness gage, and the increase in the thickness of auricle was calculated. The compounds of Examples 88 and 89 were dissolved in acetone in a concentration of 1 %. The compound of Example 182 was dissolved in a mixture of acetone:methanol in a concentration of 0.75 %. Twenty-four days after the beginning of the experiment, the solution of a test compound was applied to each side of the ear 30 minutes before and after the application of TNCB, once a day for two weeks. The compound of Example 88

inhibited the increase in the auricle thickness by 25 to 30 %, and the compounds of Examples 89 and 182 inhibited the increase in the auricle thickness by about 25 %. Thus, it is proved that the compounds of the present invention is useful in the treatment of acanthosis induced by the application of

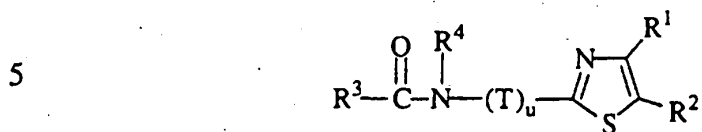
5 TNCB.



410

## CLAIMS

1. A thiazole compound of the formula:

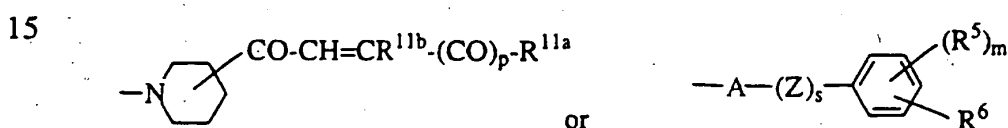


wherein T is a lower alkylene;

u is 0 or 1;

10  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$  are the same or different and are each a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl, or both combine to form a group:  $-(\text{CH}_2)_n-$  (n is 4 or 5) or to form a benzene ring which may optionally be substituted by a member selected from a lower alkyl, a lower alkoxy, a nitro, an amino having optionally a lower alkyl substituent, or a halogen atom;

$\text{R}^3$  is a group of the formula:



wherein  $\text{R}^{11b}$ , p,  $\text{R}^{11a}$  are defined hereinafter; A is a lower alkylene; Z is O or S; s is 0 or 1; m is 1 or 2;

$\text{R}^4$  is a hydrogen atom or a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl;

20  $\text{R}^5$ s are the same or different and are each a member selected from (a) a hydrogen atom, (b) an alkyl having optionally a hydroxy substituent, (c) a halogen atom, (d) a group of the formula:  $-(\text{O})_l-\text{A}-(\text{CO})_t-\text{NR}^7\text{R}^8$  (wherein t is 0 or 1, A is a lower alkylene, l is 0 or 1, and  $\text{R}^7$  and  $\text{R}^8$  are the same or different and

are each a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl, or both combine together with the nitrogen atom to which they bond to form a 5- to 7-membered saturated heterocyclic group which may be intervened with a nitrogen or oxygen atom, said heterocyclic group being optionally substituted by a member selected from

5 a group of the formula:  $-(A)_l-NR^9R^{10}$  (wherein A and l are as defined above, and  $R^9$  and  $R^{10}$  are the same or different and are each a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl, or both combine together with the nitrogen atom to which they bond to form a 5- to 7-membered saturated heterocyclic group which may be intervened with a nitrogen or oxygen atom, said heterocyclic group having optionally a

10 lower alkyl substituent), a lower alkyl having optionally a hydroxy substituent, a hydroxy group, and a lower alkanoyl), (e) a lower alkoxy-carbonyl-lower alkyl, (f) a lower alkanoyloxy-lower alkyl, (g) a lower alkoxy having optionally a halogen substituent, (h) a halogen-substituted lower alkyl, (i) a carboxyl-substituted lower alkyl, (j) a lower alkoxy-carbonyl, (k) a lower alkenyloxy, (l) a

15 phenyl-lower alkoxy, (m) a cycloalkyloxy, (n) a phenyl, (o) a phenyloxy, (p) a hydroxy, (q) a lower alkylthio, (r) a lower alkenyl, or (s) an amino having optionally a lower alkyl substituent;

$R^6$  is a group of the formula:

(1)  $-CO-CH=CR^{11b}-(CO)_p-R^{11a}$  or (2)  $-CO-C\equiv C-COR^{14}$ ;

20 p is 0 or 1;

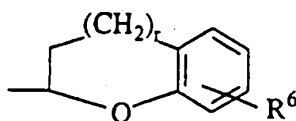
$R^{11b}$  is a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl;

$R^{11a}$  is a hydroxy, a lower alkoxy, or a 5- to 10-membered, monocyclic or dicyclic, saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic group which contains 1 to 4

hetero atoms selected from a nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur atom as a ring member, said heterocyclic group having optionally 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of (i) a lower alkyl, (ii) a group of the formula:  $-(B)_l-NR^{12}R^{13}$  (wherein  $l$  is as defined above,  $B$  is  $-CO-A-$  ( $A$  is as defined above), a carbonyl, or a lower alkylene, and  $R^{12}$  and  $R^{13}$  are the same or different and are each a hydrogen atom, a lower alkyl, or a lower alkyl substituted by an amino having optionally a lower alkyl substituent, or both combine together with the nitrogen atom to which they bond to form a 5- to 12-membered saturated, monocyclic, dicyclic or spirocyclic heterocyclic group which may be intervened with a nitrogen or oxygen atom, said heterocyclic group having optionally a substituent selected from a lower alkyl, a lower alkoxycarbonyl, a lower alkoxy-substituted lower alkyl, an amino having optionally a lower alkyl substituent, and a hydroxy-substituted lower alkyl), (iii) a lower alkoxycarbonyl, (iv) a hydroxy-substituted lower alkyl, (v) a pyridyl being optionally substituted by a lower alkyl having optionally a halogen substituent on the pyridine ring, (vi) a halogen-substituted lower alkyl, (vii) a lower alkoxy, (viii) a cycloalkyl, (ix) a hydroxy, (x) a tetrahydropyranyloxy-substituted lower alkyl, (xi) a pyrimidyl, (xii) a lower alkoxy-substituted lower alkyl, (xiii) a carboxyl, (xiv) a phenyl-lower alkoxy, (xv) a phenyl-lower alkyl having optionally a lower alkylene-dioxy on the phenyl ring, (xvi) a lower alkanoyloxy, and (xvii) a piperidinyl having optionally a lower alkyl substituent on the piperidine ring;

$R^{14}$  is a hydroxy or a lower alkoxy; and

when  $m$  is 1, the groups  $A$  and  $R^5$  may combine to form a group of the formula:



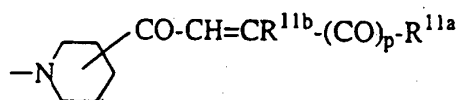
(wherein  $R^6$  is as defined above, and  $r$  is 0, 1 or 2), or when  $m$  is 2, two  $R^5$

- 5 groups may combine to form a lower alkylenedioxy, a lower alkylene, or a group of the formula:  $-(CH_2)_2-CONH-$ , or the groups  $R^5$  and  $R^6$  may combine to form a group of the formula:  $-CO-CH(R^{28})-CH(R^{28'})-W-$  (wherein  $R^{28}$  and  $R^{28'}$  are a hydrogen atom or a carboxyl group, provided that both  $R^{28}$  and  $R^{28'}$  are not simultaneously a carboxyl group, and  $W$  is  $-N(R^{29a})-$  or  $-N^+(R^{29b})_2 \cdot X^-$

- 10 (wherein  $R^{29a}$  is a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl,  $R^{29b}$  is a lower alkyl, and  $X$  is as defined above)), or a salt thereof.

2. The thiazole compound according to claim 1, wherein  $u$  is 0;  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are the same or different and are each a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl; and  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:

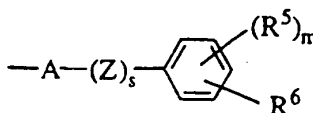
15



(wherein  $R^{11b}$ ,  $R^{11a}$  and  $p$  are as defined in claim 1), or a salt thereof.

3. The thiazole compound according to claim 1, wherein  $u$  is 0;  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are the same or different and are each a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl; and  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:

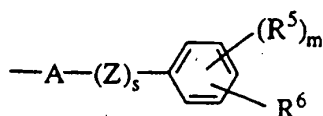
20



(wherein A, R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup> and m are as defined in claim 1, and s is 0), or a salt thereof.

4. The thiazole compound according to claim 1, wherein u is 0; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are the same or different and are each a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl; and R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the formula:

5

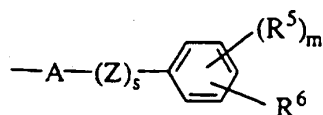


(wherein A, R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup> and m are as defined in claim 1, s is 1, and Z is O), or a salt thereof.

10

5. The thiazole compound according to claim 1, wherein u is 0; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are the same or different and are each a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl; and R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the formula:

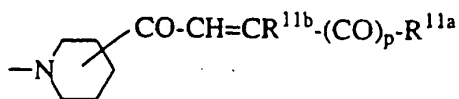
15



(wherein A, R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup> and m are as defined in claim 1, s is 1, and Z is S), or a salt thereof.

6. The thiazole compound according to claim 1, wherein u is 0; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  (n is 4); and R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the

20 formula:

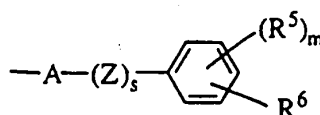


(wherein R<sup>11b</sup>, R<sup>11a</sup> and p are as defined in claim 1), or a salt thereof.

415

7. The thiazole compound according to claim 1, wherein u is 0; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  (n is 4); and R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the formula:

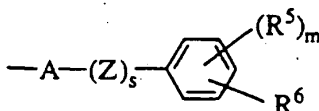
5



(wherein A, R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup> and m are as defined in claim 1, and s is 0), or a salt thereof.

8. The thiazole compound according to claim 1, wherein u is 0; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  (n is 4); and R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the

10 formula:

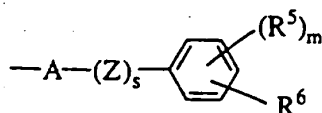


(wherein A, R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup> and m are as defined in claim 1, s is 1, and Z is O), or a salt

15 thereof.

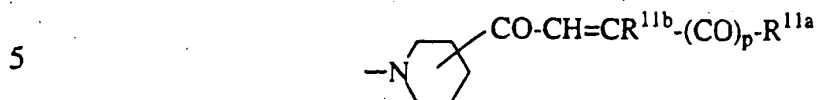
9. The thiazole compound according to claim 1, wherein u is 0; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  (n is 4); and R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the formula:

20



(wherein A, R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup> and m are as defined in claim 1, s is 1, and Z is S), or a salt thereof.

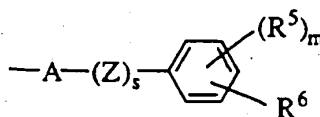
10. The thiazole compound according to claim 1, wherein u is 0; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  (n is 5); and R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the formula:



(wherein R<sup>11b</sup>, R<sup>11a</sup> and p are as defined in claim 1), or a salt thereof.

11. The thiazole compound according to claim 1, wherein u is 0; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  (n is 5); and R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the formula:

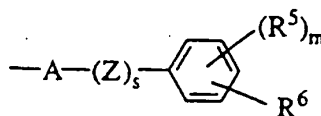
10



(wherein A, R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup> and m are as defined in claim 1, and s is 0), or a salt thereof.

12. The thiazole compound according to claim 1, wherein u is 0; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  (n is 5); and R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the formula:

15



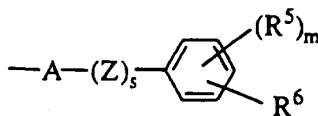
20

(wherein A, R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup> and m are as defined in claim 1, s is 1, and Z is O), or a salt thereof.

13. The thiazole compound according to claim 1, wherein u is 0; R<sup>1</sup>

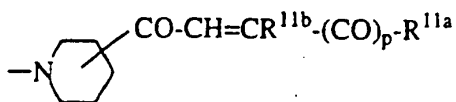
417

and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  (n is 5); and R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the formula:



(wherein A, R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup> and m are as defined in claim 1, s is 1, and Z is S), or a salt thereof.

14. The thiazole compound according to claim 1, wherein u is 0; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally be substituted by a member selected from a lower alkyl, a lower alkoxy, a nitro, an amino having optionally a lower alkyl substituent, or a halogen atom; and R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the formula:

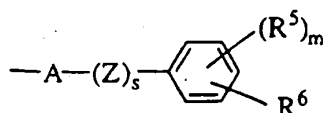


(wherein R<sup>11b</sup>, R<sup>11a</sup> and p are as defined in claim 1), or a salt thereof.

15. The thiazole compound according to claim 1, wherein u is 0; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally be substituted by a member selected from a lower alkyl, a lower alkoxy, a nitro, an amino having optionally a lower alkyl substituent, or a halogen atom; and R<sup>3</sup> is a group of the formula:



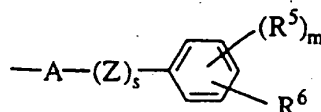
418



(wherein A,  $R^5$ ,  $R^6$  and m are as defined in claim 1, and s is 0), or a salt thereof.

- 5            16. The thiazole compound according to claim 1, wherein u is 0;  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally be substituted by a member selected from a lower alkyl, a lower alkoxy, a nitro, an amino having optionally a lower alkyl substituent, or a halogen atom; and  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:

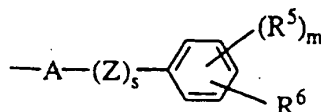
10



(wherein A,  $R^5$ ,  $R^6$  and m are as defined in claim 1, s is 1, and Z is O), or a salt thereof.

- 15            17. The thiazole compound according to claim 1, wherein u is 0;  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally be substituted by a member selected from a lower alkyl, a lower alkoxy, a nitro, an amino having optionally a lower alkyl substituent, or a halogen atom; and  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:

20



(wherein A,  $R^5$ ,  $R^6$  and m are as defined in claim 1, s is 1, and Z is S), or a salt

thereof.

18. The thiazole compound according to claim 4, wherein  $R^6$  is a group of the formula:  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  wherein  $R^{11b}$  and  $p$  are as defined in claim 1, and  $R^{11a}$  is a hydroxy or a lower alkoxy, or a salt thereof.

5 19. The thiazole compound according to claim 4, wherein  $R^6$  is a group of the formula:  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  wherein  $R^{11b}$  is as defined in claim 1,  $p$  is 1, and  $R^{11a}$  is a 5- to 10-membered, monocyclic or dicyclic, saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic group which contains 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from a nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur atom as a ring member, said heterocyclic group  
10 having optionally 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of (i) a lower alkyl, (ii) a group of the formula:  $-(\text{B})_\ell-\text{NR}^{12}\text{R}^{13}$  (wherein  $\ell$  is as defined above,  $\text{B}$  is  $-\text{CO}-\text{A}-$  ( $\text{A}$  is as defined above), a carbonyl, or a lower alkylene, and  $\text{R}^{12}$  and  $\text{R}^{13}$  are the same or different and are each a hydrogen atom, a lower alkyl, or a lower alkyl substituted by an amino having optionally a lower alkyl  
15 substituent, or both combine together with the nitrogen atom to which they bond to form a 5- to 12-membered saturated, monocyclic, dicyclic or spirocyclic heterocyclic group which may be intervened with a nitrogen or oxygen atom, said heterocyclic group having optionally a substituent selected from a lower alkyl, a lower alkoxy carbonyl, a lower alkoxy-substituted lower alkyl, an amino  
20 having optionally a lower alkyl substituent, and a hydroxy-substituted lower alkyl), (iii) a lower alkoxy carbonyl, (iv) a hydroxy-substituted lower alkyl, (v) a pyridyl being optionally substituted by a lower alkyl having optionally a halogen substituent on the pyridine ring, (vi) a halogen-substituted lower alkyl,

(vii) a lower alkoxy, (viii) a cycloalkyl, (ix) a hydroxy, (x) a tetrahydropyranyl-oxy-substituted lower alkyl, (xi) a pyrimidyl, (xii) a lower alkoxy-substituted lower alkyl, (xiii) a carboxyl, (xiv) a phenyl-lower alkoxy, (xv) a phenyl-lower alkyl having optionally a lower alkylendioxy on the phenyl ring, (xvi) a lower alkanoyloxy, and (xvii) a piperidinyl having optionally a lower alkyl substituent on the piperidine ring, or a salt thereof.

20. The thiazole compound according to claim 4, wherein  $R^6$  is a group of the formula:  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  wherein  $R^{11b}$  is as defined in claim 1,  $p$  is 0, and  $R^{11a}$  is as defined in claim 19, or a salt thereof.

21. The thiazole compound according to claim 4, wherein  $R^6$  is a group of the formula:  $-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  wherein  $R^{14}$  is as defined in claim 1, or a salt thereof.

22. The thiazole compound according to claim 16, wherein  $R^6$  is a group of the formula:  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  wherein  $R^{11b}$  and  $p$  are as defined in claim 1, and  $R^{11a}$  is a hydroxy or a lower alkoxy, or a salt thereof.

23. The thiazole compound according to claim 16, wherein  $R^6$  is a group of the formula:  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  wherein  $R^{11b}$  is as defined in claim 1,  $p$  is 1, and  $R^{11a}$  is as defined in claim 19, or a salt thereof.

24. The thiazole compound according to claim 16, wherein  $R^6$  is a group of the formula:  $-\text{CO}-\text{CH}=\text{CR}^{11b}-(\text{CO})_p-\text{R}^{11a}$  wherein  $R^{11b}$  is as defined in claim 1,  $p$  is 0, and  $R^{11a}$  is as defined in claim 19, or a salt thereof.

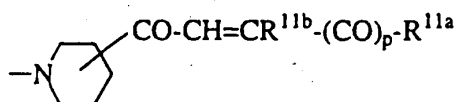
25. The thiazole compound according to claim 16, wherein  $R^6$  is a

421

group of the formula:  $-\text{CO}-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  wherein  $\text{R}^{14}$  is as defined in claim 1, or a salt thereof.

26. The thiazole compound according to claim 1, wherein  $u$  is 1; and  $\text{R}^3$  is a group of the formula:

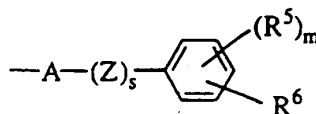
5



(wherein  $\text{R}^{11b}$ ,  $\text{R}^{11a}$  and  $p$  are as defined in claim 1), or a salt thereof.

27. The thiazole compound according to claim 1, wherein  $u$  is 1;  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$  are the same or different and are each a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl; and  $\text{R}^3$  is a group of the formula:

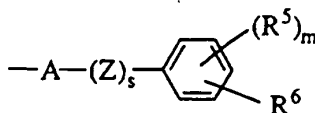
10



15 (wherein  $A$ ,  $Z$ ,  $s$ ,  $\text{R}^5$ ,  $\text{R}^6$  and  $m$  are as defined in claim 1), or a salt thereof.

28. The thiazole compound according to claim 1, wherein  $u$  is 1;  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(\text{CH}_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 4); and  $\text{R}^3$  is a group of the formula:

20

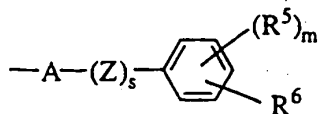


(wherein  $A$ ,  $Z$ ,  $s$ ,  $\text{R}^5$ ,  $\text{R}^6$  and  $m$  are as defined in claim 1), or a salt thereof.

29. The thiazole compound according to claim 1, wherein  $u$  is 1;  $\text{R}^1$

422

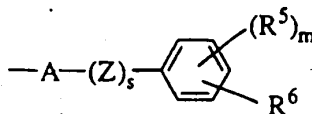
and  $R^2$  combine to form a group:  $-(CH_2)_n-$  ( $n$  is 5); and  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:



(wherein  $A$ ,  $Z$ ,  $s$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $R^6$  and  $m$  are as defined in claim 1), or a salt thereof.

30. The thiazole compound according to claim 1, wherein  $u$  is 1;  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  combine to form a benzene ring which may optionally be substituted by a member selected from a lower alkyl, a lower alkoxy, a nitro, an amino having optionally a lower alkyl substituent, or a halogen atom; and  $R^3$  is a group of the formula:

10



15 (wherein  $A$ ,  $Z$ ,  $s$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $R^6$  and  $m$  are as defined in claim 1), or a salt thereof.

31. The thiazole compound according to any one of claims 2, 3, 6-15, and 17-30, wherein the heterocyclic group for  $R^{11a}$  is a member selected from the group consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholino, 1-azacyclooctyl, homopiperazinyl, homomorpholino, 1,4-diazabicyclo[4.3.0]nonyl, 1,4-diazabicyclo[4.4.0]decyl, pyridyl, 1,2,5,6-tetrahydropyridyl, thienyl, 1,2,4-triazolyl, 1,2,3,4-tetrazolyl, 1,3,4-triazolyl, quinolyl, 1,4-dihydroquinolyl, benzo-thiazolyl, pyrazyl, pyrimidyl, pyridazyl, pyrrolyl, pyrrolinyl, carbostyryl, 1,3-dioxolanyl, thiomorpholino, 3,4-dihydrocarbostyryl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolyl,

20

- 2,3,4,5-tetrahydrofuryl, indolyl, isoindolyl, 3H-indolyl, indolinyl, indolidinyl, indazolyl, benzimidazolyl, benzoxazolyl, imidazoliny, imidazolidinyl, isoquinolyl, naphthylidinyl, quinazolidinyl, quinoxaliny, cinnoliny, phthalazinyl, chromanyl, isoindolinyl, isochromanyl, pyrazolyl, 1,3,4-oxadiazolyl,
- 5 1,3,4-thiadiazolyl, thienyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolidinyl, benzofuryl, 2,3-dihydrobenzo[b]furyl, benzothienyl, tetrahydropyranyl, 4H-chromenyl, 1H-indazolyl, isoindolinyl, 2-imidazoliny, 2-pyrroliny, furyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, thiazolyl, thiazoliny, isothiazolyl, pyranyl, pyrazolidinyl, 2-pyrazoliny, quinuclidiny, 1,4-benzoxazinyl, 3,4-dihydro-2H-1,4-benzoxazinyl, 3,4-dihydro-2H-1,4-benzo-
- 10 thiazinyl, 1,4-benzothiazinyl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinolyl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoxaliny, 1,3-dithia-2,4-dihydronaphthaleny, 1,4-dithianaphthaleny, 2,5-dihydrofurano[3,4-c]pyridyl, 2,3,4,5,6,7-hexahydro-1H-azepiny, 1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8-octahydroazociny, 1,2,3,4,5,6-hexahydrooxepiny, 1,3-dioxolany, 3,4,5,6-tetrahydro-2H-pyranyl, and 5,6-dihydro-2H-pyranyl.
- 15 32. A thiazole compound selected from the group consisting of
- (1) 2-((3-methoxy-4-(3-(4-(4-methyl-1-homopiperazinyl)-1-piperidinylcarbonyl)acryloyl)phenoxy)methylcarbonylamino)benzothiazole,
- (2) 2-((2-isopropyl-4-(3-(4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinylcarbonyl)acryloyl)phenoxy)methylcarbonylamino)benzothiazole,
- 20 (3) 2-((2-methoxy-4-(3-(2-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-methyl-4-morpholinocarbonyl)acryloyl)phenoxy)methylcarbonylamino)benzothiazole,
- (4) 2-((2-ethoxy-4-(3-(4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinylcarbonyl)acryloyl)phenoxy)methylcarbonylamino)benzothiazole,
- (5) 2-((3-methyl-4-(3-(4-(4-methyl-1-homopiperazinyl)-1-piperidinyl-
- 25 carbonyl)acryloyl)phenoxy)methylcarbonylamino)benzothiazole,

- (6) 2-((3-methoxy-6-ethyl-4-(3-(4-(4-methyl-1-homopiperazinyl)-1-piperidinylcarbonyl)acryloyl)phenoxy)methylcarbonylamino)benzothiazole,
- (7) 2-((3-methoxy-6-ethyl-4-(3-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)acryloyl)phenoxy)methylcarbonylamino)benzothiazole,
- 5 (8) 2-((2-trifluoromethyl-4-(3-(4-hydroxy-1-piperazinyl)acryloyl)phenoxy)methylcarbonylamino)benzothiazole,
- (9) 2-((2-fluoro-4-(3-(2-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)methyl-4-morpholinocarbonyl)acryloyl)phenoxy)methylcarbonylamino)benzothiazole,
- (10) 2-((2-methoxy-4-(3-(4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinylcarbonyl)acryloyl)phenoxy)methylcarbonylamino)benzothiazole,
- 10 (11) 2-((2,3-dimethyl-4-(3-(4-(4-methyl-1-homopiperazinyl)-1-piperidinylcarbonyl)acryloyl)phenoxy)methylcarbonylamino)benzothiazole,
- (12) 2-((3-methoxy-4-(3-(4-(3,4-dimethyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinylcarbonyl)acryloyl)phenoxy)methylcarbonylamino)benzothiazole,
- 15 (13) 2-((3-methoxy-6-isopropyl-4-(3-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)carbonyl)acryloyl)phenoxy)methylcarbonylamino)benzothiazole,
- (14) 2-((2-methoxy-4-(3-(4-(4-methyl-1-homopiperazinyl)-1-piperidinylcarbonyl)acryloyl)phenoxy)methylcarbonylamino)benzothiazole,
- (15) 2-((2-n-butyl-4-(3-(4-(4-methyl-1-homopiperazinyl)-1-piperidinylcarbonyl)acryloyl)phenoxy)methylcarbonylamino)benzothiazole,
- 20 or a salt thereof.

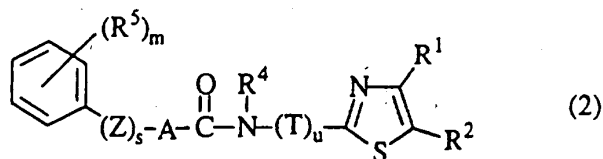
33. A protein kinase C inhibitor which comprises as an active ingredient a thiazole compound or a salt thereof as set forth in claim 1.

34. A process for preparing a thiazole compound as set forth in claim 1, which comprises the following steps of

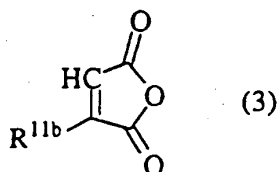
25

425

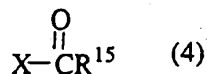
(a) reacting a compound of the formula (2):



5 wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$ ,  $s$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in claim 1, with a compound of the formula (3):

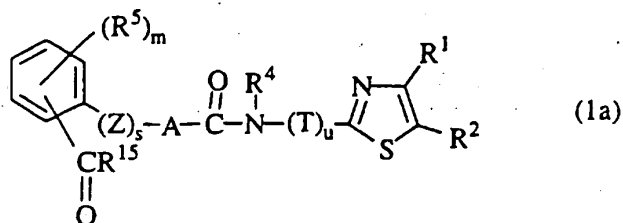


10 wherein  $R^{11b}$  is the same as defined in claim 1, or a compound of the formula (4):



wherein  $R^{15}$  is a group:  $-\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{R}^{11b})(\text{COR}^{16})$  ( $R^{11b}$  is the same as defined in claim 1, and  $R^{16}$  is a hydroxy group or a lower alkoxy group), or a group:

15  $-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{COR}^{14}$  ( $R^{14}$  is the same as defined in claim 1), and  $X$  is a halogen atom, to give a compound of the formula (1a):



20

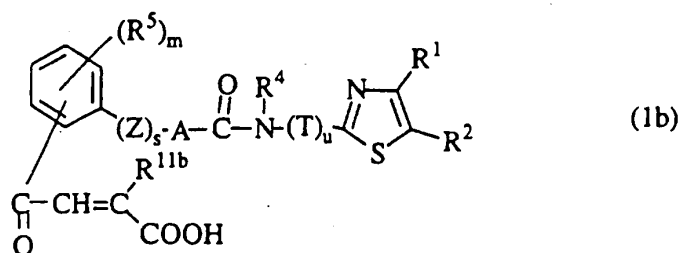
wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$ ,  $s$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in claim 1, and  $R^{15}$  is the same as defined above;

(b) reacting a compound of the formula (1b):

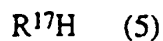


426

5

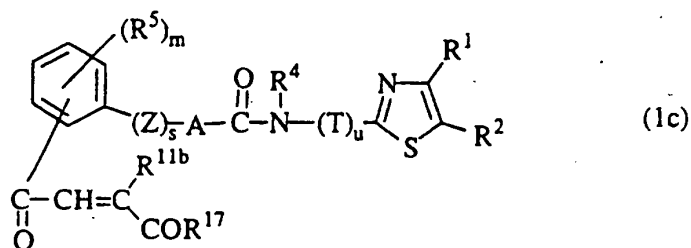


wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $R^{11b}$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$ ,  $s$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in claim 1,  
with a compound of the formula (5):



wherein  $R^{17}$  is the heterocyclic residues as defined for  $R^{11a}$  but having at least  
one  $-N<$  in the heterocyclic nucleus, to give a compound of the formula (1c):

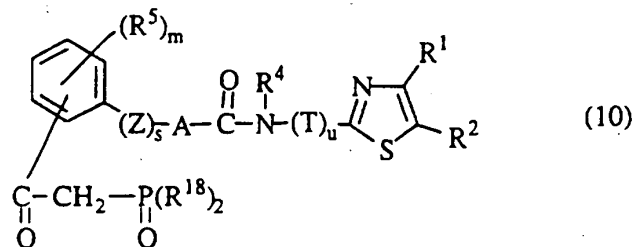
15



wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $R^{11b}$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$ ,  $s$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in claim 1,  
and  $R^{17}$  is the same as defined above;

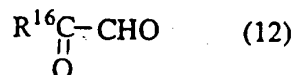
(c) reacting a compound of the formula (10):

20

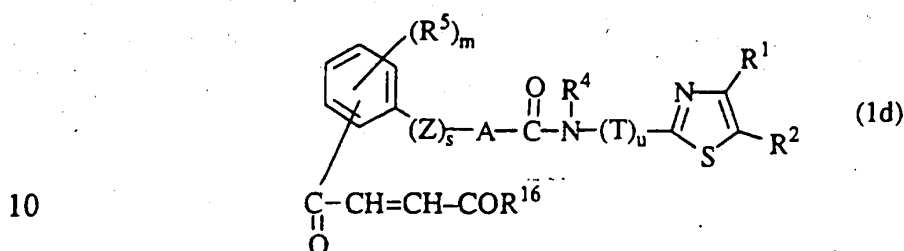


427

wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$ ,  $s$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in claim 1,  $R^{18}$  is a lower alkoxy group, with a compound of the formula (12):



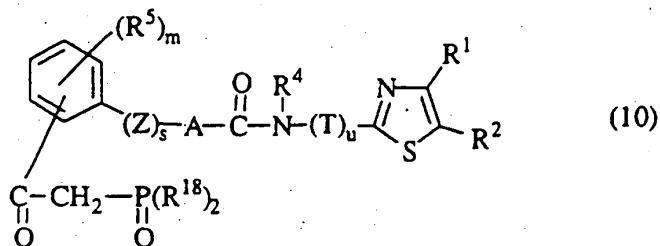
5 wherein  $R^{16}$  is the same as defined above, to give a compound of the formula (1d):



wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$ ,  $s$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in claim 1 and  $R^{16}$  is the same as defined above;

(d) reacting a compound of the formula (10):

15



20 wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$ ,  $s$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in claim 1, and  $R^{18}$  is the same as defined above, with a compound of the formula (20):



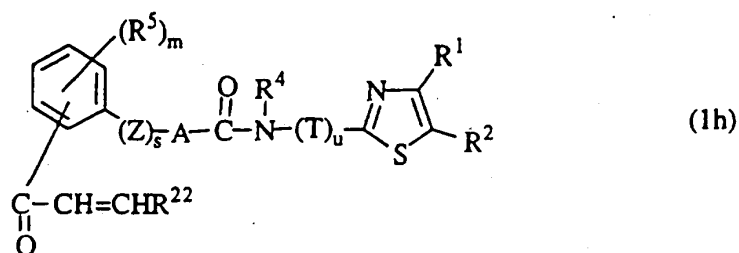
wherein  $R^{22}$  is  $R^{22}$  is a 5- to 10-membered, saturated or unsaturated heteromono-

cyclic, heterobicyclic residue (said heterocyclic residue optionally having 1 to 3 substituents selected from (i) a lower alkyl group; (ii) a group:

$-(B)_\ell-NR^{12}R^{13}$  ( $\ell$  is the same as defined above, B is a group:  $-\text{CO}-\text{A}-$  (A is the same as defined above), a carbonyl group or a lower alkylene group,  $R^{12}$  and

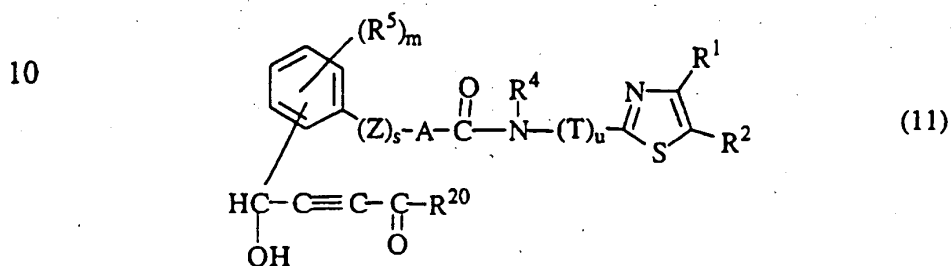
- 5  $R^{13}$  are the same or different, and each are a hydrogen atom, a lower alkyl group, an amino-substituted lower alkyl group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent, or combine together with the adjacent nitrogen atom to which they bond to form a 5- to 12-membered saturated heteromonocyclic, heterobicyclic or hetero-sprio ring with or without being intervened with another nitrogen atom
- 10 or an oxygen atom, said heterocyclic group may optionally have a substituent selected from a lower alkyl group, a lower alkoxy carbonyl group, a lower alkoxy-substituted lower alkyl group, an amino group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent and a hydroxy-substituted lower alkyl group); (iii) a lower alkoxy carbonyl group; (iv) a hydroxy-substituted lower alkyl group; (v) a
- 15 pyridyl group being optionally substituted by a lower alkyl group having optionally a halogen substituent on the pyridine ring; (vi) a halogen-substituted lower alkyl group; (vii) a lower alkoxy group; (viii) a cycloalkyl group; (ix) a hydroxy group; (x) a tetrahydropyranyloxy-substituted lower alkyl group; (xi) a pyrimidyl group; (xii) a lower alkoxy-substituted lower alkyl group; (xiii) a
- 20 carboxyl group; (xiv) a phenyl-lower alkoxy group; (xv) a phenyl-lower alkyl group having optionally a lower alkylendioxy substituent on the phenyl ring; (xvi) a lower alkanoyloxy group; and (xvii) a piperidinyl group having optionally a lower alkyl substituent on the piperidine ring, to give a compound of the formula (1h):

429



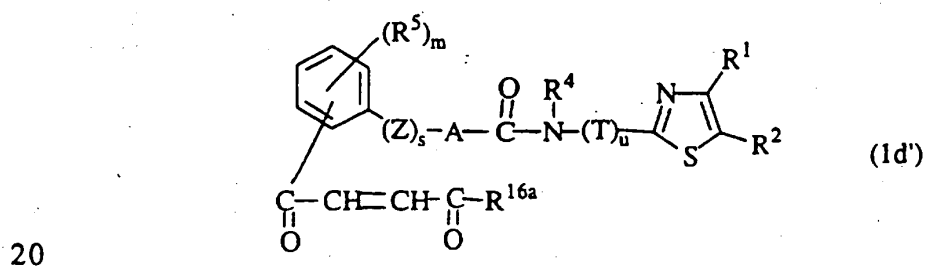
wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$ ,  $s$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in claim 1, and  $R^{18}$  and  $R^{22}$  are the same as defined above;

(e) converting a compound of the formula (11):



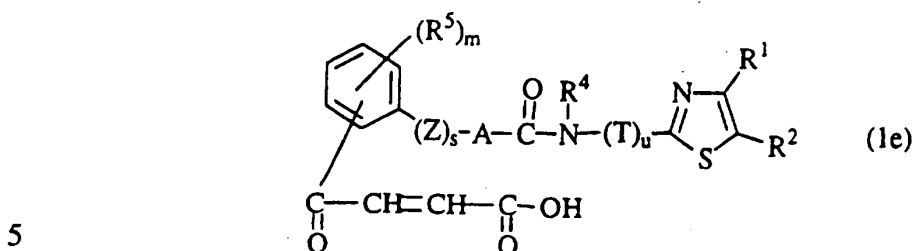
wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$ ,  $s$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in claim 1, and

15  $R^{20}$  is a lower alkoxy group, into a compound of the formula (1d'):



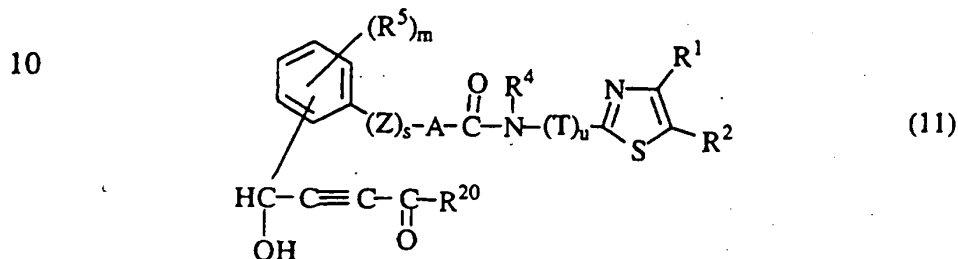
wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$ ,  $s$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in claim 1, and  $R^{16a}$  is a lower alkoxy group, in the presence of a basic compound, optionally followed by converting the compound (1d') into a compound of the formula (1e):

430



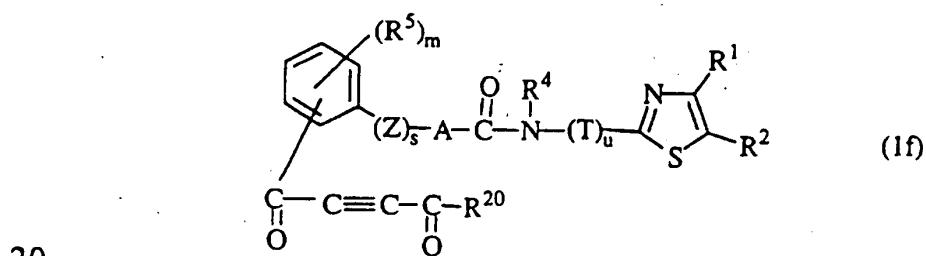
wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$ ,  $s$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in claim 1, in the presence of an acid or a basic compound;

(f) converting a compound of the formula (11):



wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$ ,  $s$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in claim 1, and

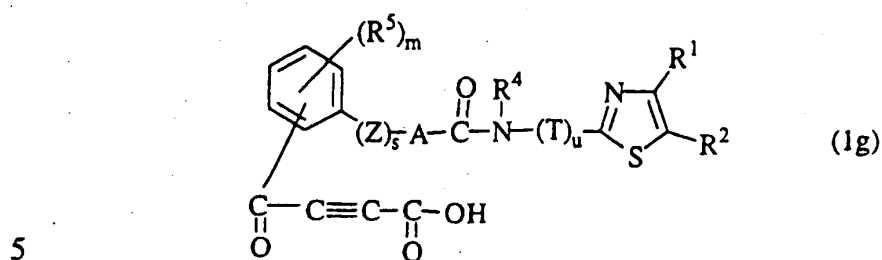
15  $R^{20}$  is a lower alkoxy group, into a compound of the formula (1f):



wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$ ,  $s$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$ , and  $A$  are the same as defined in claim 1, and

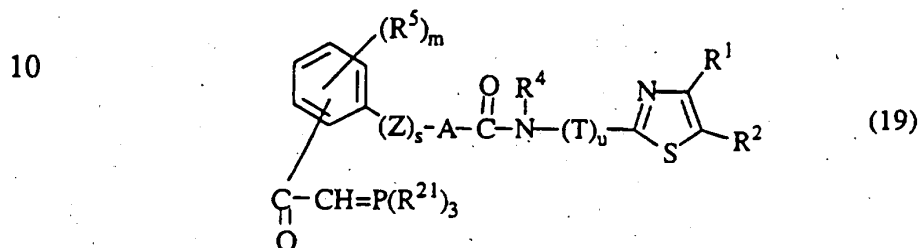
$R^{20}$  is the same as defined above, in the presence of an oxidizing agent, optionally followed by converting the compound (1f) into a compound of the formula (1g):

431



wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$ ,  $s$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in claim 1, in the presence of an acid or a basic compound;

(g) reacting a compound of the formula (19):



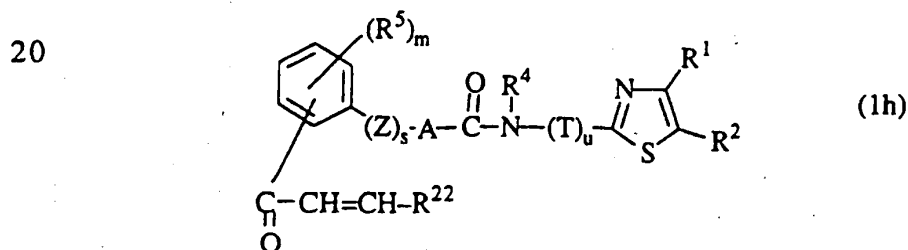
wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$ ,  $s$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in claim 1, and

15  $R^{21}$  is a phenyl group, with a compound of the formula (20):



wherein  $R^{22}$  is the same as defined above, to give a compound of the formula

(1h):

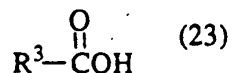


wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $Z$ ,  $m$ ,  $s$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and  $A$  are the same as defined in claim 1, and

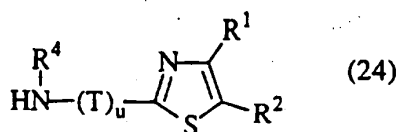
432

R<sup>22</sup> is the same as defined above;

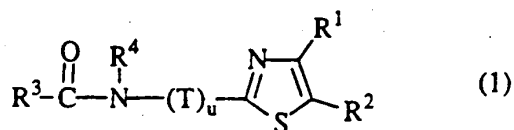
(h) reacting a compound of the formula (23):



5 wherein R<sup>3</sup> is the same as defined in claim 1, with a compound of the formula (24):

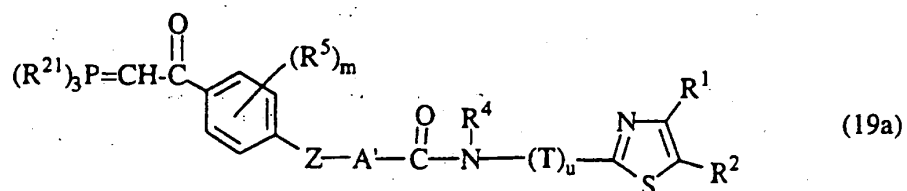


10 wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, T and u are the same as defined in claim 1, to give a compound of the formula (1):



15 wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, T and u are the same as defined in claim 1;

(i) reacting a compound of the formula (19a):



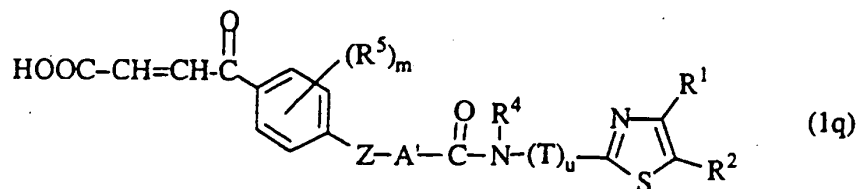
20

wherein T, u, R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, Z, R<sup>5</sup> and m are the same as defined in claim 1, and R<sup>21</sup> is the same as defined above, and A' is a lower alkylene group, with a compound of the formula (44):



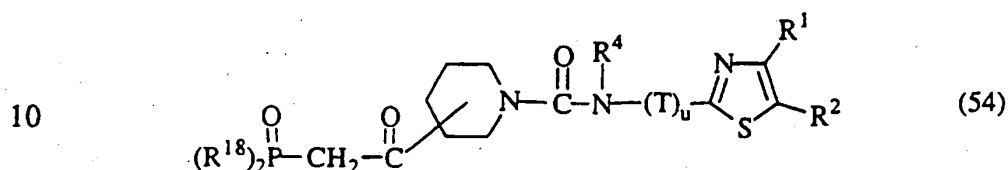
433

to give a compound of the formula (1q):



wherein T, u, R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, A', Z, R<sup>5</sup> and m are the same as defined in claim 1;

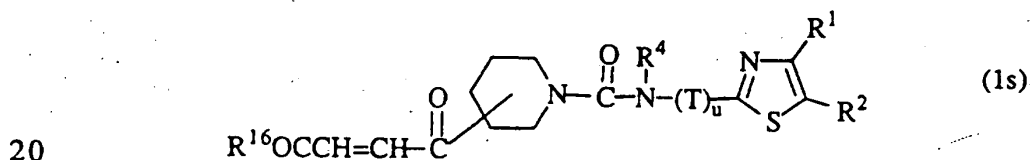
(j) reacting a compound of the formula (54):



wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, T, u and R<sup>4</sup> are the same as defined in claim 1, and R<sup>18</sup> is the same as defined above, with a compound of the formula (12):



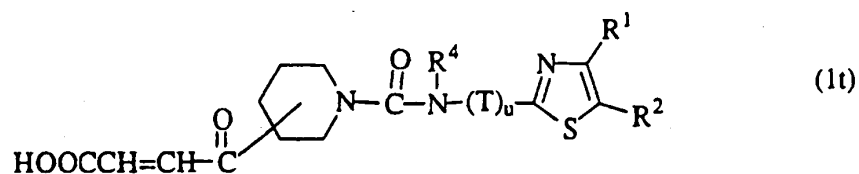
wherein R<sup>16</sup> is the same as defined above, to give a compound of the formula (1s):



wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, T, u and R<sup>4</sup> are the same as defined in claim 1, and R<sup>16</sup> is the same as defined above, optionally followed by converting the compound (1s) into a compound of the formula (1t):

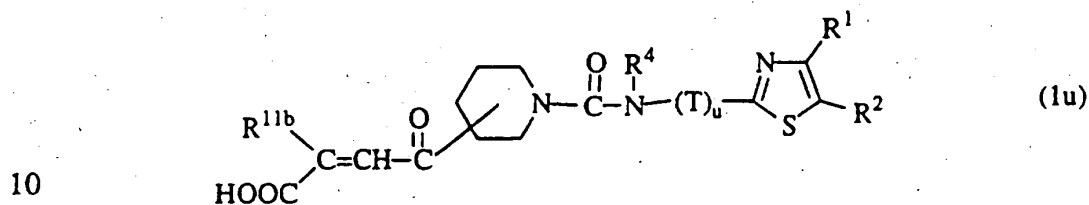


434



5 wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and  $R^4$  are the same as defined in claim 1;

(k) reacting a compound of the formula (1u):

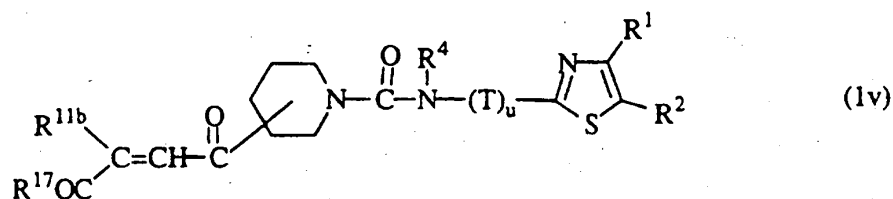


10 wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$ ,  $R^4$  and  $R^{11b}$  are the same as defined in claim 1, with a compound of the formula (5):



wherein  $R^{17}$  is the same as defined above, to give a compound of the formula

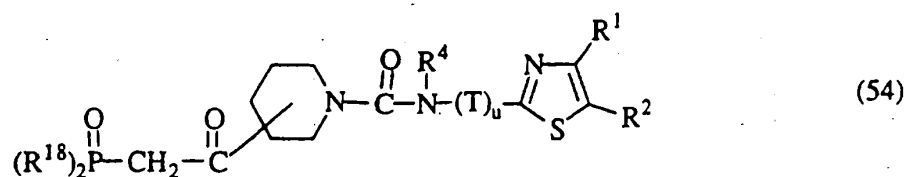
15 (1v):



20 wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$ ,  $R^4$  and  $R^{11b}$  are the same as defined in claim 1, and  $R^{17}$  is the same as defined above; or

(l) reacting a compound of the formula (54):

435

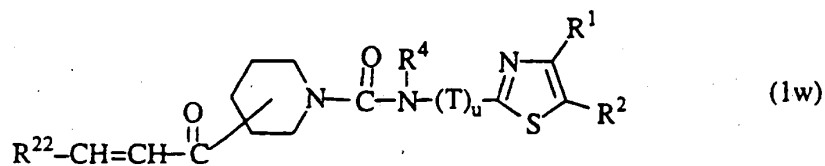


- 5 wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$ ,  $R^4$  and  $R^{18}$  are the same as defined above, with a compound of the formula (20):



wherein  $R^{22}$  is the same as defined above, to give a compound of the formula (1w):

10



wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $T$ ,  $u$  and  $R^4$  are the same as defined in claim 1, and  $R^{22}$  is the same as defined above.

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Intern   nal Application No

PCT/JP 97/02609

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 6   C07D277/82   A61K31/425   C07D417/12   C07D277/46

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 6   C07D

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	EP 0 638 564 A (ASAHI KASEI KOGYO K.K.) 15 February 1995 see the whole document ---	1,33
A	EP 0 343 893 A (PFIZER INC.) 29 November 1989 see claims ---	1,33
A	EP 0 412 404 A (FUJISAWA PHARMACEUTICAL CO) 13 February 1991 see claims -----	1,33

☐ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

Patent family members are listed in annex.

## \* Special categories of cited documents :

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"&amp;" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

2 October 1997

Date of mailing of the international search report

-7. 10. 97

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,  
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Henry, J

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

Intern. nat Application No

PCT/JP 97/02609

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
EP 0638564 A	15-02-95	US 5504098 A	02-04-96
		CA 2118425 A	01-09-94
		JP 6298749 A	25-10-94
		WO 9419336 A	01-09-94
-----			
EP 0343893 A	29-11-89	AU 601905 B	20-09-90
		AU 3509889 A	30-11-89
		CA 1328871 A	26-04-94
		CN 1037898 A,B	13-12-89
		DK 249389 A	27-11-89
		ES 2043012 T	16-12-93
		JP 2017181 A	22-01-90
		JP 6078331 B	05-10-94
		MX 16158 A,B	01-06-93
		PT 90622 B	31-10-94
		SU 1681728 A	30-09-91
		US 4970318 A	13-11-90
-----			
EP 0412404 A	13-02-91	AT 133667 T	15-02-96
		AU 635758 B	01-04-93
		AU 6004590 A	07-02-91
		CA 2022731 A	08-02-91
		CN 1049337 A,B	20-02-91
		DE 69025104 D	14-03-96
		DE 69025104 T	04-07-96
		ES 2082805 T	01-04-96
		FI 96857 B	31-05-96
		HK 151596 A	16-08-96
		HU 9500375 A	28-09-95
		IL 95281 A	18-06-96
		JP 3068567 A	25-03-91
		NO 179638 B	12-08-96
		PT 94925 B	30-04-97
		RU 2010026 C	30-03-94
		RU 2048468 C	20-11-95
		US 5369107 A	29-11-94
		US 5256675 A	26-10-93
-----			